ARABIC LEVEL ONE



Hanaa Alkassas
ASCCC Open Educational Resources Initiative



Arabic Level One Ancillary

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden born from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and was supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

This text was compiled on 09/24/2025

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

About the Author

Introduction to the Arabic Level One - OER

1: Chapter Oner- An Overview of Arabic

- 1.1: Why Learn Arabic
- 1.2: Arabic Speaking Countries
- 1.3: Arabic-Speaking World and Dialect
- 1.4: Parts of Speech in Arabic
- 1.5: Type of Sentences in Arabic

2: Chapter Two- Introduction to the Arabic Language

- 2.1: Introduction to the Arabic Language
- 2.2: The Arabic Alphabet الحروف العربية
- 2.3: Arabic Script الكتابة بالعربية
- 2.4: Arabic Diacritical Marks علاماتُ التَّشكيل
- 2.5: Long Vowels المدود

3: Chapter Three- Greeting

- 3.1: Letter Baa- الحرف باء
- 3.2: Letter Taa- الحرف تاء
- 3.3: Letter Thaa- الحرف ثاء
- 3.4: Letter Noon الحرف نون
- 3.5: Vocabulary
- 3.6: Dialog - Greetings
- 3.7: Northern Levant- Syria
- 3.8: Northern Levant- Lebanon
- 3.9: Assessment

4: Chapter Four- Introduce Self

- 4.1: Letter Yaa-الحرف ياء
- 4.2: Letter Waw- الحرف واو
- 4.3: The Consonant Hamza الهمزة
- 4.4: Vocabulary
- 4.5: Subject Pronouns
- 4.6: Dialog - Introduce Self
- 4.7: Southeren Levant- Jordan
- 4.8: Southeren Levant- Palistine

5: Chapter Five- Where Are You From?

- 5.1: The Letter Jeem- الحرف جيم
- 5.2: Letter H'aa-الحرف حاء

- 5.3: Letter Khaa
- 5.4: Vocabulary
- 5.5: Possessive Pronouns
- 5.6: Present tense (to like, to study)
- 5.7: Dialog - (Where Are From?)
- 5.8: Republic of Iraq

6: Chapter Six- Introducting My Family

- 6.1: Letter Daal
- 6.2: Letter Thaal
- 6.3: Letter Raa
- 6.4: Letter Zay
- 6.5: Taa Marbouta "Tied Taa"
- 6.6: Vocabulary
- 6.7: Demonstrative Pronouns هذه - هذا
- 6.8: Dialog - My Family
- 6.9: Qatar
- 6.10: The United Arab Emirates
- 6.11: Assessment

7: Chapter Seven- Numbers “Al-Arqam”

- 7.1: Letter Seen
- 7.2: Letter Sheen
- 7.3: Letter Saad
- 7.4: Letter Daad
- 7.5: The Phrase "To Have" In Arabic
- 7.6: Vocabulary
- 7.7: Numbers الأرقام
- 7.8: Dialog - Tell Me More About YOU
- 7.9: Interrogative Words in Arabic (Part 1)
- 7.10: Egypt
- 7.11: Assessment

8: Chapter Eight- Where do you live?

- 8.1: Letter Tuaa
- 8.2: Letter Dhaa
- 8.3: Letter Aein
- 8.4: Letter Ghien
- 8.5: Vocabulary
- 8.6: Interrogative words (Part Two)
- 8.7: New Verbs (To live)
- 8.8: Dialog - Where do you live?
- 8.9: Kuwait
- 8.10: Saudi Arabia

9: At Home “ fi Albayet”

- 9.1: Letter Faa
- 9.2: Letter Qaaf

- 9.3: Letter Kaaf
- 9.4: Letter Laam
- 9.5: Vocabulary
- 9.6: Colors
- 9.7: New Verbs (to drink, to watch)
- 9.8: Dialog - At Home
- 9.9: Sultanate of Oman
- 9.10: Yemeni Republic
- 9.11: Assessment

10: Food الطعام "At-Tauam"

- 10.1: Letter Meem
- 10.2: Letter Haa
- 10.3: Letters Alif MAqsurah الألف المقصورة, Dagger Alif الألف الخنجرية
- 10.4: Vocabulary
- 10.5: Prepositions حروف الجر
- 10.6: New Verbs (go, cook, buy, and want)
- 10.7: Dialog - What do you eat?
- 10.8: Bahrain
- 10.9: Libya
- 10.10: Assessment
- The Marker of "Shadda"الشدة

11: At The University

- 11.1: أ (Hamzat Alwasel) and آ (Alif Maddah)
- 11.2: The Arabic Definite Article (الـ) لام التعريف
- 11.3: The Nisba Adjective النِّسبَة
- 11.4: Vocabulary
- 11.5: Days of The Week
- 11.6: Dialog - What do you study?
- 11.7: Reading Text
- 11.8: Sudan
- 11.9: kingdom of Morocco
- 11.10: Assessment

12: Living and Working

- 12.1: Roots الجذورو
- 12.2: Duals in Arabic
- 12.3: Plurals In Arabic الجمع
- 12.4: Vocabulary
- 12.5: New Verbs (work, write, and read)
- 12.6: Dual and Plural Subject Pronouns
- 12.7: Dialogue and Reading
- 12.8: Reading Text
- 12.9: Tunisia
- 12.10: Algeria

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

Cognates Glossary

Detailed Licensing

Licensing

*A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in **Back Matter/Detailed Licensing**.*

About the Author

Project Lead and Author



Figure 1: Hana Kassas

Hana Kassas is a passionate and dedicated professional with a strong background in Arabic language education. Professor Hana Kassas is a long-time instructor of the Arabic language, having taught courses in various settings, from Government Persons and heritage speakers to first-time learners and native speakers of Arabic. Hana has extensive experience in creating and developing educational resources, particularly for Arabic language learners at various levels.

Her work is characterized by a commitment to making Arabic language learning accessible, engaging, and culturally enriching. She specializes in designing Open Educational Resources (OER) that incorporate modern teaching methodologies while preserving the richness of the Arabic language and culture. Hana's educational background and practical experience allow her to approach language teaching with both academic rigor and creative innovation.

With a deep understanding of both Modern Standard Arabic and regional dialects, Hana Kassas is committed to fostering cross-cultural understanding and linguistic proficiency among her students. Her innovative approach to language education, combined with her dedication to student success, makes her a valuable asset in the field of language instruction.

Introduction to the Arabic Level One - OER

Introduction to Arabic Level One OER

Welcome to **Arabic Level One**, a comprehensive Open Educational Resource (OER) designed to introduce learners to the fundamentals of the Arabic language. This book serves as an accessible and engaging gateway to mastering the basics of Arabic.

Arabic Level One is structured to provide a well-rounded introduction to the language, covering essential aspects such as the Arabic script, pronunciation, basic grammar, and essential vocabulary. The resource materials are designed with the learner in mind, offering interactive exercises, audio recordings, and cultural insights to enhance your understanding and retention of the material.

You will have a solid grasp of the Arabic alphabet, the ability to form simple sentences, and a foundational vocabulary that will enable you to engage in basic conversations. Additionally, the cultural elements woven throughout the lessons will give you a deeper appreciation of the rich traditions and diverse communities that speak Arabic.

Whether you are learning Arabic for travel, study, or personal enrichment, **Arabic Level One** will provide you with the tools and confidence you need to begin your journey towards fluency. We encourage you to take advantage of the interactive resources, practice regularly, and immerse yourself in the learning process.

Let's embark on this exciting journey together as you begin to explore the beauty and intricacies of the Arabic language.

How to Use the Arabic Level One OER Resource

This Arabic Level One Open Educational Resource (OER) is designed to be a comprehensive and flexible tool for beginners who are eager to learn Arabic. To make the most out of this resource, follow the guidelines below:

1. Start with the Basics

- Begin your learning journey with **The Arabic Alphabet** section. This is the foundation of the Arabic language, and mastering the alphabet is crucial for progressing through the rest of the course.
- Use the **Pronunciation Guide** and **Writing Practice Exercises** to familiarize yourself with how each letter sounds and how it is written in different positions (initial, medial, final, and isolated).

2. Follow the Suggested Sequence

- The book is structured to build your skills progressively. Each chapter builds on the knowledge from the previous one, so it's recommended to follow the sequence as outlined:
  - Start with the alphabet and pronunciation.
  - Move on to basic vocabulary and sentence structure.
  - Progress to more complex grammar, conversations, and cultural insights.

3. Engage with the Interactive Elements

- **Practice Exercises**: Each chapter contains exercises designed to reinforce what you've learned. These include writing, speaking, listening, and comprehension activities. Be sure to complete these exercises to test and solidify your understanding.
- **Audio Support**: Many sections include audio clips to help with pronunciation and listening comprehension. Listen to these clips as you read the corresponding text, and repeat the words and phrases to improve your pronunciation.
- **Role-Playing and Conversational Scenarios**: Engage with the dialogues and role-playing activities to practice real-life conversational Arabic. This will help you become more comfortable with speaking and listening in various contexts.

4. Utilize the Cultural Insights

- The book includes cultural notes and insights throughout, providing context to the language and helping you understand the cultural significance behind the words and phrases you're learning.
- Pay attention to these sections to gain a deeper understanding of Arab culture, which will enhance your language learning experience and make your interactions more meaningful.

5. Review Regularly

- Regular review is key to retention. Use the **Review and Assessment** section to go over what you've learned in previous chapters.
- Take advantage of the practice quizzes and self-assessment tools to gauge your progress and identify areas where you may need more practice.

By following these guidelines, you can effectively navigate and utilize the Arabic Level One OER resource to develop a strong foundation in Arabic, setting the stage for continued success in your language learning journey.

Acknowledgments

I would like to express our deepest gratitude to Cuyamaca Community College and the Academic Senate for California Community Colleges for supporting the creation of this resource and to the instructors and students worldwide who will benefit from it.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1: Chapter Oner- An Overview of Arabic

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Learn the essential role of learning Arabic for students in California and worldwide.
- Identify the Arabic-speaking countries and the different dialects.
- Learn the Arabic language parts of speech.
- Recognize the types of sentences in Arabic

1.1: Why Learn Arabic

1.2: Arabic Speaking Countries

1.3: Arabic-Speaking World and Dialect

1.4: Parts of Speech in Arabic

1.5: Type of Sentences in Arabic

Introduction

Watch this video that explains the importance of learning Arabic. Arabic is not just a language, and it is more than that. This video will highlight some of the significant of learning Arabic.



1: Chapter Oner- An Overview of Arabic is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.1: Why Learn Arabic

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn the essential role of learning Arabic for students in California and worldwide.

Introduction



The Essential Role of Learning Arabic for Students in California and Worldwide

In today's interconnected world, the ability to communicate across cultural and linguistic boundaries is more valuable than ever. For students in California and worldwide, learning Arabic offers a unique and essential opportunity to engage with a rich cultural heritage, access a growing economic market, and contribute to global understanding and diplomacy. Arabic is not just a language; it is a gateway to a vibrant civilization that has made significant contributions to science, mathematics, literature, and the arts throughout history.

A Rich Cultural Heritage

Arabic is the fifth most spoken language globally, with over 300 million native speakers across 22 countries. It is the language of a region that has been the cradle of civilization, home to ancient empires, and the birthplace of major world religions, including Islam. Understanding Arabic allows students to explore the profound cultural, literary, and historical contributions of the Arab world. From the poetic verses of pre-Islamic Arabia to the philosophical treatises of the Golden Age of Islam, Arabic literature offers a wealth of knowledge and artistic expression that enriches our global cultural tapestry.

Economic and Career Opportunities

California's economy is deeply intertwined with global markets, and proficiency in Arabic opens doors to numerous career paths. The Arab world is a significant player in the global economy, with substantial investments in industries such as energy, finance, and technology. Companies and organizations value employees who can navigate the linguistic and cultural landscape of the Middle East and North Africa. In fields such as international business, government, journalism, and non-profit work, Arabic speakers are in high demand. Learning Arabic not only enhances employability but also positions students as valuable assets in an increasingly competitive job market.

Diplomatic and Global Understanding

In an era marked by geopolitical tensions and cultural misunderstandings, learning Arabic fosters a deeper understanding of the Arab world and its perspectives. Proficiency in Arabic equips students with the skills to engage in meaningful dialogue, promote cultural exchange, and contribute to global peace and diplomacy. As future leaders, college students with Arabic language skills can play a crucial role in building bridges between diverse communities and fostering mutual respect and cooperation.

Conclusion

Learning Arabic is more than an academic pursuit; it is an investment in personal growth, professional development, and global citizenship. For students in California or worldwide, mastering this essential language opens a world of opportunities and provides the tools needed to navigate and contribute to a complex and interconnected world. As we look towards the future, the importance of cultural and linguistic proficiency cannot be overstated, and Arabic stands out as a key language that holds the promise of a richer, more inclusive global community.



Figure **1.1.1**: The Arab Countries. (CC BY; source)

Learning Arabic is important to prepare learners to be globally competent. Answer the following questions to learn more about that.

1.1: Why Learn Arabic is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

1.2: Arabic Speaking Countries

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Recognize the names of Arabic-speaking countries and their capitals.

Arabic-Speaking Countries

The Arabic-speaking world consists of 22 countries located in western Asia and North Africa. It stretches from the Atlantic Ocean in the west to the Arabian Sea in the East. The Arabic-speaking countries are united by language and culture.

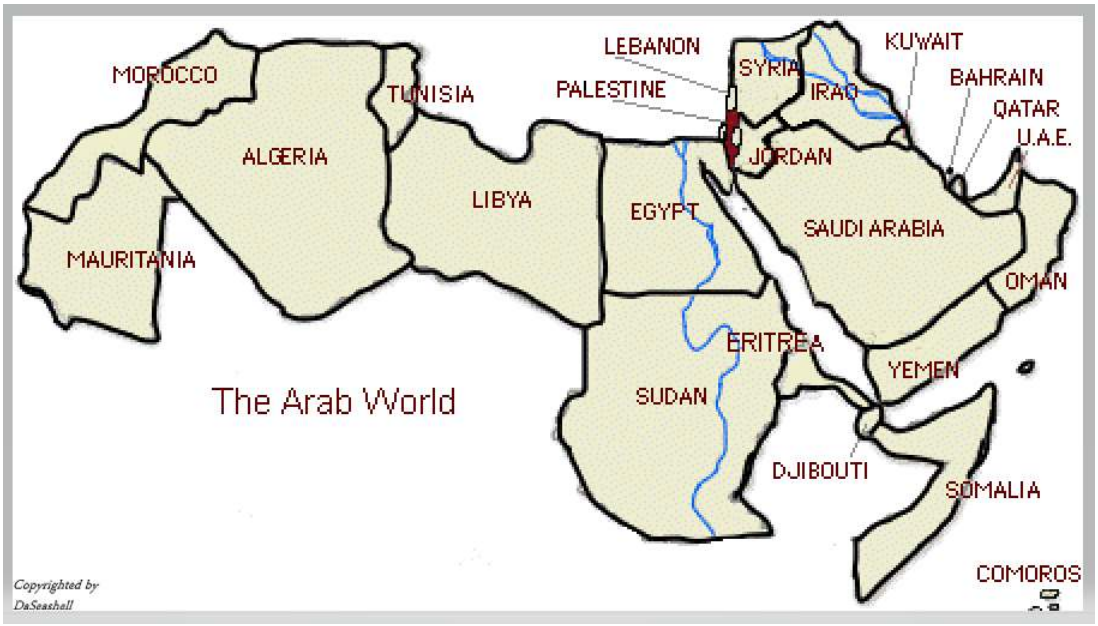


Figure **1.2.1**: Arab States. (CC0; DaSeashell via wikimedia)

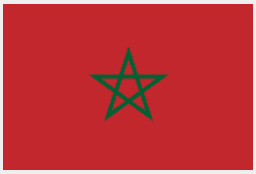
The Names of the Arabic-Speaking Countries in Alphabetical Order

In this table, you learn the Arab countries' names and their capitals.

Arab Countries and their Capitals البلاد العربية

Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
Algeria	الجُمْهورِيَّةُ الجزائرية الديمقراطية الشعبية	Algeria	الجزائر العاصمة	 Figure 1.2.1: Algerian Flag. (CC0; SKopp via wikimedia)
Bahrain	مملكةُ البحرين	Manama	المنامة	 Figure 1.2.2: Flag of Bahrain. (CC0; Zscout370 via wikimedia)
Comoros	جُزر القمر	Moroni	موروني	 Figure 1.2.3: Flag of the Comoros. (CC0; Sangjinhwa via wikimidia)
Djibouti	جيبوتي	Djibouti	جيبوتي العاصمة	 Figure 1.2.4: Flag of Djibouti. (CC0; unknown author via wikimedia)

Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
Egypt	جُمْهوريَّةُ مِصر العربية	Cairo	القاهرة	 Figure 1.2.5: The flag of Egypt. (CC0; Open Clip Art via Wikimedia)
Iraq	جُمْهوريَّةُ العراق	Baghdad	بغداد	 Figure 1.2.6: Flag of Iraq. (CC0; unknown author via wikimedia)
Jordan	المملكة الأردنية الهاشمية	Amman	عَمّان	 Figure 1.2.7: Flage of Jordan. (CC0; SKopp via wikimedia)
Kuwait	دَولةُ الكويت	Kuwait	الكويت العاصمة	 Figure 1.2.8: Flag of Kuwait. (CC0; SKopp via wikimedia)
Lebanon	الجُمْهورِيَّةُ اللُبنانية	Beirut	بَيروت	 Figure 1.2.9: Flag of Lebanon. (CC0; CIA World Factbook via wikimedia)

Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
Libya	ليبيا	Tripoli	طرابلس	 Figure 1.2.10: Copy and Paste Caption here. (CC0; Victor graphics via wikimedia)
Mauritania	الجُمْهورِيَّةُ الإسلاميةُ الموريتانية	Nouakchott	نواكشوط	 Figure 1.2.11: Flag of Muritania. (CC0; unknown author via wikimedia)
Morocco	المغرب	Rabat	الرباط	 Figure 1.2.12: Flag of Morocco. (CC0; Denelson83, Zscout370 via wikimedia)
Oman	عُمان	Muscat	مسقط	 Figure 1.2.13: Flag of Oman. (CC0; CIA Word Factbook via wikimedia)
Palestine	فلسطين	Jerusalem	القدس	 Figure 1.2.14: Flag of Palestine . (CC0; Orionist via wikimedia)

Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
Qatar	قَطر	Doha	الدوحة	 Figure 1.2.15: Flag of Qatar. (CC0; unknow author via wikimedia)
Saudi Arabia	المملكة العربية السعودية	Riyadh	الرياض	 Figure 1.2.16: Flag of Saudi Arabia. (CC0; unknow author via wikimedia)
Somalia	جُمْهورِيَّةُ الصوماَل	Mogadishu	مقديشو	 Figure 1.2.17: Flag of Somalia. (CC0; Direktor via wikimedia)
Sudan	جُمْهورِيَّةُ السُّودان	Khartoum	الخرطوم	 Figure 1.2.18: Flag of Sudan. (CC0; unknow author via wikimedia)
Syria	الجُمْهورِيَّةُ	Damascus	دمشق	

Name in English	The Country Name in Arabic	The name of the Capital in English	The Name of the Capital in Arabic	The flag
	العربية السُّورية			Figure 1.2.19: Flag of Syria. (CC0; unknow author via wikimedia)
Tunisia	الجُمْهورِيَّةُ التونسية	Tunis	تونس العاصمة	 Figure 1.2.20: Flag of Syria. (CC0; Various Wikimedia Commons' contributors via wikimedia)
United Arab Emirates	الإمارات العربية المتحدة	Abu Dhabi	أبو ظبي	 Figure 1.2.21: Flag of United Arab Emirates. (CC0; unknow author via wikimedia)
Yemen	اليَمن	Sanaa	صنعاء	 Figure 1.2.22: Flag of Yemen. (CC0; unknow author via wikimedia)

Practice learning about Arabic-speaking countries and their flags.

Guess the answer.

Check out this Crossword puzzle to learn more about Arabic-Speaking Countries and their capitals.

1.2: Arabic Speaking Countries is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1.4: Vocabulary- Arabic Speaking Countries** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

1.3: Arabic-Speaking World and Dialect

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Recognize the different dialects in Arabic-Speaking World.

Arabic-Speaking World and Dialect Variation

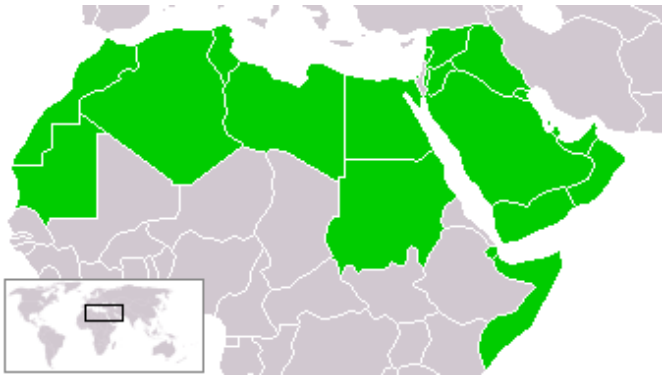


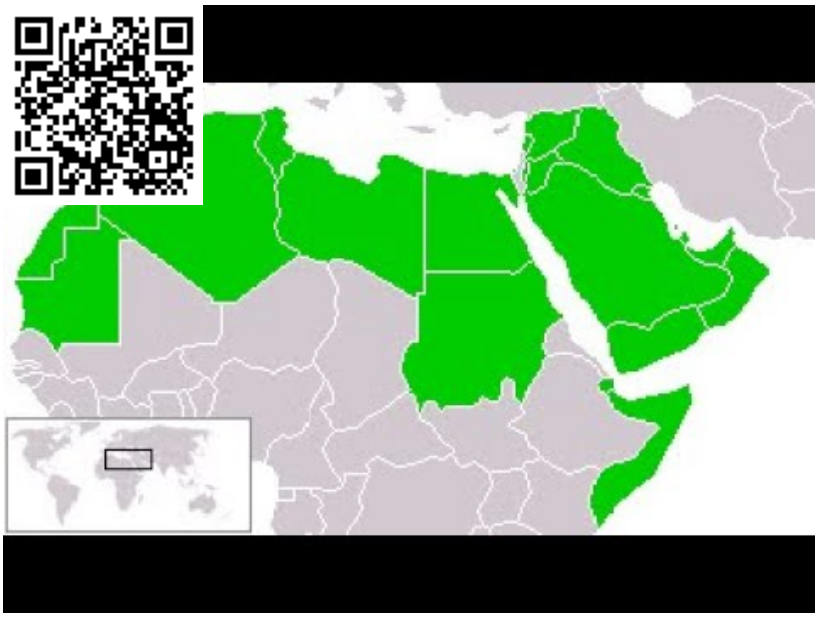
Figure **1.3.1**: Arab world map (CC BY-SA 3.0, Mirv via wikimedia)

The First step to learning Arabic

The first step to learning Arabic is to learn classical Arabic (MSA), and then learn the preferred dialect. Each Arabic Country has a different dialect, and in this book, you will study the MSA. Learning a dialect will be acquired easily after learning MSA, and the Egyptian dialect is the most popular.

Watch the video and listen to different dialects of Arabic. Each one says the same dialog in his dialect. The dialog is:

- Greeting
- My name is ..., I am from, and this is how the Arabic dialect sounds
- Today I woke up and ate breakfast with my family in the kitchen



1.3: Arabic-Speaking World and Dialect is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1.6: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

https://human.libretexts.org/@go/page/251236

1.4: Parts of Speech in Arabic

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about parts of speech in Arabic (nouns, verbs, and particles).

Parts of Speech in Arabic

Arabic words are divided into three categories of words. They are nouns الأسماء, verbs الأفعال, and الحروف particles. Therefore, learning Arabic will be more accessible by understanding the type of each word.

The noun الاسم - "Alisem"

Like English, the Arabic word "*Isem*" is used to identify the nouns, such as proper and common nouns (things). Nouns in Arabic can be definite or indefinite, singular or plural, masculine or feminine.

The Verb الفعل - "Alfea'l"

Verb فعل is an action word that has a tense attached to it. The tenses are past, present, and future.

The Particle الحرف - "AlHaref"

Harf حرف is a word that makes no sense on its own unless it accompanies another word after it. Check these examples in Arabic and English.

Example 1.4.1

Prepositions in English and Arabic: To إلى ,in في ,on عَلى etc.

Examples to learn the Arabic Propositions حروف الجر

The sentence with the proposition in English	The sentence with the preposition in Arabic	The sentence in Transliteration
I go **to** school.	أذهب **إلى** المدرسة	Adhhab 'iilaa almadrasa
The pen is **on** the table.	القلم **على** الطاولة	Alqalam ealaa altaawila
The students are **in** the house.	الطلاب **في** البيت	Atulaab fi albeit

More Details about Parts of Speech in Arabic

Arabic, like many languages, has a rich and structured system of parts of speech. Here are the primary parts of speech in Arabic:

1. Nouns (الأسماء - al-Asmā')

- Nouns in Arabic denote people, places, things, or ideas. They have gender (masculine or feminine) and can be singular, dual, or plural.

2. Verbs (الأفعال - al-Afʿāl)

- Arabic verbs indicate actions or states of being. They are conjugated based on tense (past, present, future), person (first, second, third), number (singular, dual, plural), and gender.

3. Pronouns (الضمائر - al-Ḍamā'ir)

- Pronouns in Arabic are used to replace nouns. They vary based on person, number, and gender.
  - Personal pronouns: أنا (I), أنتَ (you, masculine), أنتِ (you, feminine), هو (he), هي (she), نحن (we), أنتم (you all), هم (they).

4. Adjectives (الصفات - al-Ṣifāt)

- Adjectives in Arabic describe or modify nouns. They agree with the nouns they describe in gender, number, and case.

5. Adverbs (الظروف - al-Ẓurūf)

- Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs, indicating how, when, where, or to what extent an action is performed.

6. Prepositions (حروف الجر - Ḥurūf al-Jarr)

- Prepositions in Arabic are used to indicate relationships between nouns and other words in a sentence. Examples include: في (in), على (on), إلى (to), من (from), مع (with).

7. Conjunctions (حروف العطف - Ḥurūf al-ʿAṭf)

- Conjunctions join words, phrases, or clauses. Examples include: و (and), أو (or), لكن (but).

8. Interrogatives (أدوات الاستفهام - Adawāt al-Istifhām)

- Interrogative words are used to ask questions. Examples include: ماذا (what), من (who), أين (where), متى (when), كيف (how), لماذا (why).

9. Articles (الأدوات - al-Adawāt)

- Arabic uses definite articles, but not indefinite articles. The definite article is ال (al-), which is prefixed to nouns to make them definite (e.g., الكتاب - al-kitāb, "the book").

10. Particles (الأدوات - al-Adawāt)

- Particles are words that do not fit neatly into the other categories but are essential for the structure of sentences. These include negation particles (لا - lā, not), conditional particles (إذا - idhā, if), and others.

Examples:

1. **Noun (اسم) (Isem)**: كتاب (kitāb - book)
2. **Verb (فعل) (Fa'el)**: كتب (kataba - he wrote)
3. **Pronoun (ضمير) (Dhamir)**: هو (huwa - he)
4. **Adjective (صفة) (Sifah)**: كبير (kabīr - big)
5. **Adverb (ظرف) (Thurf)**: بسرعة (bisur'ah - quickly)
6. **Preposition (حرف جر) (Harif Jar)**: في (fī - in)
7. **Conjunction (حرف عطف) (Harif Atif)**: و (wa - and)
8. **Interrogative (أداة استفهام) (Adat Istifham)**: ماذا (mādhā - what)
9. **Article (أداة تعريف) (Adat Ta'reef)**: الكتاب (al-kitāb - the book)
10. **Particle (أداة) (Adat)**: لا (lā - not)

Understanding these parts of speech is crucial for mastering Arabic grammar and syntax, as they provide the building blocks for constructing meaningful sentences and expressions.

1.4: Parts of Speech in Arabic is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1.5: Grammar** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

1.5: Type of Sentences in Arabic

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Recognize the types of sentences in Arabic

Types of Arabic Sentences

Introduction to Nominal and Verbal Sentences in Arabic

In Arabic, sentences are broadly categorized into two types: nominal sentences (الجملة الاسمية - al-jumla al-ismiyya) and verbal sentences (الجملة الفعلية - al-jumla al-fiʿliyya). Understanding the distinction between these two forms is fundamental for beginners learning Arabic, as it provides a foundation for constructing and interpreting sentences. The nominal sentence starts with a noun or a pronoun, and the verbal sentence begins with a verb. A nominal sentence does not need a verb like in English and consists of a subject المبتدأ and a predicate الخبر.

Key Differences

1. **Starting Element:**
   - Nominal sentences start with a noun or pronoun.
   - Verbal sentences start with a verb.
2. **Focus:**
   - Nominal sentences focus on a state or description.
   - Verbal sentences focus on an action.

Nominal Sentences (الجملة الاسمية)

Nominal sentences begin with a noun or a pronoun and typically consist of two main components: the subject (المبتدأ - al-mubtada') and the predicate (الخبر - al-khabar). These sentences do not necessarily contain a verb, and they are used to describe states, qualities, or identities.

- **Example:**
  - **الولد ذكي** (al-walad dhakī) - The boy is smart.
    - *al-walad* (الولد) - the subject (the boy)
    - *dhakī* (ذكي) - the predicate (smart)

Verbal Sentences (الجملة الفعلية)

Verbal sentences start with a verb and are used to describe actions. The basic structure includes a verb (الفعل - al-fiʿl), a subject (الفاعل - al-fāʿil), and optionally an object (المفعول به - al-mafʿūl bihi). The verb typically comes first, followed by the subject, and then the object if there is one.

- **Example:**
  - **كتب الولد رسالة** (kataba al-walad risāla) - The boy wrote a letter.
    - *kataba* (كتب) - the verb (wrote)
    - *al-walad* (الولد) - the subject (the boy)
    - *risāla* (رسالة) - the object (a letter)

Example 1.5.2

Examples of Nominal and Verbal Sentences

	Nominal Sentences	Verbal Sentence
The sentence in Arabic	الْبَيْتُ كَبِيرٌ	يَذْهَبُ عَـلي إِلى الْبَيْتِ
The sentence in Transliteration	Al-baytu Kabeeron	Yazahabu Ali Ilaa Al-bayti
The meaning in English	The house is big.	Ali goes to the house.

By grasping these basic structures, beginner learners can start to construct and understand simple sentences in Arabic, laying the groundwork for more advanced language skills.

Watch this video to learn more about the type of sentences in Arabic. Also, you should know that the video has advanced information:



Practice these True or False Questions about Nominal and Verbal Sentences in Arabic.

1.5: Type of Sentences in Arabic is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1.5: Grammar** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Chapter Two- Introduction to the Arabic Language

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Tell about the relationship between the Arabic Language and the Semitic Languages.
- Explore the Arabic Alphabet, its names, and its shapes.
- Learn about the Arabic Script, short vowels, and diacritics.
- Differentiate between the long and short vowels.

2.1: Introduction to the Arabic Language
2.2: The Arabic Alphabet الحروف العربية
2.3: Arabic Script الكتابة بالعربية
2.4: Arabic Diacritical Marks علاماتُ التَّشكيل
2.5: Long Vowels المدود

2: Chapter Two- Introduction to the Arabic Language is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

2.1: Introduction to the Arabic Language

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Tell about the relationship between the Arabic Language and the Semitic Languages.

The Arabic Language and Its Relationship with the Semitic Languages



Arabic, one of the world's most widely spoken languages, holds a prominent place within the Semitic language family. The Semitic languages, a branch of the larger Afroasiatic language family, have a rich history that dates back thousands of years and includes languages spoken across the Middle East and parts of Africa. Arabic's roots in this ancient linguistic family not only highlight its historical significance but also underscore its shared characteristics with other Semitic languages, such as Hebrew, Aramaic, and Amharic.

The Semitic Language Family

The Semitic languages are among the oldest known languages in the world, with written records dating back to the 3rd millennium BCE. These languages have been spoken in the regions of the Near East, including the Arabian Peninsula, the Levant, Mesopotamia, and parts of the Horn of Africa. The family is divided into several subgroups, including:

1. **East Semitic**: This includes the ancient Akkadian language.
2. **Northwest Semitic**: This encompasses languages like Ugaritic, Phoenician, Aramaic, and Hebrew.
3. **South Semitic**: This includes languages spoken in the southern Arabian Peninsula and the Horn of Africa, such as Ge'ez and Amharic.

Arabic: A Central Member of the Semitic Family

Arabic is a member of the Central Semitic subgroup, closely related to Northwest Semitic languages. It evolved from Proto-Semitic, the common ancestor of all Semitic languages, and shares many features with its sister languages, including root-based morphology, consonant-heavy phonology, and specific grammatical structures.

Key Characteristics Shared with Other Semitic Languages

1. **Root System**: Like other Semitic languages, Arabic uses a root system where most words are derived from a set of three or four consonants. For example, the root "k-t-b" relates to writing, producing words like "kitāb" (book), "kātib" (writer), and "maktab" (office).
2. **Verb Conjugation**: Arabic verbs, like those in Hebrew and Aramaic, are conjugated based on root patterns, reflecting tense, mood, voice, and subject agreement.
3. **Phonology**: Arabic and its Semitic relatives share a range of sounds that are uncommon outside this language family, including emphatic consonants and guttural sounds.
4. **Syntax and Grammar**: Arabic syntax shows similarities to other Semitic languages, with the use of verb-subject-object (VSO) order in classical forms and a rich system of noun declensions and verb conjugations.

Arabic's Unique Evolution and Influence

Despite its shared features with other Semitic languages, Arabic has undergone unique developments, particularly through its classical form, which emerged in the Arabian Peninsula. The spread of Islam in the 7th century CE significantly influenced the language, leading to the widespread use of Classical Arabic in religious, literary, and scholarly contexts. Today, Modern Standard Arabic, derived from Classical Arabic, serves as a unifying language for the Arab world, while various dialects of Arabic are spoken natively across different regions. Modern Standard Arabic (MSA), is used nowadays in books, newspapers, on television and radio, taught in schools, and in conversations between educated Arabs from different countries (for example, at international conferences).

Conclusion

Understanding Arabic's place within the Semitic language family provides valuable insights into its historical development, structural features, and cultural significance. This relationship not only highlights the deep connections between Arabic and its sister languages but also underscores the rich linguistic heritage shared across the Semitic-speaking world. As one of the most influential and widely spoken languages today, Arabic continues to be a vital link to the ancient and enduring legacy of the Semitic languages.

2.1: Introduction to the Arabic Language is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

2.2: The Arabic Alphabet الحروف العربية

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Explore the Arabic Alphabet, its names, and its shapes.
- Learn about the Arabic Language.
- Write your name.

Arabic Alphabet

The Arabic language system of writing is different from that of English. Arabic is written and read from right to left, unlike English, which is written and read from left to right. There are 28 letters in Arabic and 26 letters in English. The Arabic alphabet of 28 letters is created by placing various combinations of dots or symbols above or below the letters. The script in Arabic is written in cursive, and there is no differentiation between the upper and the lower case in Arabic like in English. Arabic letters have four shapes, and each shape is distinguished by its location. Locations of the letters are original, initial, medial, and ending, which determine the shape of the letter. Arabic letters are connected except for six letters, which are only joined with the preceding letter and marked with an asterisk (*) in the table below. We call these letters one-way connectors. In addition, Arabic sounds use a wider range of mouth and throat positions than English. Arabic sounds use five major articulation places: the empty space inside the mouth, the throat, the tongue, the two lips, and the nasal cavity.

Arabic Letters Shapes and Sounds in English

Arabic Letters and their counterpart in English

Name of the letter	The Counterpart Sound in English	Original Shape	Initial Shape	Medial Shape	Final Shape
Alif	A	* ا	ا	ـا/ـا	ـا/ـا
Baa	B	ب	بـ	ـبـ	ـب
Taa	T	ت	تـ	ـتـ	ـت
Thaa	Th (like the sound of "th" in Three)	ث	ثـ	ـثـ	ـث
Jeem	J	ج	جـ	ـجـ	ـج
H'aa	H (sound of h with friction)	ح	حـ	ـحـ	ـح
Khaa	Kh (This sound does not exist in English)	خ	خـ	ـخـ	ـخ
Daal	D	* د	د	ـد/ـد	ـد/ـد
Thaal	Th (like the sound of "th" in That)	* ذ	ذ	ـذ/ـذ	ـذ/ـذ
Raa	R	* ر	ر	ـر/ـر	ـر/ـر
Zay	Z	* ز	ز	ـز/ـز	ـز/ـز
Seen	S	س	ســ	ـســـ	ـس
Sheen	sh	ش	شــ	ـشـــ	ـش
Saad	S (deep s)	ص	صـ	ـصـ	ـص
Daad	D (deep d)	ض	ضـ	ـضـ	ـض
Taa	T (deep t)	ط	طـ	ـطـ	ـط
Dhaa	Dh (deep "th")	ظ	ظـ	ـظـ	ـظ

https://human.libretexts.org/@go/page/251231

Name of the letter	The Counterpart Sound in English	Original Shape	Initial Shape	Medial Shape	Final Shape
Ain The Counterpar…	a'	ع	عـ	ـعـ	ـع
Ghain The Counterpar…	Gh	غ	غـ	ـغـ	ـغ
Faa The Counterpar…	F	ف	فـ	ـفـ	ـف
Qaf The Counterpar…	Q	ق	قـ	ـقـ	ـق
Kaf The Counterpar…	K	ك	كـ	ـكـ	ـك
Lam The Counterpar…	L	ل	لـ	ـلـ	ـل
Mim The Counterpar…	M	م	مـ	ـمـ	ـم
Nun The Counterpar…	N	ن	نـ	ـنـ	ـن
Haa The Counterpar…	H	هـ/ ه	هـ	ـهـ	ـه
Waw The Counterpar…	Wh	و *	و	ـو / و	ـو/ و
Yaa The Counterpar…	Y	ي	يـ	ـيـ	ـي

Watch this video, listen to the names of the letters, and try to repeat after him to learn the letters.



Also, watch this video, listen to the names of the letters, and try to repeat after him to learn the letters.



Practice learning the one-way connectors letters.

Practice learning the Arabic Letters

? Exercise 2.2.1

Name at least five letters that you see in the picture.



Figure 2.2.1: Arabic keyboard. (CC BY 2.0; Binter at German Wikimedia via source)

Answer

Example: Letters Noon, Meem, Haa, Khaa, Jeem, and H'aa.

? Exercise 2.2.2

Look at the picture and name the letters, and name the Arabic letters.



Figure 2.2.2: Stop Road Sign. (CCO; talk via source)

Answer

The letters are Qaaf and Faa.

2.2: The Arabic Alphabet الحروف العربية is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1.1: The Arabic Al phabet الحروف العربية** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

2.3: Arabic Script الكتابة بالعربية

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about the Arabic Script.

Introduction to the Arabic Language Script

Welcome to the fascinating world of the Arabic language! As a new Arabic learner, you'll quickly discover that the Arabic script is unique, beautiful, and deeply rooted in history and culture. Understanding the script is a crucial first step in your journey to mastering Arabic.

The Basics of the Arabic Script

The Arabic script is an abjad, meaning it primarily records consonants, though vowels are indicated by diacritical marks. Here are some key features:

1. **Alphabet Composition**: The Arabic alphabet consists of 28 letters, each with its own distinctive shape.
2. **Right-to-Left Writing**: Arabic is written and read from right to left, which might be different from what you're used to with Latin-based scripts.
3. **Cursive Nature**: The letters in Arabic are connected in a cursive style, even in print. This means that letters change shape depending on their position within a word: initial, medial, final, or isolated.
4. **Diacritical Marks**: While basic texts may omit them, Arabic uses diacritical marks (tashkil) to indicate short vowels and other pronunciation aids, which are essential for learners.

Unique Features

1. **Root System**: Words in Arabic are often built from a set of three consonant roots, which convey core meanings. This root system is a defining characteristic of the language and helps in understanding and building vocabulary.
2. **Calligraphy**: Arabic script is renowned for its calligraphic art, transforming writing into an expressive art form that is both functional and visually captivating.

Learning the Script

1. **Letter Shapes**: Start by familiarizing yourself with the shapes of each letter in their various forms (initial, medial, final, and isolated).
2. **Pronunciation**: Practice the sounds associated with each letter. Arabic contains some sounds that are uncommon in many other languages, so listening and repeating are key.
3. **Writing Practice**: Write the letters and simple words regularly. The cursive nature means that learning how letters connect is crucial.
4. **Diacritical Marks**: Begin with texts that include diacritical marks to help you with pronunciation and understanding. As you advance, you'll learn to read without them.

Importance of Learning the Arabic Script

Understanding the Arabic script opens doors to a rich cultural heritage and a vast body of literature, both classical and modern. It is the key to accessing historical texts, religious scriptures like the Quran, and contemporary media. Moreover, learning the script is an important step in developing reading, writing, and comprehension skills in Arabic, setting a strong foundation for fluency.

Arabic script consists of two separate layers: the first layer consists of consonants and long vowels, and the second consists of diacritical marks (accents). Diacritical marks are called Tashkeel in Arabic. "Tashkeel" are the marks used as phonetic guides, including the short vowels and the grammatical markers. However, they are not included in handwriting. The Arabic language has a one-to-one correspondence between sounds and letters. The Arabic written system is regularly phonetic, meaning the words are generally written as pronounced. Arabic letters are connected letters and each letter has two connectors, this means the letter can be connected to preceded and followed letters in the same word. However, there are six letters that have one connector from the right

side and can't be connected from the left side. Arabic letters are connected except 6 letters, which are only joined with the preceding letter د ذ ر ز و

Example 2.3.1

The letter ب is a two side connector letter. Notice how the letter ب is written in the next four words using the four shapes, and how it is connected to the previous, and followed letters.

بابٌ - بَيْتٌ - بِيبِع - شَبْبُ

Example 2.3.2

The letter د is a one-side connector letter. Watch the letter د is written in the four words using the four shapes and how it is connected to the previous letter and disconnected from the following letter in the same word.

دُبٌّ - بَدْر - سَدُ- دود

As you embark on this exciting journey, remember that mastering the Arabic script is a gradual process. With practice and patience, you'll soon find yourself reading and writing Arabic with confidence and appreciation for its beauty and intricacy. Welcome to the world of Arabic.

2.3: Arabic Script الكتابة بالعربية is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1.2: Arabic Diacritical Marks علاماتُ التَّشكيل** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

2.4: Arabic Diacritical Marks علاماتُ التَّشكيل

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about the short vowels, and the diacritics.

Diacritics التَّشكيل

Short Vowels الحركات

There are three short vowels in Arabic, the length of these short vowels corresponds to the length of most English vowels. Short vowels are indicated in the Arabic Script by symbols written above or below the consonant and dots.

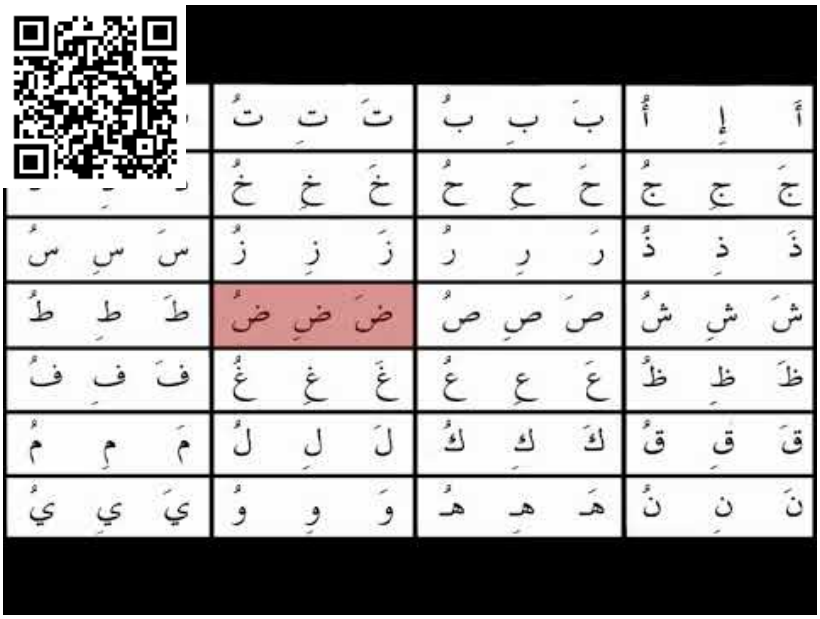
Fatah's sound is "a" and it comes above the letter.

Dhama's sound is "u" and it comes above the letter.

Kasra's sound is "e" and it comes under the letter.

Example: بَ ، بُ ، بِ

Watch the video and listen to the sound of the letters with short vowels: Fatha, Dhama, and Kasra



The absence of the short vowels "Sukoon" السكون

The word "Sukoon" means quiet, silence in Arabic. Linguistically the concept of "Sukoon" is the absence of a short vowel following the consonant. Also, Arabs use "Sukoon" at the end of the words in spoken Arabic. You should know that no Arabic word starts with "Sukoon", and a new syllable begins after it. The shape of "Sukoon" is a small circle. Also, for your information, the letters that carry "Sukoon" should take longer to pronounce.

The Marker of "Shadda" الشدة

"Shadda" is an Arabic word, and it means strength. "Shadda" is one of the diacritical marks, and it doubles the consonant it is written on. The first consonant has no vowel, and the second carries one of the diacritical marks except "Sukoon." The technique of pronouncing the consonant with "Shadda" is to stress it like stressing the letter T in the English word "Skittle" and stressing the letter Z in the word "Sizzle." "Shadda" can carry the short vowels and Tanween. The shape of "Shadda" is a small w above the letter.

Tanween

Tanween function is like the article "a" or "an" in English which indicates the indefinite article. However, "Tanween" can accompany singular and plural nouns in Arabic because it is the sign of the indefinite article. "Tanween" sign is double of the same short vowel, and it always comes at the end of the nouns only. Verbs do not take tanween.

There are three types of "Tanween." "Tanween" Fateh, Dhama and Kasrah. "Tanween" indicates the indefinite statute of the word, like using the article "a" or "an" for nouns. "Tanween" Fateh needs support, so it always uses an Alif when it comes at the end of the noun, Tanween Dhamah does not need a support, and Tanween Kasrah comes under the letter. Also, the "Tanween" is the sound of the short vowels, and the letter "N" is added to the end of the word after the vowel.

Example 2.4.3

Listen to the audio to hear the sound of the Tanween.

Tanween Fateh تنوين الفتح

0:00 / 0:01

Tanween Dhama تنوين الضم

0:00 / 0:01

Tanween Kasra تنوين الكسر

0:00 / 0:01

Shapes and sounds of the Short Vowels

Short Vowel (الحركة)	Shape	Sound
Fataha		0:0
Dhama		0:0
Kasra		0:0
Sukoon		
Shadda		
Tanweem Fateh		
Tanween Dhama		
Tanween Kasra		

Example: You will see the letters ع ، ل ، م using them in the same order, but using different diacritical marks.

Example 2.4.4

Example: You will see the letters ع ، ل ، م using them in the same order, but using different diacritical marks. You can see the colored diacritical marks in the picture below.

1. عُلِمَ	2. عُلِمْ	3. عَلَمٍ
4. عَلِمَ	5. عَلَماً	6. عَلَمٌ
7. عُلِّمَ	8. عَلَّمَ	9. عِلْمُ
10. عِلْمٌ	11. عِلْماً	12. عِلْمٍ

Watch the video and listen to the pronunciation of the words in orders from 1 to 12 in the audio below.



2.4: Arabic Diacritical Marks علاماتُ التَّشكيل is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1.2: Arabic Diacritical Marks علاماتُ التَّشكيل** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

2.5: Long Vowels المدود

Long Vowels (Al-Mudood) المدود

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about the Arabic letters' articulation places and the long vowels in Arabic.
- Differentiate between the long and short vowels.

Introduction

A letter is a sound that needs an articulation point, so each letter has a different sound and articulation (see figure **2.5.1**). Each letter has a general and specific articulation to differentiate the sound and produce particular characteristics that define the sound of the letter.

The Articulation places of the Arabic Letters are:

1. The empty space in the mouth and the throat “Al-jawf”
2. The throat "Al-halq"
3. The tongue "Al-lisan"
4. The lips "As-shafatan"
5. The nasal passage "Al-khayshoom"

The sounds of the long vowels are created when the air vibrates the vocal cords in the larynx. The space in the mouth and throat “Al-jawf” is the articulation place for the three long vowels, so there is no specific point for articulation. There are three long vowels in Arabic, and they are written using three letters. The pronunciation of each long vowel is twice as long as the regular English vowel and double the length of the short vowel in Arabic. The estimated sound length for the long vowel is the time for opening and closing the index (pointer) finger. Syllables in Arabic begin with a consonant with a short vowel and can't start with a long vowel.

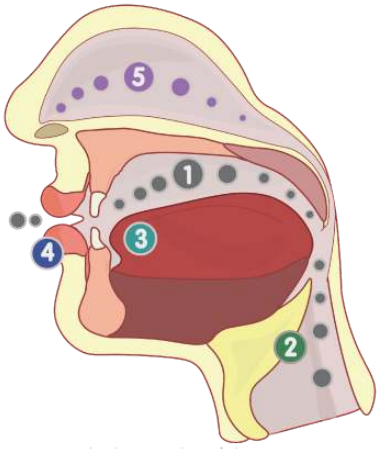


Figure **2.5.1**: The five articulation places of the Arabic letters.

Long Vowels in Arabic

Long vowels in Arabic are presented by three letters Alif, Waw, and Yaa. These letters can have different functions as a consonant or long vowel.

The letter Alif is the long vowel "ا"=aa. Hear this sound in the recording below.

The letter Waw is the long vowel "و"= oo/uu. Hear this sound in the recording below.

The letter Yaa is the long vowel "ي"=ee/ii. Hear this sound in the recording below.

Long Vowel Alif (ا)

Pronunciation of the long vowel Alif (ا)

Listen and repeat

The long vowel Alif "ا" is pronounced "aa" which is the double time of the short vowel "Fataha." The long vowel Alif "ا" is preceded by a consonant with a short vowel "Fataha." Open your mouth the same way when you open your mouth to say "aaa" in front of the doctor to pronounce the long vowel "Alif." You should know that the long vowel Alif following an emphatic consonant takes on emphatic properties.

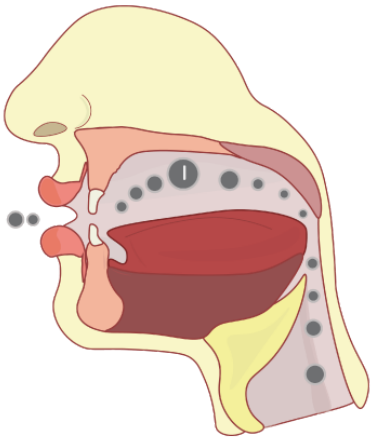


Figure **2.5.2**: Pronouncing the long vowel Alif "aa"



Figure **2.5.3**: Shape of the mouth, pronouncing the long vowel Alif "aa"

Writing of the long vowel Alif (ا)

The letter Alif is written at the beginning of the word as a single stroke, drawn from top to bottom. In addition, the letter Alif is written from the bottom up when it follows another letter. The letter Alif does not connect to the letter following it, since it does not have a connector from the left side. The letter Alif has one connector from the right side to connect to the preceding letter.

The long vowel Alif (ا)

The form	Final form of the long vowel Alif "ا"	Medial form of the long vowel Alif "ا"	Initial form of the long vowel Alif "ا"	Independent form of the long vowel Alif "ا"
The shape	ـا / ا	ـا	ا	ا

Long Vowel Waw (و)

Pronunciation of the long vowel Waw (و)

0:00 / 0:00

Listen and repeat

The long vowel Waw "و" is pronounced "uu" or "oo" like in the word "wool," which is the double time of the short vowel "Dhama." Therefore, the long vowel Waw "و" is preceded by a consonant with a short vowel "Dhama." The shape of the mouth when pronouncing the long vowel Waw is a small circle the size of a pencil bottom.

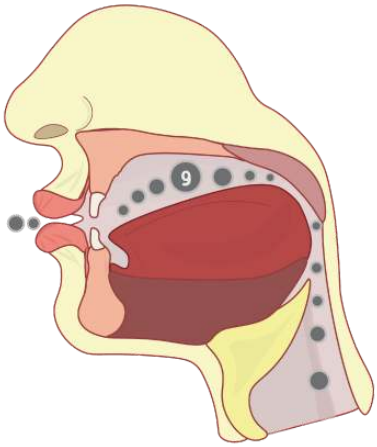


Figure **2.5.1**: Pronouncing the long vowel Waw "oo"

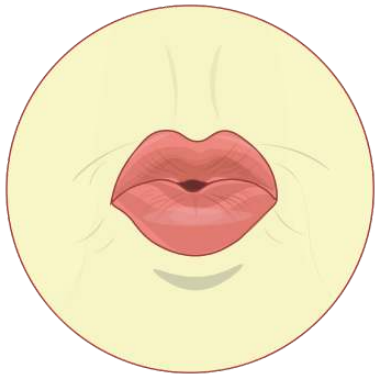


Figure **2.5.1**: Shape of the mouth, pronouncing the long vowel Waw "oo"

Writing of the long vowel Waw (و)

Like the letter Alif, the letter Waw does not connect to the following letter. To write independent or initial (و) start on the line, loop clockwise to the left and up, and then swing down into the tail, which should dip well below the line. If there is a connector on the right side of the letter, it leads to the beginning point of the loop.

The form	Final form of the long vowel Waw و	Medial form of the long vowel Waw و	Initial form of the long vowel Waw و	Independent form of the long vowel Waw و
The shape	ـو / وـ	ـو	و	و

Long Vowel Yaa (ي)

Pronunciation of the long vowel Yaa (ي)

0:00 / 0:00

Listen and repeat

The long vowel Yaa (ي) is pronounced "ee" or "ii" like in the word "deep," which is the double time of the short vowel "Kasra." Therefore, the long vowel Yaa "ي" is preceded by a consonant with a short vowel "Kasra." The shape of the mouth when pronouncing the long vowel Yaa is like a straight line.

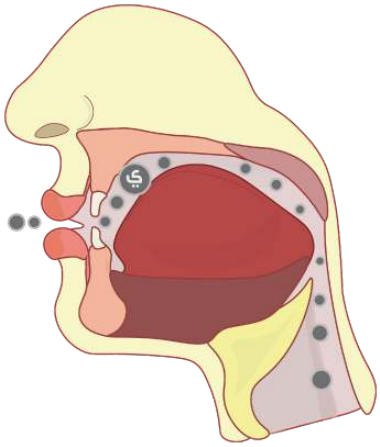


Figure 2.5.1: Pronouncing the long vowel Yaa "ee"



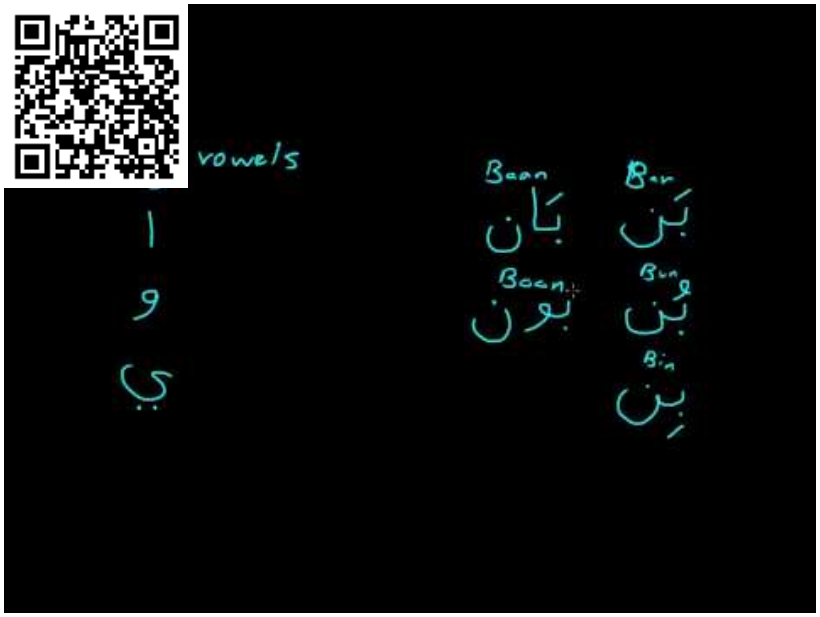
Figure 2.5.1: Shape of the mouth, pronouncing the long vowel Yaa "ee"

Writing of the long vowel Yaa (ي)

The independent and final forms of the letter Yaa (ي) differ from the initial and medial forms. All shapes of (ي) retain the two dots below. Writing the independent (ي), start above the line and curve slightly upwards and around in an s-like shape. Continue below the line into a wide, flat curve, and make sure to bring the tail all the way back up over the line. The initial and medial ي starts with the tooth and puts the dots beneath the body, letter ي connects to the letters that follow and precede it.

The form	Final form of the long vowel Waw ي	Medial form of the long vowel Waw ي	Initial form of the long vowel Waw ي	Independent form of the long vowel Waw ي
The shape	ـي	ـيـ	يـ	ي

Watch this video to learn more about the long and short vowels in Arabic.



https://human.libretexts.org/@go/page/251233

Example 2.5.1

Listen to these words. You hear the word with the short vowels, and then the word with the long vowel.

The Words

Words with three letters with short vowels and the same word with long vowel

The Letters	The word with the short vowels	The word with the long vowel
ع ل م	عَلَم	عَالَم
ش ب ت	شَبَت	شَابَـت
خ ر ب	خَرَبَ	خَرابَ
ك ت ب	كَتَبَ	كَاتَب

0:00 / 0:00

Exercise 2.5.1

Practice to write the long vowels " حروف المد."

Practicing the long vowels المدود

The long vowel	independent form	Initial form	Medial/ middle form	final form
Long vowel Alif مد الألف				
Long vowel Waw مد الواو				
Long vowel Yaa مد الياء				

Answer

The long vowel	independent form	Initial form	Medial/ middle form	final form
Long vowel Alif مد الألف	ا	ا	ـا / ـا	ـا / ـا
Long vowel Waw مد الواو	و	و	ـو / و	ـو / و
Long vowel Yaa مد الياء	ي	ي	ـيـ	ـي

Match the shape of the mouth when pronouncing the long vowel with the tongue position.

Listen to the audio, and then choose true or false.

2.5: Long Vowels المدود is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1.3: Long Vowels المدود** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: Chapter Three- Greeting

Chapter Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Learn the letters: ب - ت - ث - ن (consonants, vowels) with their four different shapes and sounds.
- Learn new vocabulary.
- Greet someone in a formal and informal situation.
- Learn about the Northern Levant countries (Syria, Lebanon).

3.1: Letter Baa- الحرف باء
3.2: Letter Taa- الحرف تاء
3.3: Letter Thaa- الحرف ثاء
3.4: Letter Noon الحرف نون
3.5: Vocabulary
3.6: Dialog - Greetings
3.7: Northern Levant- Syria
3.8: Northern Levant- Lebanon
3.9: Assessment

3: Chapter Three- Greeting is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

3.1: Letter Baa- الحرف باء

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ب in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ب with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The Arabic alphabet is a rich and intricate script used widely across the Arab world and by millions of people globally. Among its 28 letters, the letters ب (Baa), ت (Taa), ث (Thaa), and ن (Noon) hold particular significance due to their common usage and distinctive characteristics. These letters not only form the foundation for many words in the Arabic language but also exemplify the script's unique aesthetic and phonetic properties.

The letter ب (Baa) represents the 'b' sound, similar to its counterpart in English, and is crucial in constructing a variety of everyday words. Following it, the letter ت (Taa) corresponds to the 't' sound, playing a vital role in spoken and written Arabic. The letter ث (Thaa) produces a sound akin to the English 'th' in "think," adding a distinct element to the phonetic landscape of Arabic. Lastly, the letter ن (Noon) conveys the 'n' sound, and its usage is integral in numerous common terms and names.

These letters share a visual similarity in their isolated forms, distinguished by the placement and number of dots above or below them. Understanding and mastering these letters is essential for anyone learning Arabic, as they frequently appear in both simple and complex linguistic constructs. Through their study, learners gain insights into the broader structure and beauty of the Arabic language.

The Letter Baa ب

0:00 / 0:00

Pronunciation of The Letter Baa' ب

The letter Baa' **ب** is pronounced like “*b*” in English. It is a consonant letter that gives the vowels a frontal quality. The place of articulation for the letter Baa' is by closing the two lips together, using the wet part of the lower lip. Baa' connects from both ends when it is in the middle position.

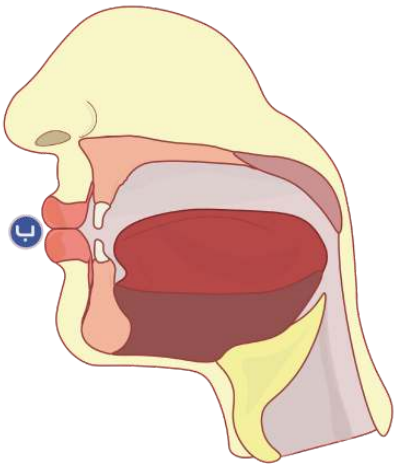


Figure 3.1.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ب

Pronunciation of letter Baa "ب" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of Letter Baa with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	بَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	بُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	بِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	بْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Baa "ب" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter Baa with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	با	
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	بو	
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	بي	

How to write the letter ب

The letter ب is a connecting letter and attaches to any letter preceding or following it within the same word. The main parts of this letter are the initial tooth and the dot beneath the body, which remain the same in all four shapes of the letter When this letter is placed at the end of a word, a second tooth is added at the tail of the letter. The tail is omitted when ب connects to another letter. You write the letter ب on the line from right to left. Begin with a small tooth or a small hook بـ then continue straight over the line, and end with another hook or tooth. After that, place the dot below the body of the letter. To write the letter ب at the beginning of the word, you write the tooth, and then continue straight as the exact length of the body (connector) and place the dot under the tooth بـ. Letter Baa ب has two connectors or segments. When ب occurs in the middle position, the letter connects to the preceding and following letters ـبـ. The final ـب looks like the independent ب. It connects to the preceding letter with the attached segment unless the previous letter does not have a connector. (Watch the video)

How to write the letter ب

Letter at the End of a Word	Letter in the Middle of a Word	Letter at the Beginning of a Word	Letter Shape
ـب	ـبـ	بـ	ب

The video below demonstrates how to write the letter Baa' ب :



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Baa باء الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Practice Letter Baa باء الحرف

3.1: Letter Baa- باء الحرف is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1: Letters ء ي ث ت ب** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

3.2: Letter Taa- تاء الحرف

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ت in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ت with short and long vowels.

The Letter Taa' ت

0:00 / 0:00

Pronunciation of The Letter Taa' ت

The letter Taa' is pronounced using the tip of the tongue with the roots of the top two incisors with aspiration. Taa' connects from both ends when it is in the middle position.

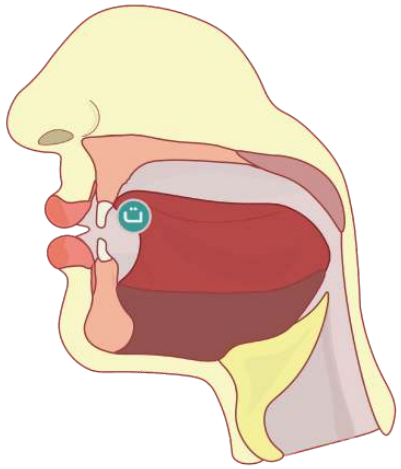


Figure 3.2.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ت

Pronunciation of letter "ت" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Taa with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	تَ	
Dhama الضمة	تُ	
Kasra الكسرة	تِ	
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	تْ	

Pronunciation of the letter Taa "ت" with long vowels

Pronunciation of Letter Taa with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	تا	
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	تو	
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	تي	

How to write the letter ت

The letter ت has the same shapes as the letter ب in all placements. However, it is written with two dots above its body, similar to a dash.

How to write the letter ت

Letter at the End of a Word	Letter in the Middle of a Word	Letter at the Beginning of a Word	Letter Shape
ـت	ـتـ	تـ	ت

The video below demonstrates how to write the letter Taa' ت :



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Taa تاء الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Practice Letter Taa تاء الحرف

3.2: Letter Taa- تاء الحرف is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1: Letters ء ي ث ت ب** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

3.3: Letter Thaa- الحرف ثاء

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ث in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ث with short and long vowels.

The Letter Thaa' ث

0:00 / 0:00

Pronunciation of The Letter Thaa' ث

The letter Thaa' is pronounced like the sound of "*th*" in the word three, thumb, and truth. The articulation point of Thaa' ث is the tip of the tongue with the ends of the upper two incisors. Thaa' connects from both ends when it is in the middle position.

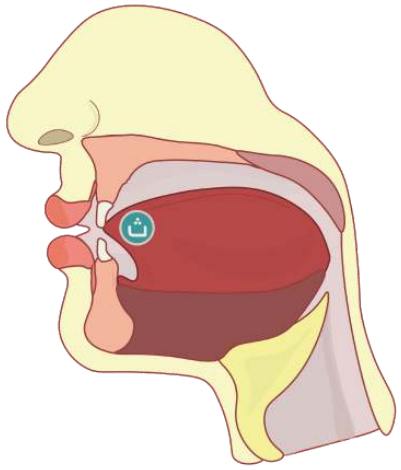


Figure 3.3.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ث

Pronunciation of the letter Thaa "ثـ" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Thaa with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	ثَ	
Dhama الضمة	ثُ	
Kasra الكسرة	ثِ	
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	ثْ	

Pronunciation of the letter Thaa "ث" with long vowels

Pronunciation of Letter Thaa with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	ثا	
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	ثو	
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	ثي	

How to write the letter ث

The letter ث is a connecting letter with two connectors, and it has the same shape as the letters ب ت. The letter ث is written like ب ت, but has three dots on the top. In handwriting, the three dots are connected and appear in the shape of the upside-down English letter "v".

How to write the letter ث

Letter at the End of a Word	Letter in the Middle of a Word	Letter at the Beginning of a Word	Letter Shape
ـث	ـثـ	ثـ	ث

The video below demonstrates how to write the letter Thaa' ث :



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Thaa ثاء الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Practice Letter Thaa ثاء الحرف

3.3: Letter Thaa- ثاء الحرف is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1: Letters ء ي ث ت ب** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

3.4: Letter Noon الحرف نون

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ن in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ن with short and long vowels.

The Letter Noon ن

0:00 / 0:00

Pronunciation of The Letter Noon ن

This letter Noon ن is pronounced using the tip of the tongue and what lies opposite to it from the gum, like the English word "noon." This letter connects from both ends when it is in the middle position. (see the table and figure)

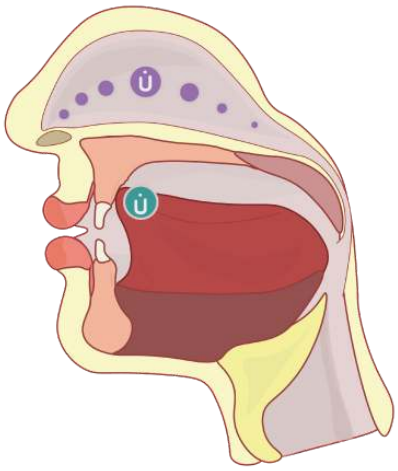


Figure 3.4.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ن

Pronunciation of letter Noon "ن" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of Letter Noon with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	نَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	نُ	:0
Kasra الكسرة	نِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	نْ	0:0

Pronunciation of letter Noon "ن" with long vowels

Pronunciation of Letter Noon with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	نا	0:0
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	نو	0:0
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	ني	0:0

How to write the letter ن

The letter ن is a connecting letter whose shape resembles the ب in the initial نـ, and medial position ـنـ, except for the placement of the dot above the letter. It differs from ب in that the independent and final forms of ن take a characteristic tail shape that dips well below the line.

In the final position, ـن begins with a tooth, dips immediately into a deep tail below the line, and comes back up across the line.

How to write the letter ن

Letter at the End of a Word	Letter in the Middle of a Word	Letter at the Beginning of a Word	Letter Shape
ـن	ـنـ	نـ	ن

The video below demonstrates how to write the letter Noon ن :



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Noon نون الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Practice Letter Noon الحرف نون

3.4: Letter Noon الحرف نون is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1: Letters ء ي ث ت ب** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

3.5: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn new vocabulary using the new letters in this chapter.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

2.2.1. Vocabulary

This table provides vocabulary consisting of the letters you have learnt so far:

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Recording
 Girl	Girl	بِنْت	
 Figs	Figs	تين	
 Berries	Berry	توت	
 Door	door	باب	
 Brown	Brown	بُنّي	
 Beirut	Beirut	بَيروت	0:00 / 0:00
 YouTube	YouTube	يوتيوب	0:00 / 0:00

2.2.2. Cognate Words

Cognates are words used in multiple languages originating from the same linguistic root. Some examples are the words **Tennis**, **Piano**, **Pizza**, **Plastic**, **Petrol**, **Bank**, and **Balloon**.

The table below presents examples of famous cognate words that are used in English and Arabic:

Cognate Word in English	Cognate Word in Arabic	Image	Recording of Pronunciation
Tennis	Tennis/تنس	 Tennis	
Piano	Piano/بيانو	 Piano	
Pizza	Pizza/بيتزا	 Pizza	
Plastic	Plasteek/بلاستيك	 Plastic	
Petrol	Petrol/بترول	 Petrol	
Bank	Bank/بنك	 Bank; CC BY-SA 4.0	
Balloon	Balon/بالون	 Balloon	

Activities

3.5: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **2: Vocabulary** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

3.6: Dialog - Greetings

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Identify formal and informal greetings in Arabic.
- Greet and reply to others at different times of the day.

Introduction

Greetings are an essential part of any language, serving as the gateway to communication and interaction. In Arabic, greetings are rich and varied, reflecting the cultural importance placed on politeness, respect, and hospitality. Understanding the nuances between formal and informal greetings in Arabic can help you navigate different social contexts with ease and confidence.

Formal Greetings

Formal greetings in Arabic are used in professional settings, with elders, or in situations where respect and decorum are paramount. Here are some common formal greetings that you can listen to and repeat:

- السلام عليكم (As-salāmu ʿalaykum):

  Translation: "Peace be upon you."

  Usage: This is a universal greeting used in many parts of the Arab world. It is often used in both formal and informal settings, but it carries a level of formality and respect.

  Response: وعليكم السلام (Wa ʿalaykumu as-salām) - "And peace be upon you."

0:00 / 0:00

- صباح الخير (Sabāḥ al-khayr):

  Translation: "Good morning."

  Usage: This greeting is used in the morning and is appropriate for formal settings.

  Response: صباح النور (Sabāḥ an-nūr) - "Morning of light."

0:00 / 0:00

- مساء الخير (Masāʾ al-khayr):

  Translation: "Good evening."

  Usage: Used in the evening, this is a formal way to greet someone.

  Response: مساء النور (Masāʾ an-nūr) - "Evening of light."

0:00 / 0:00

- كيف حالك؟ (Kayfa ḥāluka/ḥāluki):

  Translation: "How are you?"

  Usage: This can be used in formal settings to inquire about someone's well-being.

  Response: بخير، شكراً (Bi-khayr, shukran) - "I am well, thank you."

0:00 / 0:03

Informal Greetings

Informal greetings are more relaxed and are typically used among friends, family, and peers. These greetings reflect a closer, more casual relationship. Here are some examples that you can listen to and repeat:

- مرحبا (Marḥabā):

  Translation: "Hello."

  Usage: A common, informal greeting used at any time of the day.

  Response: مرحبا (Marḥabā) or أهلاً (Ahlan) - "Hello."

0:00 / 0:03

- أهلاً (Ahlan):

  Translation: "Hi" or "Welcome."

  Usage: Informal and friendly, used among close acquaintances.

  Response: أهلاً (Ahlan) - "Hi."

0:00 / 0:02

- كيفك؟ (Kayfak):

  Translation: "How are you?" (informal, masculine)

  Usage: Used among friends and family.

  Response: منيح، شكراً (Mniḥ, shukran) - "I am good (masculine), thank you."

0:00 / 0:03

. كيفك؟ (Kayfik):

Translation: "How are you?" (informal, feminine)

Usage: Used among friends and family.

Response: منيحه، شكراً (Mniḥa, shukran) - "I am good (feminine), thank you."

0:00 / 0:03

. شو الأخبار؟ (Shū al-akhbār?):

Translation: "What's the news?" or "What's up?"

Usage: Informal, casual greeting to ask about someone's day or news.

Response: ما في شي جديد (Ma fī shī jadīd) - "Nothing new."

0:00 / 0:03

Practice Greetings

3.6: Dialog - Greetings is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

3.7: Northern Levant- Syria

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Explore the Northern Levant countries: Syria, its famous cities, most famous historical places, and its traditional food and clothes.

The Levant

Welcome to your journey of learning Arabic! As you begin to explore this beautiful language, it's essential to learn about the rich cultural and historical contexts in which it is spoken. The Levant comprises four Arab countries: Syria, Lebanon, Jordan, and Palestine. Today, let's take a closer look at two fascinating countries in the Northern Levant: Syria and Lebanon.



Figure.1: The Map of Levant Countries in the Middle East. (SpLoT, CC)

Introduction to Syria

Syria, known as "سوريا" in Arabic, is a country with a deep and diverse history. Located in the heart of the Middle East, Syria boasts a variety of landscapes, from the Mediterranean coast to the deserts in the east. Its capital, Damascus ("دمشق"), is one of the oldest continuously inhabited cities in the world. Here are a few critical points about Syria:

- **History and Culture**: Syria has a rich cultural heritage, influenced by various civilizations such as the Phoenicians, Greeks, Romans, and Ottomans. This mix of influences has created a vibrant cultural tapestry evident in its architecture, music, and art.
- **Language**: Arabic is the official language, and the Syrian dialect ("اللهجة السورية") is widely spoken. Understanding the Syrian dialect can provide a solid foundation for grasping Levantine Arabic, understood across much of the Arab world.
- Map of Syria:



Figure 3.7.2: Map of Syria. (Copyright; Rightmeow2, via source)

- Learn the names of the most important cities in Syria.

This table shows the major cities in Syria:

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Damascus	دمشق	Dimashq	 Damascus; CC BY 4.0 by Vyacheslav Argenberg
Aleppo	حلب	Halab	 **Aleppo**; CC BY 2.0
Homs	حمص	Hims	 **Homs**; public domain
Hama	حماة	Hama	 **Hama**; CC BY 4.0 by Vyacheslav Argenberg
Latakia	اللاذقيّة	Al Lathikiya	 **Latakia**; CC BY-SA 3.0
Deir Ez Zour	دير الزور	Deir Ez Zour	 **Deir Ez Zour**; CC BY-SA 4.0

Traditional Food

Cuisine: Syrian cuisine is renowned for its delicious and varied dishes, including classics like hummus, falafel, and kebabs. The use of fresh ingredients and a blend of spices make Syrian food a treat for the taste buds. The Levant countries are famous for their tasty dishes all over the world. Many dishes are found in common between all four Levantine countries with little to no difference in ingredients, but the names sometimes vary from one country to another. Most of the famous Syrian food:

- **Mahshi**: Vegetables like zucchini, eggplant, and peppers stuffed with rice, minced meat, and spices, simmered in a tomato broth.
- **Fatteh**: A warm dish with layers of crispy pita, chickpeas, garlic-infused yogurt, and topped with pine nuts or meat, often served at breakfast or lunch.
- **Tabbouleh**: A light, fresh salad made from parsley, tomatoes, bulgur, and lemon juice, often served as part of mezze.
- **Shawarma**: Marinated chicken, beef, or lamb roasted on a vertical spit, sliced thin, and wrapped in flatbread with garlic sauce, pickles, and vegetables.
- **Makdous**: Baby eggplants stuffed with a mixture of walnuts, garlic, and chili peppers, preserved in olive oil for a tangy and savory flavor.
- **Hummus and Baba Ghanouj**: Traditional dips, with hummus made from blended chickpeas, tahini, lemon, and garlic, while baba ghanouj is made from roasted eggplant mixed with tahini and olive oil.
- **Warak Inab**: Grape leaves rolled and stuffed with a mixture of rice, ground meat, and spices, then simmered in a lemony broth. This dish is often part of mezze and is popular for its rich flavor.
- **Oozi** (or **Quzi**) is a traditional Syrian dish typically served during celebrations and special occasions. It consists of **spiced rice** mixed with **ground meat**, usually lamb or beef, **peas**, **carrots**, and **roasted nuts**. The dish can be prepared in two main ways:
  - Served as a **rice platter** with roasted lamb or chicken.
  - Wrapped in **thin filo pastry** or dough and baked until crispy.

Traditional Clothes

Syrian folklore clothing is a vibrant expression of the country's cultural heritage, showcasing the artistry and traditions passed down through generations. These garments are often adorned with intricate embroidery, featuring motifs and patterns that reflect the local history and identity of various Syrian regions.

- Women's folklore attire typically includes the "thobe," a long, ornate dress decorated with colorful threadwork and sometimes adorned with beads or sequins. Each region in Syria has its own distinctive embroidery style, making the garments unique and region-specific. Complementing the "thobe," women might wear a "hijab" or a decorative headscarf, and sometimes a "qabqab," which are traditional wooden clogs.
- Men's folklore clothing often consists of the "jalabiya," a long tunic, paired with a "shemagh" or "keffiyeh," a headscarf that provides protection from the sun and dust. Also, men wear the Shirwal which is pants and it is usually black made from cotton, linen, or polyester. It is baggy, wide at the crotch, with some elastic waist, and tight at the ankles. Men also wear a long-sleeved shirt called Qamis topped with a simple embroidered vest, usually known as Sidrieh. A fabric belt known as *Shamlah* is added around the waist to carry their small belonging inside it.



Figure **3.7.5**: **Syria;** CC BY 2.0



Figure **3.7.6**: Syria; Public Domain



Figure **3.7.7**: Syria; CC BY 2.0

These traditional clothes are not just worn for everyday life; they are crucial in cultural ceremonies, weddings, and festivals, symbolizing pride in Syrian heritage and continuity of ancestral customs. Through these garments, the stories and values of the Syrian people are vividly brought to life, preserving their rich folklore and cultural identity. As modern influences blend with these traditional elements, Syrian clothing continues to evolve while preserving its unique identity.

3.7: Northern Levant- Syria is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

3.8: Northern Levant- Lebanon

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Explore the Northern Levant countries: Lebanon, its famous cities, its most famous historical places, and its traditional food and clothes.

Introduction to the Northern Levant: Lebanon

Lebanon, or "لبنان" in Arabic, is a small yet incredibly diverse country known for its stunning landscapes and rich cultural history. Despite its size, Lebanon offers a variety of experiences, from bustling cities to serene mountain villages. Beirut ("بيروت"), the capital, is often referred to as the "Paris of the Middle East" due to its vibrant culture and nightlife. Key highlights of Lebanon include:

- **History and Culture**: Lebanon's history is equally rich, with influences from the Phoenicians, Romans, Byzantines, and Ottomans. Lebanese culture is celebrated for its contributions to arts, literature, and music, with Beirut being a hub for creativity and innovation.
- **Language**: Arabic is the official language, and the Lebanese dialect ("اللهجة اللبنانية") is widely spoken. This dialect is known for its melodic and easy-to-understand nature, making it an excellent entry point for Arabic learners.
- Map of Lebanon.



Figure 3.1: Lebanon Orthographic Map. (**Ssolbergj**; Licensed SA)

- Learn the names of the most important cities in Lebanon. This table shows the major cities in Lebanon:

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Beirut	بيروت	Bayroot	 Beirut; CC BY-SA 3.0
Jounieh	جونية	Jounieh	 Jounieh; CC BY-SA 4.0
Zahle	زحلة	Zahle	 Zahle; public domain
Tripoli	طرابلس	Trablos	 Tripoli; public domain
Byblos	جبيل	Jubeil	 Byblos; CC BY-SA 4.0
Baalbek	بعلبك	Baalbak	 Baalbek; CC BY-SA 2.0

Traditional Food

Lebanese cuisine is celebrated worldwide for its fresh, flavorful, and healthy dishes that reflect the rich cultural heritage of Lebanon. It emphasizes the use of fresh vegetables, olive oil, garlic, and a variety of herbs and spices, creating a vibrant and aromatic culinary experience. Lebanon's fertile lands and coastal location allow for a diet rich in fresh vegetables, olive oil, fish, and grains. Its dishes reflect a balance of simplicity and richness, influenced by Mediterranean, Arab, and neighboring cultures.

Meals in Lebanon emphasize sharing and hospitality, often bringing together families and friends. Most of the famous Lebanese food:

- **Kibbeh**: A national dish of Lebanon, made from a mixture of finely ground lamb or beef with bulgur wheat and spices. It can be prepared in several ways: fried in ball-shaped croquettes, baked in a tray (Kibbeh bil Sanieh), or served raw (Kibbeh Nayyeh), which is popular in rural areas.
- **Mezze**: A selection of small dishes served as appetizers, including **hummus** (chickpea and tahini dip), **Father Ghanouj** (Ro**labneh** (
- **Manakish**: Often referred to as Lebanese pizza, this is a flatbread topped with a variety of ingredients such as **zaatar** (a mix of thyme, sumac, and sesame seeds), cheese, or ground meat. It is typically eaten for breakfast or as a snack.
- **Fattoush**: A refreshing salad made with lettuce, tomatoes, cucumbers, radishes, and crispy pieces of toasted or fried pita bread. The dressing often contains sumac, which gives it a tangy flavor.
- **Shawarma**: Marinated meat (usually chicken or lamb) cooked on a vertical spit, served in bread or with rice.
- **Baklava**: A popular dessert made from layers of filo pastry filled with nuts, such as pistachios or walnuts, and soaked in syrup or honey.

Traditional Clothes

Lebanese folkloric clothes are a vibrant testament to the country's rich cultural history and regional diversity. These traditional garments, often worn during cultural celebrations, festivals, and weddings, reflect the artistry and heritage of Lebanon. Each region in Lebanon boasts its own unique styles and decorations, resulting in a colorful and diverse array of traditional attire.

- Women’s folkloric clothing typically features the "thobe," a long, elaborately embroidered dress adorned with intricate patterns and bright colors that symbolize regional identity and craftsmanship. Complementing the "thobe," women often wear decorative headscarves or "mandils," adding both beauty and cultural significance to their attire.
- During special occasions, men might also don a "tarboosh," a red fez hat that adds a touch of tradition to their ensemble. Also, men wear Sherwal (شروال), which are traditional baggy trousers that provide ease of movement and comfort.



Figure **3.8.8**: Traditional Lebanese Clothes

Lebanese traditional clothing is more than just attire; it is a significant part of the nation's cultural identity. These garments, with their intricate designs and vibrant colors, tell the story of Lebanon's diverse heritage and the artistry of its people. Whether worn daily in rural areas or during festive occasions, traditional Lebanese clothes continue to celebrate and preserve the rich cultural legacy of the country.

3.8: Northern Levant- Lebanon is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

3.9: Assessment

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Practice and apply what you have learned in this chapter.

Exercises

3.9: Assessment is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Chapter Four- Introduce Self

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Learn the letters: و ي with their four different shapes and sounds and consonant Hamza.
- Learn new vocabulary.
- Introduce yourself to others.
- Learn subject pronouns.
- Learn about Southern Levant Countries (Jordan and Palestine) culture, historical places, traditional food, and clothes.

4.1: Letter Yaa-ياء الحرف

4.2: Letter Waw- واو الحرف

4.3: The Consonant Hamza الهمزة

4.4: Vocabulary

4.5: Subject Pronouns

4.6: Dialog - Introduce Self

4.7: Southeren Levant- Jordan

4.8: Southeren Levant- Palistine

4: Chapter Four- Introduce Self is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

4.1: Letter Yaa-ياء الحرف

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ي in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ي with short and long vowels.
- Learn different functions of the letter ي.

Introduction

The letter Yaa (ياء) is the twenty-eighth and final letter of the Arabic alphabet. It holds a significant place in Arabic script due to its versatile roles and unique features. Represented as "ي" in its isolated form, Yaa is pronounced like the English "y" as in "yes" or sometimes like a long "ee" as in "see," depending on its placement and context within a word.

Functions of the Letter Yaa

- **Consonantal Function**:

1. When Yaa is used as a consonant, it produces the "y" sound, as in the word "يَد" (yad), meaning "hand."
2. In this role, Yaa can appear at the beginning (يـ), middle (ـيـ), or end (ـي) of a word, maintaining its consonantal sound throughout.

- **Vowel Function (Long Vowel)**:

1. Yaa also functions as a long vowel "ee," extending the vowel sound similar to the "ee" in "see." An example is the word "كِتَابِي" (kitābī), meaning "my book."
2. As a long vowel, it elongates the preceding vowel sound and appears in the middle or at the end of words.

- **Yaa with Sukoon (Diphthong Creation)**:
- Yaa combines with certain vowels to form diphthongs, blending two vowel sounds into a single syllable. An example is the combination of Yaa with Fatḥah (a short "a" sound) to produce the diphthong "ay," as in "بَيْت" (bayt), meaning "house."
- **Possessive Pronoun**:

1. In Arabic, Yaa is used as a suffix to indicate possession, similar to "my" in English. For instance, "كِتَابِي" (kitābī) translates to "my book."
2. This possessive Yaa is attached to the end of nouns to denote ownership, making it an essential grammatical tool in constructing possessive phrases.

The letter Yaa (ياء) is a multifaceted character in the Arabic language, serving both consonantal and vocalic purposes. Its ability to function as a consonant, long vowel, possessive pronoun marker, and diphthong creator showcases its versatility and importance. Understanding the various roles of Yaa is crucial for mastering Arabic pronunciation, reading, and grammar.

The Letter Yaa' ي

0:00 / 0:00

Pronunciation of The Letter Yaa' ي

The letter Yaa’ **ي** is pronounced “ee” when acting as a vowel. It can also be a consonant at the beginning of a word, middle, or end, and it can carry a short vowel, be preceded, or be followed by a long vowel.

The consonant yaa' **ي** is pronounced like the sound of the English letter "*y*" in the word "yes." Yaa' place of articulation is in the middle of the tongue and what lies opposite to it from the roof of the mouth. It connects from both ends when it is in the middle position.

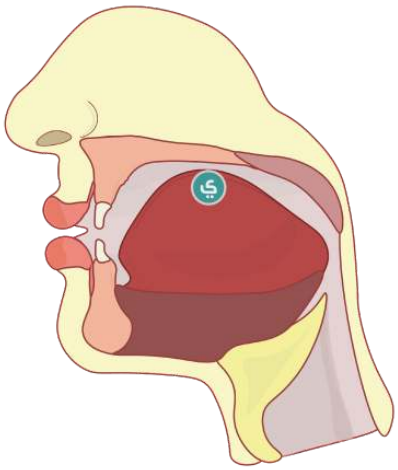


Figure 4.1.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ي

Pronunciation of letter "ي" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Yaa ياء with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	يَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	يُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	يِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	يْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Yaa "ي" with long vowels

Pronunciation of Letter Yaa ياء with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	يا	
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	يو	
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	يي	

How to write the letter ي

The letter ي is a connecting letter. The letter ي is written like ب ت ث in the initial and medial positions. When writing the independent ي, begin above the line and curve slightly upwards and around in an "s" like shape. Continue below the line into a broad, flat curve, and bring the tail back up over the line. You write the final ي the same, but with the addition of a segment.

How to write the letter ي

Letter at the End of a Word	Letter in the Middle of a Word	Letter at the Beginning of a Word	Letter Shape
ـي	ـيـ	يـ	ي

The video below demonstrates how to write the letter Yaa' ي :



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Yaa ياء الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Practice Letter Yaa الحرف ياء

4.1: Letter Yaa-الحرف ياء is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1: Letters ء ي ث ت ب** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

4.2: Letter Waw- الحرف واو

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write و in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter و with short and long vowels.
- Learn different functions of the letter و.

Introduction

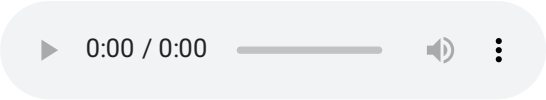
The letter **Waw** (و) is a significant character in the Arabic alphabet, known for its versatility and essential role in the language. It is the 27th letter of the Arabic alphabet and is pronounced as /w/ or as a long vowel /uː/. The form of Waw remains consistent regardless of its position within a word—beginning, middle, or end—making it unique among Arabic letters. Beyond its phonetic functions, Waw also serves critical grammatical purposes. Unlike many other Arabic letters, Waw maintains the same shape regardless of its position in a word, making it relatively easy to recognize and write. The letter **Waw** (و) in Arabic has several important functions that are crucial for understanding and mastering the language. Here are its primary roles:

functions of the Letter Waw

- **Consonant Function:**
  - Waw represents the consonant sound /w/ in words, similar to the English "w." For example, in the word "وردة" (warda), meaning "flower," Waw is pronounced as /w/.
- **Long Vowel Function (/uː/):**
  - Waw also serves as a long vowel, representing the sound /uː/. This is analogous to the English "oo" in "food." For instance, in "نور" (nur), meaning "light," Waw elongates the "u" sound.
- **Conjunction ("and"):**
  - One of the most common uses of Waw is as a conjunction equivalent to "and" in English. It connects words, phrases, and clauses. For example, "كتاب وقلم" (kitab wa qalam) means "a book and a pen."
- **Waw with Sukoon (Diphthongs):**
  - Waw can form diphthongs when combined with other vowels, such as in "سَوْفَ" (sawfa, meaning "will"), where it creates the /aw/ sound.

Understanding these functions of Waw is essential for anyone learning Arabic, as it plays a key role in the language's phonetic, grammatical, and syntactical structures.

The Letter Waw و



Pronunciation of The Letter Waw و

The letter Waw و has two functions like the letter Yaa ي. The first function is as the long vowel و. The second function is as a consonant.

The consonant و can be preceded or followed by a long vowel, or it can or carry a short vowel. It is pronounced “w” as in well, howl, or “wh” in what, why, whale.

The articulation point of the letter waw “و” is the two lips, and it is articulated by forming a circle with both lips without them meeting completely, and pointing the lips to the front.

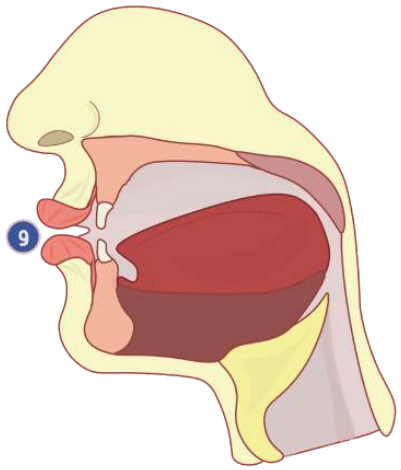


Figure 4.2.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter و

Pronunciation of letter "و" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Waw with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	وَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	وُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	وِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	وْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Waw "و" with long vowels

Pronunciation of Letter Waw with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	وا	
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	وو	
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	وي	

How to write the letter و

The letter و is only connected from one side – the preceding letter – if the preceding letter also has a connector. To write the independent و, begin on the line, make a loop, move clockwise and upwards to the left, and then swing down into the tail, which should dip well below the line.

When writing و in the medial and final positions, begin from the connecting segment, draw a circle of the letter و above the line, and extend the line of و under the line by making a simple curve. (Watch the video)

The letter و in four shapes

Letter at the End of a Word	Letter in the Middle of a Word	Letter at the Beginning of a Word	Letter Shape
ـو	ـو	و	و

The video below demonstrates how to write the letter Waw و :



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Waw واو الحرف.



Practice Letter Waw الحرف واو

4.2: Letter Waw- الحرف واو is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- **1: Letters ء ي ث ت ب** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

4.3: The Consonant Hamza الهمزة

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write الهمزة in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the consonant الهمزة with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The consonant **Hamza** (ء) is a unique and important character in the Arabic alphabet, particularly for first-level language learners. Unlike other letters, Hamza does not have a specific position in the alphabet but represents the glottal stop sound, similar to the quick break in the middle of the English expression "uh-oh." Hamza can appear in various positions within a word: at the beginning, middle, or end.

Functions of the Consonant Hamza

Hamza الهمزة can be written on its own or placed on a carrier letter (seat) such as Alif (أ), Waw (ؤ), or Ya (ئ). For example, in the word "أحمد" (Ahmad), Hamza is placed on Alif at the beginning.

Understanding Hamza's role and its different forms is essential for proper pronunciation and spelling in Arabic, as it often indicates a break in the flow of speech and can change the meaning of words if used incorrectly. For example, "سأل" (sa'al) means "he asked," while "سال" (saal) means "it flowed."

In the Arabic language, no word or syllable begins with a vowel, and what sounds like a vowel is actually a word that begins with a hamza. For example, the word "إمام" (Imam) which means the head of the Muslim community.

Pronunciation of Hamza ئ - ؤ - أ - ء

0:00 / 0:00

It is a sound that you make in English when you say a word that begins with a vowel, like: apple, igloo, egg, order, if, etc. In linguistic terminology, this sound is called a glottal stop. The articulation place of the **ء** is at the deepest part of the throat, which is the furthest away from the mouth and the closest to the chest.

To pronounce **ء**: say *"uh-oh"* several times, as you pronounce the first vowel that point of the place is the articulation of the "Hamza" **ء**.

Remember, Alif, at the beginning of a word, is always a seat for Hamza, never a long vowel.

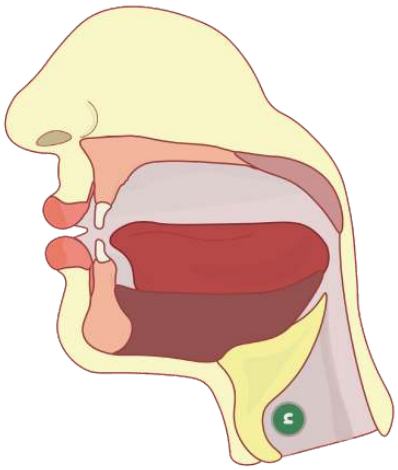


Figure 4.3.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the Consonant Hamza ء

Pronunciation of consonant Hamza "ء" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the consonant Hamza with short vowels and sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Consonant Hamza with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	ءَ - أَ - ؤَ - ئَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	ءُ - أُ - ؤُ - ئُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	ءِ - أِ - ؤِ - ئِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	ءْ - أْ - ؤْ - ئْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the consonant Hamza with long vowels.

Pronunciation of the consonant Hamza with long vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Hamza with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	أَ + ا = آ	:0(
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	ؤو	:0(
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	ئي	:0(

How to write the consonant ء

The actual shape of "Hamza" "ء" is a small "c" shape, which continues into a line on the bottom. (See the table and Video)

The initial Hamza is usually written on top of Alif which carries it.

How to write the consonant ء

Letter at the End of a Word	Letter in the Middle of a Word	Letter at the Beginning of a Word	Letter Shape
ـأ - ـؤ - ـئ	ـأ - ـؤ - ـئـ	أ - ؤ - ئـ	ء - أ - ؤ - ئ

The video below demonstrates how to write the Consonant Hamza ء



Watch the video to learn more about the consonant Hamza الهمزة.



Practice Hamza

4.3: The Consonant Hamza الهمزة is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **1: Letters ء ي ث ت ب** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

4.4: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn new vocabulary using the new letters in this chapter.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

Vocabulary

This table provides vocabulary consisting of the letters you have learned so far:

https://human.libretexts.org/@go/page/268903

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Recording
 Furniture	furniture	أثاث	
 House	House	بَيْت	
 I/Me	I/ me	أنا	
 You (m.)	you (m.)	أنتَ	
 You (f.)	you (f.)	أنتِ	
 Father	Father	أَبٌ	
 Clothes	Clothes	ثِياب	0:00 / 0:00

Cognate Words

Cognates are words used in multiple languages originating from the same linguistic root. Some examples are these words.

Cognates

English	Arabic
France	فرنسا
Asia	آسيا
Europe	أوروبا
America	أمريكا
Africa	إفريقيا
Internet	إنترنيت

Activities

4.4: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **2: Vocabulary** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

4.5: Subject Pronouns

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will:

- Identify some of the separate subject personal pronouns with their different genders: - أنا - أنتَ - أنتِ - نحن - أنتم - هو - هي - هم

Introduction

In Arabic, subject pronouns are essential building blocks for constructing sentences and understanding basic grammar. These pronouns indicate who is performing the action in a sentence, similar to "I," "you," "he," "she," "we," and "they" in English. Arabic pronouns differ slightly based on gender and number, making them a bit more detailed. For example, there are different pronouns for "he" and "she," as well as separate forms for addressing groups of men, women, or mixed groups.

Learning these pronouns الضمائر is crucial for beginners as they form the foundation for creating simple sentences and expressing basic ideas. By mastering Arabic subject pronouns, you will be able to identify and refer to different subjects in a conversation, significantly improving your ability to communicate in Arabic.

Separate Subject Personal Pronouns

This table will introduce you to the Separate Subject Pronouns:

Pronoun in English	Pronoun in Arabic	Number of People and Gender	Pronunciation	Audio
I	أنا	1st person singular (masculine/feminine)	Ana	0:00 / 0:00
We	نحن	1st person plural (masculine/feminine)	Nahnu	0:00 / 0:00
You (m.)	أنتَ	2nd person singular (masculine)	Anta	0:00 / 0:00
You (f.)	أنتِ	2nd person singular (feminine)	Anti	0:00 / 0:00
You (pl. m.)	أنتم	2nd person plural (masculine)	Antom	0:00 / 0:00
He	هو	3rd person singular (masculine)	Huwa	0:00 / 0:00
She	هي	3rd person singular (feminine)	Heya	0:00 / 0:00
They (m.)	هم	3rd person plural (masculine)	Hom	0:00 / 0:00

Video

Watch the video to learn the subject pronouns in context.



Activities

Watch the interactive video below, which has different types of interactions through it to practice subject pronouns. Then, make sure to click "Continue" to proceed through the video.

4.5: Subject Pronouns is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4: Subject Pronouns** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

4.6: Dialog - Introduce Self

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Introduce yourself in Arabic, and ask the other person's name.

Introduction

Acquaintance and dialogue between members of the Arab community is one of the most important means of communication among them. Arabs like to meet new people and have conversations with them whenever they get the chance to meet them, whether at work, college, street, home, etc. The dialogue usually begins with a greeting, the most common and formal greeting is "Asalaamu Alaikum" ("peace be with you"), the response is "wa alaikum salaam" ("and peace be unto you"). A handshake usually comes with a greeting, eye contact, and a smile, after which the two exchange information to get to know each other.

Introducing yourself in Arabic involves a few basic phrases for greeting, stating your name, and asking the other person's name. Here's a simple structure for a beginner:

Greetings and Introductions

1. **Greeting:**
   - **السلام عليكم (As-salamu alaykum)** - Peace be upon you.
   - Response: **وعليكم السلام (Wa alaykum as-salam)** - And peace be upon you.
2. **Introducing Yourself:**
   - **اِسمي (Ismi)** - My name
   - **أنا (name) (Ana [your name])** - I am [your name].
     - Example: **أنا محمد (Ana Muhammad)** - I am Muhammad.
3. **Asking Someone's Name:**
   - **ما اسمكَ؟ (Ma ismuka?)** - What is your name? (to a male)
   - **ما اسمكِ؟ (Ma ismuki?)** - What is your name? (to a female)
4. **Saying Good bye:**
   - **مع السلامة (**Ma'a alsalama) - Good Bye

Full Conversation Example

1. **Person A:**
   - السلام عليكم (As-salamu alaykum)
2. **Person B:**
   - وعليكم السلام (Wa alaykum as-salam)
3. **Person A:**
   - أنا محمد. ما اسمك؟ (Ana Muhammad. Ma ismuka?) - I am Muhammad. What is your name? (to a male)
   - أنا فاطمة. ما اسمكِ؟ (Ana Fatimah. Ma ismuki?) - I am Fatimah. What is your name? (to a female)
4. **Person B:**
   - أنا علي. (Ana Ali) - I am Ali.
   - أنا ليلى. (Ana Layla) - I am Layla.

Additional Polite Expressions

1. **Nice to meet you:**
   - **تشرفت بلقائك (Tasharraftu biliqa'ika)** - Nice to meet you (to a male)
   - **تشرفت بلقائكِ (Tasharraftu biliqa'iki)** - Nice to meet you (to a female)

- Or you can say without gender specification: **تشرفنا (Tasharrafna)** - Nice to meet you for all

2. **How are you?:**
   - **كيف حالك؟ (Kayfa haluka?)** - How are you? (to a male)
   - **كيف حالكِ؟ (Kayfa haluki?)** - How are you? (to a female)
3. **I am fine, thank you:**
   - **أنا بخير، شكراً (Ana bikhayr, shukran)** - I am fine, thank you.
4. **Me too.**

- **وأنا أيضاً, (**Wa ana aydhan) - Nice to meet you, too

Using these basic phrases, you can introduce yourself, greet someone, and ask for their name in Arabic. Practice these to feel more comfortable in introductory conversations.

Dialog #1

In this dialog, the conversation is between two male students. Listen and practice.

0:00 / 0:14

Dialog #1, Greeting and Introducing Self

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Adam: Peace be upon you	Adam: (As-salamu alaykum)	آدم: السلام عليكم
Bob: And peace be upon you	Bob: (Wa alaykum as-salam)	بوب: وعليكم السلام
Adam: My name is Adam. What is your name?	Adam: Ana ismi Adam. Ma Ismuka?	آدم: أنا اِسْمي آدم، ما اِسْمُكَ؟
Bob: My name is Bob.	Bob: Ana ismi Bob.	بوب: أنا اِسْمي بوب
Adam: How are you?	Adam: Kayfa haluka?	آدم: كيفَ حالُكَ؟
Bob: I am good, thanks, and you?	Bob: Ana bikhayr, shukran. Wa anta?	بوب: أنا بخير، شكراً. وَأنتَ؟
Adam: I am fine. Nice to meet you	Adam: Ana bikhayr, Tasharraftu biliqa'ika.	آدم: أنا بخير، تشرفتُ بلقائكَ
Bob:Me too. Good Bye.	Bob: Wa ana aydhan, Ma'a alsalama.	بوب: وأنا أيضاً، معَ السلامة

Dialog #2

In this dialog, the conversation is between two female students. Listen and practice.

0:00 / 0:15

Dialog #2, Greeting and Introducing Self

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Rana: Hello.	Rana: Marḥabān	رنا: مرحباً
Suzan: Hello.	Suzan: Ahlan	سوزان: أهلاً
Rana: My name is Rana. What is your name?	Rana: Ana ismi Rana. Ma Ismuki?	رنا: أنا اِسْمي رنا، ما اِسْمُكِ؟
Suzan: My name is Suzan.	Suzan: Ana ismi Suzan.	سوزان: أنا اِسْمي سوزان
Rana: How are you?	Rana: Kayfa haluki?	رنا: كيفَ حالُكِ؟
Suzan: I am good, thanks, and you?	Suzan: Ana bikhayr, shukran. Wa anti?	سوزان: أنا بخير، شكراً. وَأنتِ؟
Rana: I am fine. Nice to meet you	Rana: Ana bikhayr, Tasharraftu biliqa'iki.	رنا: أنا بخير، تشرفتُ بلقائكِ
Suzan:Me too. Good Bye.	Suzan: Wa ana aydhan, Ma'a alsalama.	سوزان: وأنا أيضاً، معَ السلامة

4.6: Dialog - Introduce Self is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

4.7: Southeren Levant- Jordan

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Explore the Southern Levant countries: Jordan and Palestine, their famous cities, most famous historical places, and their traditional food and clothes.

Facts about Jordan

Jordan, located in the southern part of the Levant, is a country rich in history, culture, and natural beauty. Bordered by Syria, Iraq, Saudi Arabia, Israel, and Palestine, Jordan is a key player in the Middle East, known for its stability and hospitality. The country boasts a diverse landscape that includes the ancient city of Petra, a UNESCO World Heritage site carved into rose-red cliffs; the vast and awe-inspiring Wadi Rum desert, often referred to as the Valley of the Moon; and the serene waters of the Dead Sea, the lowest point on Earth. Jordan's capital, Amman, is a bustling city where modernity and tradition coexist, offering a glimpse into the vibrant life and culture of the Jordanian people. The southern region of Jordan, with its historical sites, archaeological treasures, and stunning natural scenery, provides a profound connection to the rich cultural and historical tapestry of the Levant.

The Hashemite Kingdom of Jordan is an Arab country located in west Asia. It borders Syria to the north, Palestine to the west, Saudi Arabia to the south and south-east, and Iraq to the north-east.

Population: 10.2 million (2020 estimate).

Capital: Amman.

Currency: Jordanian Dinar (JOD).

Official Language: Modern Standard Arabic.



Figure **4.7.1**: Jordan Orthographic M (Rob984; Licensed SA)

Famous Cities

Jordan, a country rich in history and culture, is home to several famous cities that reflect its deep-rooted heritage and modern development. Here are some key cities for Arabic learners to explore:

- **Amman (عمّان)**: The capital and largest city, known for its blend of ancient ruins like the Roman Amphitheater and modern amenities.
- **Petra (البتراء)**: A UNESCO World Heritage Site, Petra is an ancient city carved into red sandstone cliffs, famous for its archaeological significance.
- **Wadi Musa**: This city is the gateway to Petra, and while Petra itself often overshadows it, Wadi Musa offers its own charm with local markets and traditional Jordanian hospitality.
- **Aqaba (العقبة)**: A coastal city on the Red Sea, known for its beautiful beaches and marine life, popular for snorkeling and diving.
- **Jerash (جرش)**: Famous for its well-preserved Roman ruins, including temples, theaters, and colonnaded streets.
- **Madaba (مأدبا)**: Known as the "City of Mosaics," famous for its Byzantine and Umayyad mosaics, including the ancient mosaic map of the Holy Land.
- **Al-Salt (السلط)**: A historic city known for its Ottoman architecture, picturesque streets, and rich cultural history. Al-Salt has been recognized for its traditional hospitality and old buildings, giving it a unique place in Jordanian culture.
- **Wadi Musa**: This city is the gateway to Petra, and while it is often overshadowed by Petra itself, Wadi Musa offers its own charm with local markets and traditional Jordanian hospitality.

These cities reflect Jordan's cultural, historical, and geographical diversity, offering a rich learning experience for Arabic language students. Each city has its own dialects, cultural customs, and historical importance that contribute to a deeper understanding of the Arabic language and Jordanian heritage.



Amman; CC BY 4.0



As Salt; public domain



Irbid; CC BY-SA 4.0



Al Mafraq; CC BY-SA 3.0



Aqaba; public domain



Madaba; CC BY-SA 4.0

Traditional Food

Jordan's traditional cuisine is a flavorful reflection of its rich cultural heritage, offering a variety of dishes that are enjoyed across the country. Here are some key highlights of Jordanian cuisine:

1. **Mansaf**: Considered the national dish of Jordan, Mansaf is a hearty and celebratory meal made of lamb cooked in a fermented dried yogurt sauce called jameed, and served with rice or bulgur. It is traditionally garnished with pine nuts and almonds.
2. **Maqluba**: Literally meaning "upside-down," Maqluba is a one-pot dish featuring layers of meat (usually chicken or lamb), vegetables (such as eggplant, cauliflower, and potatoes), and rice, which is flipped upside-down onto a serving dish before being served.
3. **Musakhan**: A popular dish especially in northern Jordan, Musakhan consists of roasted chicken seasoned with sumac, onions, and pine nuts, served on top of taboon bread. It's known for its tangy and rich flavors.
4. **Falafel**: These deep-fried balls made from ground chickpeas or fava beans mixed with herbs and spices are a beloved street food in Jordan. They are often served in pita bread with tahini sauce, fresh vegetables, and pickles.
5. **Kebabs**: Jordanian kebabs are skewers of grilled meat, typically lamb or chicken, seasoned with a variety of spices. They are often enjoyed with bread, salads, and dips such as hummus and mutabbal.
6. **Mujaddara**: This simple yet satisfying dish consists of lentils cooked with rice or bulgur and flavored with onions and various spices. It is often garnished with caramelized onions and served with yogurt.
7. **Warak Enab**: Also known as stuffed grape leaves, this dish involves grape leaves filled with a mixture of rice, meat, and spices, then cooked until tender. They are often served as an appetizer or side dish.
8. **Zarb**: A traditional Bedouin dish, Zarb is a form of underground barbecue where meat and vegetables are cooked in a sealed pit in the ground. This method infuses the food with a unique smoky flavor.
9. **Kunafa**: A popular dessert, Kunafa is made from thin noodle-like pastry soaked in sweet syrup and layered with cheese or cream. It is often topped with pistachios or other nuts.
10. **Baklava**: A sweet pastry made of layers of filo dough filled with chopped nuts and sweetened with honey or syrup. It's a common treat enjoyed with tea or coffee.

Jordanian cuisine is characterized by its use of fresh ingredients, aromatic spices, and the importance of communal eating, reflecting the country's deep-rooted traditions and hospitality.

Traditional Clothes

Jordanian traditional clothing reflects the rich cultural heritage and diverse history of the region. The most iconic piece of Jordanian attire is the **Thobe**, a long, flowing robe worn by both men and women. Men's thobes are typically white or neutral in color, while women's thobes are often beautifully embroidered with intricate patterns and vibrant colors, showcasing regional variations and tribal affiliations. Another distinctive garment is the **Keffiyeh**, a traditional headscarf worn by Jordanian men. The red and white checkered Keffiyeh, known locally as the **Shemagh**, is particularly associated with Jordan and is often seen as a symbol of national pride. It is worn in various styles, often secured with an **Agal**, a black cord. Women's traditional dress can also include the **Abaya**, a long black cloak, and a headscarf or **Hijab**, which can be adorned with delicate embroidery or embellishments. These traditional

clothes are often worn during cultural festivals, weddings, and other special occasions, preserving Jordan's cultural identity and expressing its rich heritage.



4.7: Southeren Levant- Jordan is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

4.8: Southeren Levant- Palistine

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Explore the Southern Levant countries: Jordan and Palestine, their famous cities, most famous historical places, and their traditional food and clothes.

Facts About Palestine (State of Palestine)

The State of Palestine is an Arab country located in west Asia. It borders Lebanon to the north, the Mediterranean Sea to the west, Egypt to the south-west, Jordan to the east, and Syria to the north-east.

Population: 4.803 million (2020 estimate).

Capital: Jerusalem.

Currency: Palestine Pounds, Jordanian Dinar (JOD), Egyptian Pounds (EGP), and New Shekel (ILS).

Official Language: Modern Standard Arabic.



Figure 4.8.1: This figure presents the major cities of Palestine. GNU general public license

Famous Cities

Palestine is home to many cities rich in history, culture, and heritage. Here are some of the most famous ones:

- **Jerusalem (القدس)**: A city of immense religious and historical significance, known for landmarks like **Al-Aqsa Mosque** and the **Dome of the Rock**. It is sacred to Muslims, Christians, and Jews.
- **Bethlehem (بيت لحم)**: The birthplace of Jesus Christ and home to the **Church of the Nativity**. It is a major site for Christian pilgrims and holds religious and cultural significance.

- **Hebron (الخليل)**: Known for the **Ibrahimi Mosque** and its significance in Islamic history. Hebron is a center for Palestinian culture and commerce.
- **Bethlehem (بيت لحم)**: The birthplace of Jesus Christ, Bethlehem is home to the **Church of the Nativity** and is a major Christian pilgrimage site.
- **Nablus (نابلس)**: Known for its ancient architecture and famous sweets like **Kanafeh**, Nablus has a vibrant cultural and economic life.
- **Gaza (غزة)**: A coastal city with a long history, Gaza is known for its beaches, ancient ruins, and the resilience of its people.
- **Jericho (أريحا)**: Considered one of the oldest continuously inhabited cities in the world, Jericho is famous for its archaeological sites, including **Tell es-Sultan**.
- **Khan Younis (خان يونس)**: Located in the southern Gaza Strip, Khan Younis is known for its historic **Khan Younis fortress** and serves as an important center for trade and agriculture.

Each of these cities offers unique insights into Palestinian culture, history, and the Arabic language, making them essential for any student learning about the region.



Jerusalem; CC BY-SA 4.0



Gaza; public domain



Nablus; CC BY-SA 1.0



Khan Yunis; CC BY-SA 4.0



Bethlehem; CC BY-SA 3.0



Ramallah; CC BY-SA 3.0

Traditional Food

Palestinian traditional food is a rich and diverse culinary heritage that reflects the region's agricultural abundance and cultural influences. The cuisine is characterized by the use of fresh, locally-sourced ingredients, aromatic spices, and time-honored cooking methods. Here are some key highlights of Palestinian traditional food:

1. **Musakhan**: One of the most famous Palestinian dishes, Musakhan consists of roasted chicken seasoned with sumac, onions, and pine nuts, served on top of taboon bread. This dish is known for its tangy and savory flavors.
2. **Maqluba**: Meaning "upside-down," Maqluba is a flavorful one-pot dish made with layers of rice, vegetables (such as eggplant, cauliflower, and potatoes), and meat (usually chicken or lamb). The pot is flipped upside down before serving, creating a visually striking presentation.
3. **Knafeh**: A beloved Palestinian dessert, Knafeh is made from thin noodle-like pastry soaked in sweet syrup, layered with cheese or cream, and often topped with crushed pistachios. It is typically enjoyed warm.
4. **Warak Enab**: Also known as stuffed grape leaves, this dish features grape leaves filled with a mixture of rice, ground meat, and spices. They are simmered until tender and are often served as an appetizer or side dish.
5. **Mujaddara**: A simple yet satisfying dish made of lentils and rice or bulgur, cooked with onions and various spices. It is often garnished with caramelized onions and served with yogurt.
6. **Falafel**: Deep-fried balls made from ground chickpeas or fava beans mixed with herbs and spices. Falafel is a popular street food and is typically served in pita bread with tahini sauce, fresh vegetables, and pickles.
7. **Hummus**: A creamy dip made from blended chickpeas, tahini, lemon juice, and garlic. Hummus is a staple in Palestinian cuisine and is often enjoyed with pita bread or as a side dish.
8. **Makdous**: Small eggplants stuffed with walnuts, garlic, and red pepper, then preserved in olive oil. This dish is commonly enjoyed as part of a breakfast spread or as an appetizer.
9. **Mansaf**: While more commonly associated with Jordan, Mansaf is also enjoyed in Palestinian cuisine. It consists of lamb cooked in a fermented dried yogurt sauce and served with rice or bulgur.
10. **Shakshuka**: A flavorful dish of poached eggs in a spicy tomato and bell pepper sauce, often seasoned with cumin and paprika. It is typically eaten for breakfast or brunch.
11. **Sfeeha**: Also known as Lahm bi Ajeen, these are small, open-faced meat pies made with minced lamb or beef, tomatoes, onions, and spices, baked on a thin bread dough.
12. **Khubz**: Traditional Palestinian bread, often baked in a clay oven. Variations include taboon bread, a flatbread baked on hot stones, and pita bread.

Palestinian cuisine is deeply connected to the land and its produce, making use of fresh herbs, olive oil, and a variety of vegetables. Meals are often communal, emphasizing the importance of family and social gatherings. This culinary tradition not only nourishes but also strengthens cultural ties and preserves the rich heritage of the Palestinian people.

Traditional Clothes

Palestinian traditional clothing is a vibrant expression of the region's cultural heritage, rich in symbolism and history. These garments reflect the unique identities of Palestinian communities, with distinctive styles and patterns that vary across different regions and villages. Here are some key elements of Palestinian traditional clothing:

Women's Traditional Clothing

1. **Thobe (Thawb)**:

- The Thobe is a long, flowing dress that serves as the quintessential piece of traditional Palestinian women's attire. These dresses are typically made of dark, heavy fabric and are richly embroidered with intricate patterns.
- The embroidery, known as **Tatreez**, features geometric shapes, floral designs, and motifs that represent the wearer's village or region. For example, the colors and patterns might indicate whether the wearer is from Ramallah, Hebron, or Gaza.
- The Thobe is often accessorized with a **headscarf** (Hijab) or **shawl** that complements the dress.

2. **Shambar**:
   - The Shambar is a large, rectangular shawl or veil traditionally worn by women, often draped over the head and shoulders. It is sometimes adorned with embroidery and tassels.
3. **Malak Dress**:
   - Known as the "Queen's Dress," the Malak dress is a heavily embroidered Thobe that is usually worn on special occasions, such as weddings and festivals. It features elaborate designs and is often made from luxurious fabrics like silk.

Men's Traditional Clothing

1. **Qumbaz (Jalabiya)**:
   - The Qumbaz is a long, loose robe worn by men. It is typically made of lightweight fabric, making it suitable for the region's climate. The Jalabiya may be plain or striped, and is often worn with a belt.
2. **Keffiyeh (Shemagh)**:
   - The Keffiyeh is a traditional headscarf that is a powerful symbol of Palestinian identity. The black-and-white checkered pattern is most commonly associated with Palestine, although red-and-white variations are also worn.
   - It is typically worn wrapped around the head and secured with an **Agal**, a black cord.
3. **Sirwal**:
   - Sirwal are loose-fitting trousers traditionally worn by men under the Qumbaz or Jalabiya. They are comfortable and practical, often made from cotton or linen.

Accessories

1. **Belts and Sashes**:
   - Both men and women often wear belts or sashes with their traditional clothing. These can be simple or ornate, sometimes featuring embroidery or beadwork.
2. **Jewelry**:
   - Women typically accessorize with jewelry, including necklaces, earrings, bracelets, and rings. These pieces can be made of silver, gold, or other materials and often feature traditional designs.

Cultural Significance

Traditional Palestinian clothing is not just about fashion; it carries deep cultural and historical significance. Each piece of clothing tells a story about the wearer's origins, social status, and even marital status. The practice of embroidery, or Tatreez, is often passed down through generations, with each stitch preserving the heritage and identity of the Palestinian people.

In contemporary times, while modern clothing is common, traditional attire is still worn during cultural events, weddings, and national celebrations, serving as a powerful reminder of Palestinian history and identity. The resilience and pride reflected in these garments continue to inspire and connect Palestinians to their rich cultural roots.



Palestine; CC BY-SA 3.0



Palestinian Traditional Thobes Created by AI

Activities

4.8: Southeren Levant- Palistine is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

5: Chapter Five- Where Are You From?

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Learn the letters: خ ح ج with their different shapes and sounds.
- Learn possessive pronouns.
- Learn about Iraq's culture, historical places, traditional food, and clothes.

5.1: The Letter Jeem- الحرف جيم
5.2: Letter H'aa-الحرف حاء
5.3: Letter Khaa
5.4: Vocabulary
5.5: Possessive Pronouns
5.6: Present tense (to like, to study)
5.7: Dialog - (Where Are From?)
5.8: Republic of Iraq

5: Chapter Five- Where Are You From? is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

5.1: The Letter Jeem- الحرف جيم

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ج in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ج with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The letter Jeem (ج) is the fifth letter of the Arabic alphabet and one of the fundamental building blocks of the language. It holds a significant place in Arabic phonetics and is pronounced with a sound similar to the "j" in the English word "jam" in most dialects. However, in some regional dialects, it can have a soft "g" sound, similar to the "s" in the English word "measure."

Understanding and correctly pronouncing the letter Jeem is crucial for anyone learning Arabic. It plays a vital role in the language, helping form numerous words and conveying precise meanings. Mastery of this letter contributes significantly to improving reading, writing, and speaking skills in Arabic.

The letter Jeem is relatively straightforward to learn, especially when comparing its sound to similar sounds in other languages, making it accessible for non-native speakers. By grasping the nuances of Jeem, learners can enhance their overall proficiency in Arabic.

The Letter Jeem ج

0:00 / 0:00

Pronunciation of letter ج

The letter ج is pronounced from the middle of the tongue, and what lies opposite to it from the middle of the roof of the mouth. The letter ج is often mispronounced by Arabs and non-Arabs, with a softer sound, like the French “J” as in the word “bonjour.” The letter ج is pronounced in Egyptian dialect as “G” in English. For example, the name “Jamal” is pronounced as “Gamal” in Egyptian. In the Syrian dialect, it is pronounced like the “J” in “Java.” To pronounce ج correctly, you must use the middle of the tongue, and then concentrate on not allowing any sound or air out. (See figure 5.1.1)

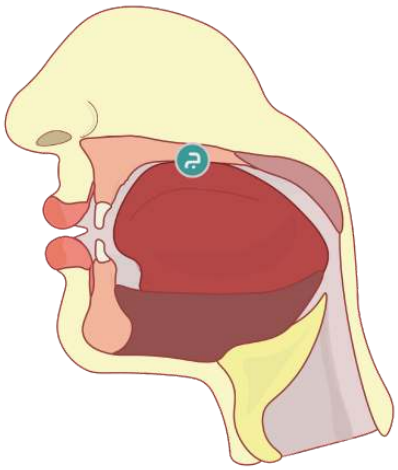


Figure 5.1.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ج

Pronunciation of letter Jeem "ج" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of Letter Jeem with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	جَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	جُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	جِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	جْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Jeem "ج" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter Jeem with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	جَا	
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	جو	
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	جي	

How to write the letter ج

To write the independent ج, begin at a point above the line, make a small hook, draw a line straight across, then change direction and swing down below the line into the tail. Finally, place the dot in the middle, in the “belly” of the letter. However, the writing of letter ج is different in handwriting and print.

To write ج as initial position, begin with the hook, as you did with independent form, then slant down toward the line into a point just above the line. Then, instead of curving down into the tail, continue into connecting segment جـ. Place the dot underneath the hook of the letter.

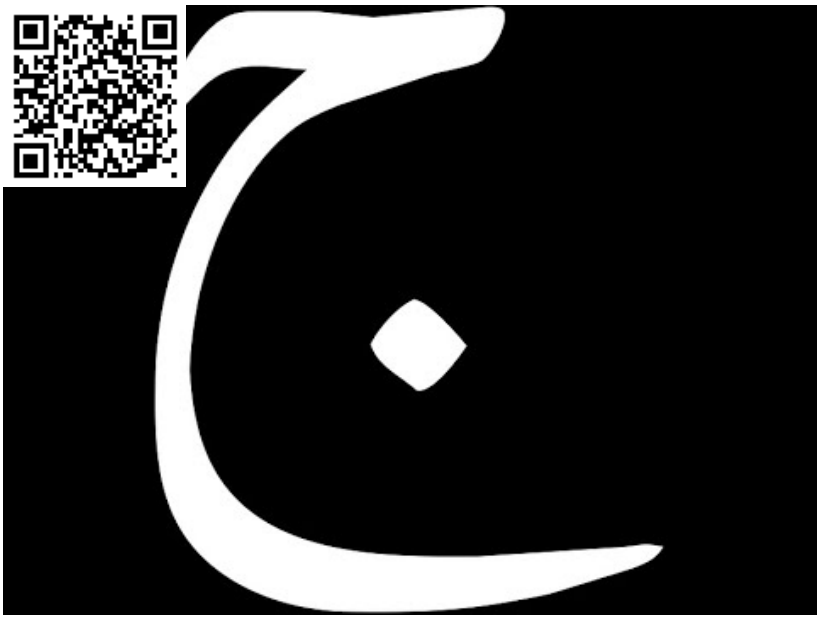
The medial shape of the letter jeem is like this ـجـ it is the same shape of the jeem when it comes as initial but, it has continuing line from left and right side so, it can be linked to other letters when it comes in the middle of the word, then the dot goes underneath the hook of the letter.

For the final shape ـج draw a connecting segment from the line, then draw upwards and over. The final position has the same tail as the independent position. (Watch the video)

The letter ج in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـج	ـجـ	جـ	ج

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Jeem



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Jeem الحرف جيم. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Practice Letter Jeem الحرف جيم

5.1: The Letter Jeem- الحرف جيم is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.2: Letter H'aa-حاء الحرف

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ح in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ح with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The letter H'aa (ح) is the sixth letter of the Arabic alphabet, and it holds a unique place in the phonetic structure of the language. Pronounced with a deep, throaty sound, it is distinct from the more common "h" sound found in English. H'aa is produced from the middle of the throat, giving it a guttural quality that is characteristic of many Arabic sounds.

Understanding and accurately pronouncing the letter H'aa is crucial for learners of Arabic. Its unique sound, which does not have a direct equivalent in English, is fundamental to Arabic phonology. Mastery of H'aa enhances both spoken and written communication, ensuring clarity and correctness.

By learning the letter H'aa, students gain a deeper appreciation for the complexity and beauty of Arabic. This letter, with its rich, guttural sound, is a testament to the linguistic diversity and expressive power of the Arabic language.

The Letter H'aa ح

0:00 / 0:00

The letter H'aa ح represents a sound that is pronounced in the middle of the throat. It has no equivalent in English.

The Technical Way for Pronouncing the letter ح. Open your mouth, make a raspy (rough) "*h*" sound. Then, tighten the muscles so that air can just barely squeeze through your throat. You should be able to feel your Adam's apple move. Another hint to help you articulate the letter ح Is to think of the throat squeezing against itself from the middle and try to pronounce it from that point of pressure. There is plenty of air that runs with this letter. You should feel the friction in the middle of your throat. A final method to find the articulation point of the letter ح is to try to cough, place your hand on your throat and feel your throat. That point is the articulation of the letter ح.

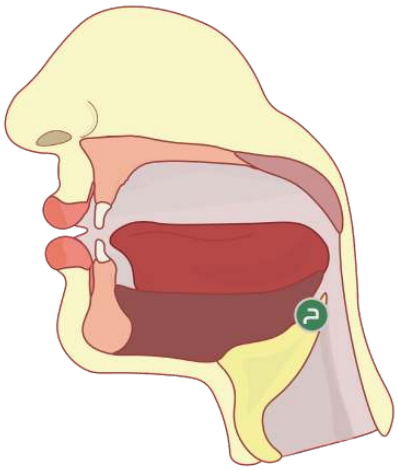


Figure 5.2.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ح

Pronunciation of letter H'aa "ح" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of Letter H'aa with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	حَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	حُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	حِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	حْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter H'aa "ح" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter Jeem with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	حا	
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	حو	
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	حي	

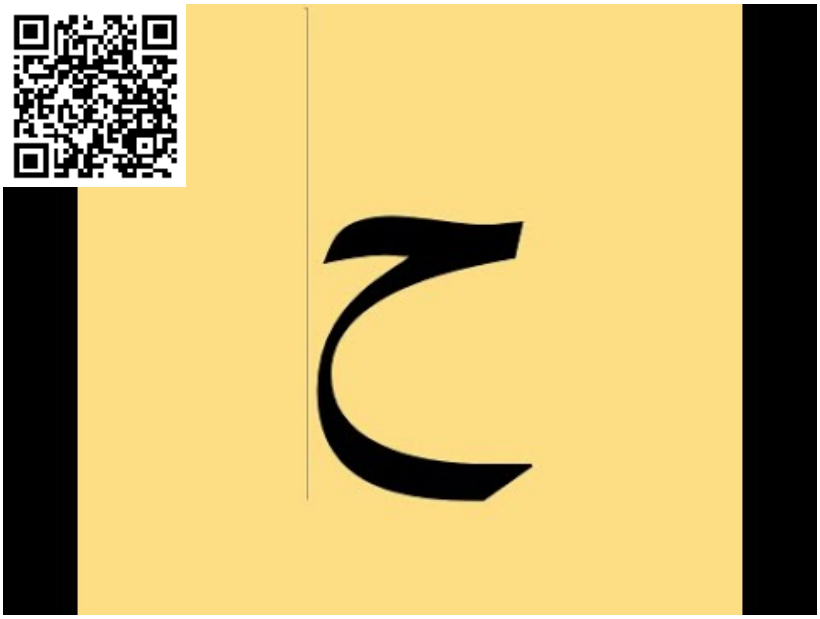
How to write the letter H'aa

The letter H'aa ح is a connecting letter, and is written like the letter ج but without the dot. (Watch the video)

The letter ح in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـح	ـحـ	حـ	ح

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter H'aa



Watch the video to learn more about the letter H'aa حاء الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Practice Letter H'aa الحرف حاء

5.2: Letter H'aa-الحرف حاء is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.3: Letter Khaa

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write خ in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter خ with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The Arabic alphabet, with its rich history and cultural significance, comprises numerous letters, each carrying its unique phonetic and symbolic value. Among these letters is "خ" (khaa), a letter that holds a distinctive place in Arabic script. Pronounced as a voiceless velar fricative, khaa produces a sound similar to the "ch" in the German "Bach" or the "j" in the Spanish "jalapeño," making it an intriguing and somewhat challenging sound for non-native speakers to master. The letter "khaa" (خ) is the seventh letter of the Arabic alphabet. Its shape, characterized by a curved line with a dot above it, adds to the aesthetic beauty of Arabic calligraphy. Khaa is not only a fundamental component of the Arabic language but also plays a vital role in various dialects and has a presence in other languages that use the Arabic script. Understanding the letter khaa provides insight into the linguistic diversity and artistic expressions within Arabic culture.

The Letter Khaa خ

0:00 / 0:00

To pronounce the letter خ, say "*kh*" and pay attention to where the back of your tongue hits the back of the roof of your mouth and cuts off the air flow. Instead of closing off the air flow with the back of your tongue completely, block it partially and you will be able to produce the sound.

The articulation point of the letter خ is at the closest part of the throat (the beginning of the throat), or the closest to the mouth. (See figure **5.3.3**)

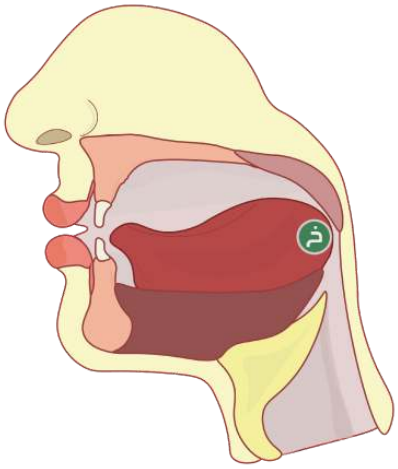


Figure **5.3.1**: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter خ

Pronunciation of letter Khaa "خ" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of Letter Jeem with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	خَ	
Dhama الضمة	خُ	
Kasra الكسرة	خِ	
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	خْ	

Pronunciation of the letter Khaa "خ" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter Khaa with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	خا	
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	خو	
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	خي	

How to write the letter Khaa

The letter خ is a connecting letter, and it is written like the letter ج and ح, but the dot is placed above the letter. (Watch the video)

The letter خ in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـخ	ـخـ	خـ	خ

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Khaa



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Khaa خاء الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Practice Letter Khaa خاء الحرف

5.3: Letter Khaa is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.4: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn new vocabulary using the new letters in this chapter.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary

https://human.libretexts.org/@go/page/269705

Image	Recording	Meaning	Arabic
 brother	0:00 / 0:00		أَخ
 brothers	0:00 / 0:00		أَخي
 sister	0:00 / 0:00		أُخت

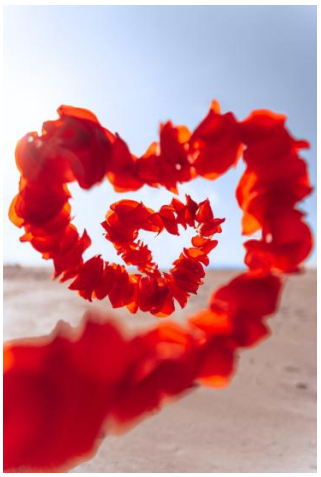
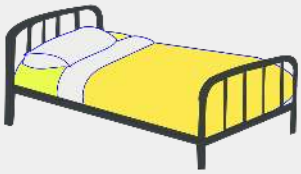
Image	Recording	Meaning	Arabic
 Mu sister	0:00 / 0:00		أُختي
 Love	0:00 / 0:00		حُب
 wedding	0:00 / 0:00		حَبيب / حَبيبة

Image	Recording	Meaning	Arabic
 couple	0:00 / 0:00		حَبيبي / حَبيبتي
 pocket	0:00 / 0:00		جَيب
 cheese	0:00 / 0:00		جبن
	0:00 / 0:00		خَوْخ

Image	Recording	Meaning	Arabic
peach			
 students studying	0:00 / 0:00		وَاجب
 Bed	0:00 / 0:01		تَحْت

Cognates

Cognates are words used in multiple languages originating from the same linguistic root. Some examples are these words.

Cognates

English	Arabic
Henna	الحِنَّة
Bus	باص
Internet	انترنيت
Diesel	ديزل
Google	غوغل
Jeans	جينز
Video	فيديو

Activities

5.4: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.2: Vocabulary** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.5: Possessive Pronouns

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will learn:

- The eight possessive forms and how to show possession or ownership for each one.

Possessive pronouns

The nouns الأَسْمَاء and verbs الأَفْعَال have three categories to classify them. 1st. person (speaker). 2nd. person (spoken to). 3rd. person (spoken about).

In Arabic, the attached pronouns (possessive pronouns) are different than separate pronouns (subjective pronouns). The attached pronouns are suffixes, they become possessive when they connected to a noun. The following table demonstrates the suffixes that relate to each separate pronoun before adding any noun to them.

Table of attached pronouns

Meaning	Attached pronouns/ "Possessive Pronouns"	Subject Pronouns/ Arabic	Subject Pronouns/ English	Gender & Number of people
My	----------ي	أنا	I	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine
Our	----------نَا	نحنُ	We	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine plural
Your	----------كَ	أَنْتَ	You	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Singular
Your	----------كِ	أَنْتِ	You	**2nd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
Your	----------كُم	أَنْتُم	You	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Feminine Plural
His	----------هُ	هو	He	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Singular
Her	----------ها	هي	She	**3rd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
Their	----------هم	هم	They	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Plural

Example of changing the noun to possessive pronouns using the noun House (بَيْت) for all the different subject pronouns.

Meaning & Pronunciation	The Possessive Pronouns	Subject Pronouns/ Arabic	Gender & Number of people
My house / bayty	بَيْتي	أنا	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine
Our house / baytuna	بَيْتُنا	نحنُ	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine plural
Your house / baytukum	بَيْتُكَ	أَنْتَ	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Singular
Your house / baytuki	بَيْتُكِ	أَنْتِ	**2nd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
Your house / baytukum	بَيْتُكم	أَنْتُم	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Feminine Plural
His house / baytuhu	بَيْتُهُ	هو	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Singular
Her house / baytuha	بَيْتُها	هي	**3rd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
Their house / baytuhum	بَيْتُهُمْ	هم	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Plural

Watch this video to learn more about the possessive pronouns in Arabic:



Possessive Pronoun ي

You already learned in the previous lessons about the possessive pronounce ي.

Examples: when introducing yourself اسمي (Ismee), your age عمري (Umree), birthday عيد ميلادي (Eid Miladee), and my phone number رقم تلفوني (Raqa Teliphonee)

Listening Excerise 1:

Listen to the following audio.

Listening Exercise 1

Audio	Text
0:00 / 0:00	اسمي
0:00 / 0:00	عُمْري
0:00 / 0:00	جَدي
0:00 / 0:00	أَبي
0:00 / 0:00	أُمي

Activities

Complete the following activities and the interactive video.

5.5: Possessive Pronouns is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.4: Possessive Pronouns, and the verb "To Like"** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- **4.4: Possessive Pronoun ي, Demonstrative Pronouns هذه - هذا, Taa Marbuta ة** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.6: Present tense (to like, to study)

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn the present tense verb conjugation with the eight subject pronouns.

Present tense verb conjugation.

The verbs الأَفْعَال like nouns أَسْمَاء have three categories to classify them as we mentioned in chapter 3 . 1st. person (speaker). 2nd. person (spoken to). 3rd. person (spoken about). The following chart shows the appropriate suffix/prefix for basic verb to conjugated in the present tense for all the different subject pronouns.

Table for verb conjugation in present tense

تصريف الفعل المضارع (Present tense verb conjugation)	الضمائر المنفصلة Subject Pronouns/ Arabic	الضمائر المنفصلة Subject Pronouns/ English	Gender & Number of people
أَ---------	أنا	I	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine
نَ---------	نحنُ	We	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine plural
تَ---------	أَنْتَ	You	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Singular
تَ-------ين	أَنْتِ	You	**2nd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
تَ-------ون	أَنْتُم	You	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Feminine Plural
يَ--------	هو	He	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Singular
تَ---------	هي	She	**3rd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
يَ--------ون	هم	They	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Plural

Example of Conjugating the verb to love/ to like (حَبَّ) in present tense for all the different subject pronouns.

Meaning and Pronunciation	Suffix/Prefix for conjugating basic verb in present tense	الضمائر المنفصلة Subject Pronouns/ Arabic	Gender & Number of people
I love / Auheb	أُحبُّ	أنا	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine
We love / nuheb	نُحبُّ	نحنُ	**1st.** Person Masculine/ Feminine plural
You love / tuheb	تُحبُّ	أَنْتَ	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Singular
You love / tuhebin	تُحبِّين	أَنْتِ	**2nd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
You love / tuhebon	تُحبُّون	أَنْتُم	**2nd.** Person Masculine/ Feminine Plural
He loves / yuheb	يُحبُّ	هُوَ	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Singular
She loves / tuheb	تُحبُّ	هِي	**3rd.** Person Feminine/ Singular
They loves / yuhebon	يُحبُّون	هُم	**3rd.** Person Masculine/ Plural

5.6: Present tense (to like, to study) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.4: Possessive Pronouns, and the verb "To Like"** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.7: Dialog - (Where Are From?)

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Introduce yourself to others, by giving your name and telling where you are from.
- Ask others where they are from.

Introduction

Acquaintance and dialogue between members of the Arab community is one of the most important means of communication among them. Arabs like to meet new people and have conversations with them whenever they get the chance to meet them, whether at work, college, street, home, etc. The dialogue usually begins with a greeting, the most common and formal greeting is "Asalaamu Alaikum" ("peace be with you"), the response is "wa alaikum salaam" ("and peace be unto you"). And handshake usually comes with a greeting coupled with eye contact and a smile, after which the two-exchange information to get to know each other.

Dialog 1

In this dialog, the conversation is between two men (Wajdi & Nooh). Wajdi starts the conversation by greeting Noah and asking some questions. In this conversation, you will learn when, and how to use the attached pronouns for first and second-person masculine.



Dialog 1

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Peace be upon you	alsalam ealaykum	السَّلامُ عَلَيْكُم
And may peace be upon you	w ealaykum alsalam	وعَلَيْكُم السَّلام
How are you?	Kayf haluka?	كَيفَ حالُكَ؟
Good, thank God, and you?	Bikhayr Wal-hamdallah, wa anta?	بِخَيْرٍ والحمدُ لله. وأنتَ؟
Good! My name is wajdi... What's your name?	Bikhayr. 'ana asmi wajdi ... ma asmuka?	بِخَيْرٍ. أنا اسْمِي وجدي ... ما اسمُكَ؟
My name is Noah	'ana asmi Nooh	أَنا اسْمِي نوح
Where are you from?	min 'ayn 'anta?	مِنْ أَيْن أَنْتَ؟
I'm from California	'ana min wilayat kalifurnia	أَنا مِنْ وِلايَة كاليفورنيا
From what city in California?	Min 'ayi madina fee wilayat kalifurnia?	مِنْ أَيّ مَدِيْنَةٍ في وِلايَة كاليفورنيا؟
I'm from San Diego	'ana min mdynt san diighu	أَنا مِنْ مَدِيْنَةِ سان دييغو
Pleased to meet you	tasharafna	تَشَرَّفْنَا
Pleased to meet you	tasharafna	تَشَرَّفْنَا

Dialog 2

In this dialog, the conversation is between a man "Waheed" and a woman "Maysaa." Waheed starts the conversation with Maysaa by the greeting, then he asks some questions. In this conversation, you will learn when, and how to use the attached pronouns for first and second person feminine.

Listen to the dialogue.

0:00 / 0:27



Shaking hands

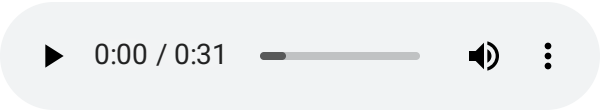
Dialog 2

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Good morning	sabah alkhayr	صَباحُ الخَير
Good morning	sabah al noor	صَباح النور
How are you?	Kayf haluki?	كَيفَ حالُكِ؟
Good, thank God, and you?	Bikhayr Wal-hamdallah, wa anta?	بِخَيْرٍ، والحمدُ لله. وأنتَ؟
Good! My name is Waheed... What's your name?	Bikhayr, 'ana ismi Wahid ... ma asmuki?	بِخَيْرٍ. أنا اسْمِي وحيد. ما اسمُكِ؟
My name is Maysaa	'ana ismi Maysaa	أَنا اسْمِي ميساء
Where are you from?	min 'ayn 'anti?	مِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتِ؟
I'm from Iraq	'ana min al-eiraq	أَنا مِنْ العِرَاقِ
From what city in Iraq?	Min 'ay mdinat min al-eiraq?	مِنْ أَيِّ مَدِيْنَةٍ من العراق ؟
I'm from Baghdad city	'ana min madinat baghdad	أنا من مَدِيْنَةِ بغداد
Nice to meet you	fursa saeida	فُرصَةٌ سَعيدَةٌ
Thank you	shukran	شُكراً

Dialog 3

In this dialog, the conversation is between a woman “Nadine”, and 3 people from both gender “Dani”, “Hanine” and "Naji”. Nadine starts the conversation with by the greeting, then she asks some questions. In this conversation, you will learn when, and how to use the attached pronoun using first, second and third person masculine and feminine.

Listen to the dialogue.





Meeting new people

Dialog 3

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Hello	Marhaban	مَرْحَباً
Hello	Ahlaan	أَهْلاً
How are you?	Kayfa halukom?	كَيفَ حالُكم؟
Good, thank God	Bikhayr Wal-hamdullah	بِخَيْر والحمدُ لله
My name is Nadine... What's your name?	'ana asmi nadine ... ma asmukum?	أنا اسْمِي نادين ... ما اسمُكُم؟
My name is Dani ...her name is Hanine, and his name is Naji	'ana asmi dani ... heya asmuha hanine ...wa huwa asmuhu naji	أَنا اسْمِي داني ....هي اسْمُها حنين و هو اسْمُه ناجي
Where are you from?	min 'ayn 'antum?	مِنْ أَيْن أَنْتُم؟
We are from Syria	'nhnu min suria	نَحنُ مِنْ سوريا
In which city in Syria?	min ay mdinah fi suria ?	مِنْ أَيِّ مَدِيْنَةٍ في سوريا ؟
I am from the city of Aleppo ....and they are from the city of Damascus	'ana min madinat halaba.... wa hum min madinati dimashq	أنا من مَدِيْنَةِ حَلب.... وهم من مَدِيْنَةِ دِمَشق
Nice to meet you	Tasharrafna	تشرّفنا
We, also	wanahnu aydaan	ونَحنُ أيضاً

Activities

Practice saying these phrases in Arabic.

Introduce yourself.

Introduce yourself to your colleagues, and let them introduce themselves to you. Remember to start with a greeting; try to use different greetings each time you introduce yourself. Ask how they are and where they are from. Make sure to use the right attached pronouns for the second and third person according to gender.

Answer before flipping the card.

5.7: Dialog - (Where Are From?) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.3: Dialogue and Reading** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

5.8: Republic of Iraq

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will:

- Learn about Iraq, its Geographical location, famous cities, its most famous artifacts, and its traditional food and clothes.

Facts About Iraq

- Official Name: Republic of Iraq - جمهورية العراق
- Capital: Baghdad - بغداد
- Population: 42,100,744 - (2022)
- Currency: The dinar
- Continent: Asia
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic -اللغة العربية الفصحى الحديثة

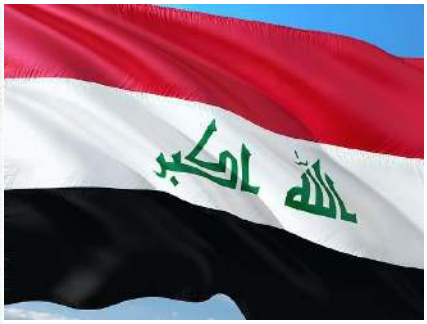
Watch this movie about Iraq and learn about ancient Mesopotamia.

Geographical location and flag

Iraq is located in Western Asia. It is bordered by Turkey to the north, Saudi Arabia to the south, Iran to the east, the Arabian Gulf, Kuwait to the southeast, Syria to the west, and Jordan to the southwest. The climate of Iraq has mild winters and hot summers. The country's mountainous regions, however, have very cold winters and mild summers.



Iraq's location



Iraq flag; pixabay license

Famous Cities in Iraq

Iraq is divided into 18 governorates, and these governorates are divided into districts, and the number of districts is 120, and this district divided into other, less important divisions called nahiyas. Baghdad is the capital of Iraq and the most populous. The most famous cities in Iraq after Baghdad are Mosul, Basra, Babylon, Erbil, Duhok, Sulaymaniyah, Karbala, Kirkuk, and Najaf.



Cities of Iraqi; CC BY-SA 3.0

- **Baghdad (بغداد)**: The capital and largest city, Baghdad has been a major center for culture, education, and politics for centuries. It was the heart of the **Abbasid Caliphate** and remains an important city in the Arab world.
- **Mosul (الموصل)**: Located in the north of Iraq, Mosul is known for its diverse culture and history. The city is famous for its proximity to ancient sites like **Nineveh**, and it has been a hub for trade and education.
- **Basra (البصرة)**: Situated in the south of Iraq, Basra is Iraq's main port city and has a strategic location on the **Shatt al-Arab** waterway. It is known for its role in trade, especially in the oil industry, and its historical importance as a center for literature and science.
- **Erbil (أربيل)**: The capital of the **Kurdistan Region**, Erbil is one of the oldest continuously inhabited cities in the world. Its most famous landmark is the **Erbil Citadel**, a UNESCO World Heritage Site.
- **Karbala (كربلاء)**: A city of great religious significance to Shia Muslims, Karbala is the site of the **Battle of Karbala** and is home to the **Imam Hussein Shrine**. It attracts millions of pilgrims each year.
- **Najaf (النجف)**: Another important religious city for Shia Muslims, Najaf is known for the **Imam Ali Shrine**. It is one of the holiest cities in Shia Islam and a center for religious education.
- **Fallujah (الفلوجة)**: Known historically for its resistance during the Iraq War, Fallujah is located in the Anbar Province. The city has long been a center for Sunni Islam and has played an important role in the country’s recent history.

These cities not only represent Iraq's historical depth but also reflect its diversity, both culturally and religiously. For Arabic learners, understanding the significance of these cities is key to appreciating Iraq's rich history and contemporary dynamics.



Baghdad; public domain



Basra; CC BY-SA 2.5



Mosul; public domain



Erbil Citadel; CC BY-SA 4.0

Traditional Iraqi Food

Iraqi cuisine is known for its deep flavors and historical significance, influenced by the ancient civilizations that thrived in the region. Here's a more detailed look at some key traditional dishes:

- **Masgouf (المسقوف)**: Often called the national dish of Iraq, Masgouf is a fish (usually carp) that's butterflied, seasoned with spices like tamarind, and grilled over an open flame. It's usually served with flatbread, vegetables, and pickles.
- **Kleicha (الكليشة)**: This is the traditional Iraqi cookie, typically prepared during festive occasions. There are two main types: one filled with dates and the other filled with a mixture of nuts, sugar, and cardamom. The sweet aroma and flaky texture of Kleicha make it a popular treat during holidays.
- **Dolma (الدولمة)**: The Iraqi version of Dolma involves grape leaves, zucchini, eggplants, and bell peppers stuffed with rice, minced lamb or beef, and a blend of spices. It's slow-cooked in a tangy tomato sauce, and it's a dish often served during family gatherings.
- **Kubba (الكبّة)**: Kubba refers to different types of stuffed meatballs or patties, often made with ground meat and bulgur or rice. There are various versions, including **Kubbat Halab**, which is fried, and **Kubbat Mosul**, which is baked. Another version, **Kubba Hamouth**, is served in a sour soup.
- **Tashreeb (تشريب)**: A hearty dish, Tashreeb is a stew made with lamb or chicken, served over torn pieces of flatbread that soak up the broth. It's a popular dish for family meals and is often eaten during the colder months.
- **Iraqi Biryani (البرياني العراقي)**: Iraqi Biryani, influenced by South Asian cuisine, is a flavorful rice dish made with layers of spiced rice, lamb or chicken, mixed vegetables, raisins, and nuts. The Iraqi version tends to be lighter than its Indian counterpart, with more subtle spice blends.
- **Quzi (القوزي)**: A dish made from whole roasted lamb, Quzi is stuffed with a flavorful mixture of rice, nuts, raisins, and spices. It's commonly served during special occasions such as weddings and religious celebrations.
- **Baghdad-Style Shawarma (الشاورما البغدادية)**: A popular street food in Iraq, Baghdad-style shawarma consists of marinated lamb or chicken cooked on a vertical spit and sliced into thin pieces. It's typically served in flatbread with tahini sauce, pickles, and tomatoes.

Spices and Ingredients: Iraqi dishes are rich in aromatic spices such as **cardamom**, **cinnamon**, **turmeric**, and **saffron**, creating layers of flavor. Herbs like **cilantro**, **parsley**, and **mint** are also essential, adding freshness to many dishes. Dates, nuts, and dried fruits are frequently used, reflecting Iraq's agricultural bounty.

Iraqi cuisine is deeply rooted in tradition, offering a diverse range of flavors and textures. Whether it's a family gathering or a street food stall in Baghdad, the food is a reflection of Iraq's rich history and culture. For students learning about Arabic culture and cuisine, Iraqi food provides a window into the hospitality, warmth, and communal spirit of the Iraqi people.



Masgouf; CC BY-SA 4.0



Dolma



Biryani; pexels license



Kabab



Falafel; pexels license

Traditional Clothes

Iraq is one of the most multicultural societies in the Middle East. A broad diversity of religions, races, and cultures flourished in Iraq, united by common heritage, culture, and traditions. As for the traditional costumes, they vary according to race and religion. There are Arab, Assyrian, Kurdish, Armenian, Sabean, Yezidi, Turkmen, etc. costumes. Traditional costumes still exist to this day, and costumes in Iraqi society vary according to occasions. Holidays have a certain costume, religious rites have a certain costume, and ordinary days have another.

Arab dress. Sumerian roots

It consists of an abaya that a man wears over the dishdasha (the dishdasha is an ankle-length robe, with long sleeves and without embroidery). The abaya is usually embroidered with golden threads or colors that differ from the color of the abaya. As for the elderly women, they wear the black abaya on a long dress of one dark color most of the time, and for young women, they wear the Hashemite uniform in bright colors.

Christian fashion

It reflects the depth of their history in Mesopotamia and its origins from Babylon and Assyria The Syriac and Assyrian costume is characterized by simplicity in design and strong colors in which geometric shapes, flowers, or stars are inserted, and it is called the ornamental costume. Same thing with women costumes, they are colorful costumes with many pieces of accessories similar to the accessories that were worn by queens in Mesopotamia.

Kurdish fashion

It reflects the nature of the mountains and hills and has its own cultural and social features The Kurdish men's costume consists of two pieces and one color: the jacket and the trousers, and they are loose, and a cloth wrapped around the middle as a belt, and a head is covering with a cloth that is wrapped around over head. As for women’s fashion, it is characterized by its luster, luster and stark colors. It is a long dishdasha that covers mostly the soles of the feet and is embroidered and has long sleeves linked to two long conical tails and wears a thin and silky undershirt under it.



Kurdish Women Dress

Activities

5.8: Republic of Iraq is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

6: Chapter Six- Introducting My Family

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Identify the Arabic letters د ذ ر ز with their four different shapes and sounds.
- Learn new vocabulary.
- Learn "Taa Marbouta," translates to "tied Taa."
- Use the demonstrative pronouns هذا - هذه in introducing your family members
- Learn about the Arab countries of the Gulf culture, historical places, traditional food and clothes

6.1: Letter Daal
6.2: Letter Thaal
6.3: Letter Raa
6.4: Letter Zay
6.5: Taa Marbouta "Tied Taa"
6.6: Vocabulary
6.7: Demonstrative Pronouns هذا - هذه
6.8: Dialog - My Family
6.9: Qatar
6.10: The United Arab Emirates
6.11: Assessment

6: Chapter Six- Introducting My Family is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.1: Letter Daal

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write د in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter د with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The letter "د" (Daal) is a fundamental character in the Arabic alphabet, occupying the eighth position in the script. Known for its simplicity and elegance, "dal" is pronounced as a voiced dental stop, similar to the English "d" in "dog." Its straightforward shape, a single vertical stroke with a slight curve, makes it easily recognizable and one of the more straightforward letters to write in Arabic calligraphy.

"Daal" plays a crucial role in Arabic phonology and is frequently encountered in both spoken and written forms. Its clear, concise sound contributes to the fluidity and rhythm of the Arabic language. Learning the letter "dal" is essential for anyone beginning their journey into Arabic, as it appears in many common words and names, such as "دراسة" (dirasa, meaning "studying") and "دليل" (dalil, meaning "guide"). Mastery of "dal" not only enhances one's reading and writing skills but also provides a deeper appreciation for the structure and beauty of the Arabic language.

The Letter Daal د

0:00 / 0:00

This letter is pronounced like a clear, frontal “d” in English, as in the word “deep” and not like the “d” sound in the word “puddle”. The articulation point of the letter د is the tongue, and the pronunciation of the letter is from the top side of the tip of the tongue and the gum line of the two front upper incisors. The common mistake in the pronunciation of the letter د is placing the tongue further back in the mouth, like English “d”. (See figure **6.1.4**)

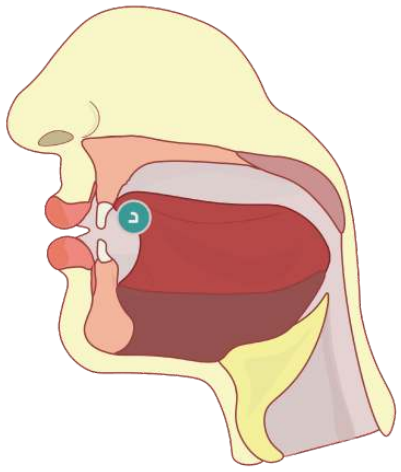


Figure **6.1.1**: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter د

Pronunciation of letter Daal "د" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of Letter د with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	دَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	دُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	دِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	دْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Daal "د" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter د with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	دا	0:0
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	دو	0:0
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	دي	0:0

How to write the letter د

This letter does not connect to any letter that follows its “left side”, which means it has only one connector on the right side. Therefore, to write the initial د, begin above the line and slant down, and just before reaching the line, angle sharply and finish along the line. It is essential to keep the curve of the body of this letter less than 90 degrees and above the line. When writing د in the medial and final positions, begin from the connecting segment and draw the top half of the letter, then trace your line back down, make a sharp angle, and finish ـــد (Watch the video)

The letter د in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـــد	ـــد	د	د

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Daal.



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Daal دال الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

6.1: Letter Daal is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

6.2: Letter Thaal

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ذ in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ذ with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The letter "ذ" (dhal) is a distinctive and essential character in the Arabic alphabet, occupying the ninth position in the script. Pronounced as a voiced dental fricative, similar to the "th" in the English words "this" or "that," "dhal" adds a unique phonetic element to the Arabic language. Its shape is simple yet elegant, consisting of a single vertical stroke with a dot above it, making it easily distinguishable from other letters.

"Thaal" is relatively uncommon compared to some other Arabic letters, but it plays a crucial role in the language. It appears in various words and names, contributing to the rich phonetic diversity of Arabic. Examples include "ذهب" (dhahab, meaning "gold") and "ذلك" (dhalika, meaning "that"). For learners of Arabic, mastering the pronunciation and recognition of "dhal" is essential for accurate reading and speaking. Its distinctive sound and appearance help to enrich the Arabic script, showcasing the language's complexity and beauty.

The Letter Thaal ذ

0:00 / 0:00

The letter ذ represents the other sound of “th” like the sound of “the” in the word “other”. The articulation place of the letter ذ is the bottom tip of the tongue and the top edge of the two front lower incisors, and the top tip of the tongue and the bottom edges of the two front upper incisors.

A small space is left between the tip of the tongue and the plates of the teeth when pronouncing the letter ذ. The letter ذ is many times mispronounced as a plain “z”. The solution to mispronunciation is again using the top of the tip of the tongue and the bottom edges of the two front teeth (incisors). There should be enough protrusion of the tongue tip so that it is visible to the observer.

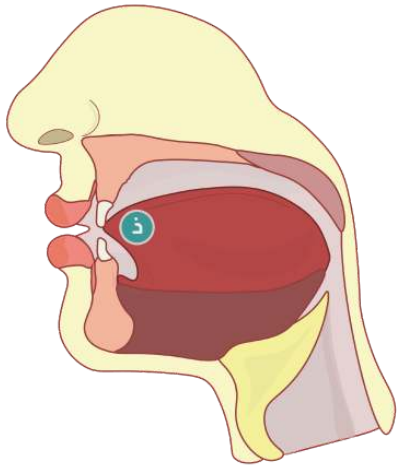


Figure 6.2.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ذ

Pronunciation of letter Thaal "ذ" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of Letter ذ with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	ذَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	ذُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	ذِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	ذْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Thaal "ذ" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter ذ with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	ذا	0:0
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	ذو	0:0
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	ذي	0:0

How to write the letter ذ

To write the letter ذ it is the same way you write the letter د, but a dot is placed above the letter. (Watch the video)

The letter ذ in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـذ	ـذـ	ذ	ذ

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Thaal



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Thaal ذال الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

6.2: Letter Thaal is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

6.3: Letter Raa

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ر in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ر with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The letter "ر" (raa) is a significant and easily recognizable character in the Arabic alphabet, known for its simplicity and elegance. As the tenth letter in the Arabic script, "raa" is pronounced similarly to the rolled "r" in Spanish or Italian, adding a vibrant and dynamic sound to the language. Its shape is straightforward, consisting of a single smooth curve without any dots, making it distinct and easy to identify.

"Raa" is an essential letter in Arabic phonology, frequently appearing in both spoken and written forms. Its presence is felt in a multitude of common words and names, such as "رجل" (rajul, meaning "man") and "ربيع" (rabee', meaning "spring"). Learning to correctly pronounce and write "raa" is crucial for Arabic learners, as it helps in achieving fluency and accuracy in the language. The letter "raa" also showcases the beauty of Arabic calligraphy, with its graceful curve often forming the basis for more complex artistic designs. Mastering "raa" is a step towards a deeper appreciation and understanding of the Arabic language and its rich cultural heritage.

The Letter Raa ر

The letter “ر” is emitted from the tip of the tongue and what lies opposite to it of the gums of the two front top incisors (the plate). The tip with the top of the tongue needs to strike the gum to produce this sound correctly. The letters NOON and RAA “ر” come from the same articulation point, but the only difference is that the RAA “ر” uses the tip of the line and does not touch it. There is a small gap between the tongue and the gum and vibrate (trilling) for Raa “ر” pronunciation. The main character of the RAA “ر” is that swing between “Tafkheem” and “Tarqeek”. “Tafkheem” is the opposite of “Tarqeek”. Raa “ر” depends on the short vowel that precedes it; if the short vowel is fathah or dhamah, then the letter Raa’s pronunciation will be stronger (Tafkheem). If the short vowel is kasrah, then the letter Raa’s “ر” pronunciation will be weaker (Tarqeek).

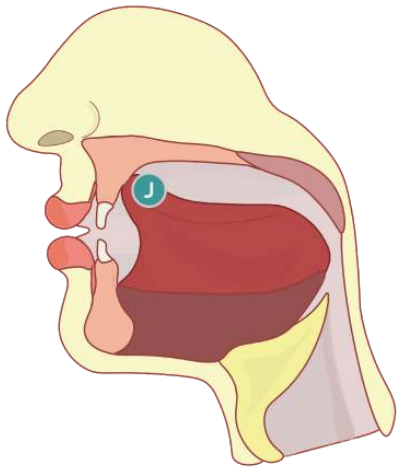


Figure 6.3.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ر

Pronunciation of letter Raa "ر" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Raa with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	رَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	رُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	رِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	رْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Raa "ر" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter ر with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	را	0:0
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	رو	0:0
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	ري	:0

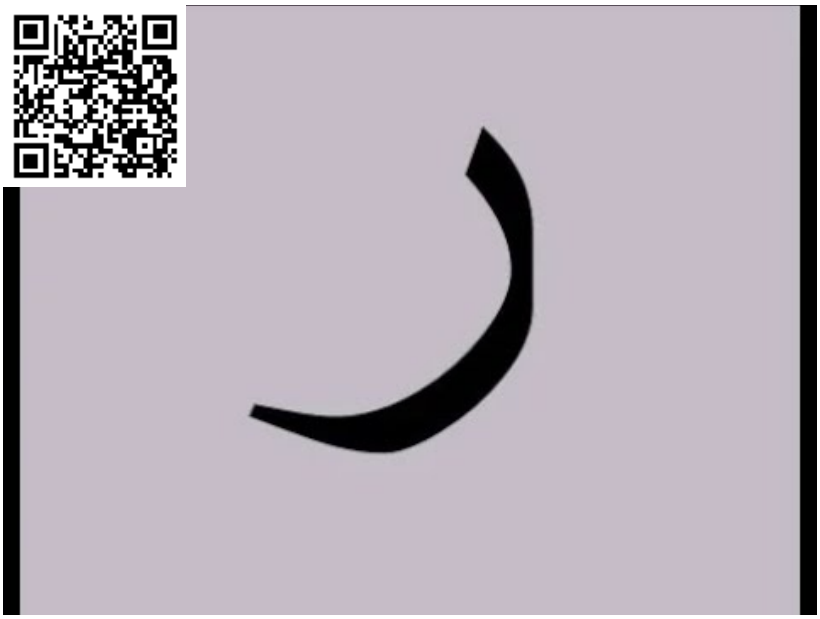
How to Write The Letter ر

This letter "ر" is a non-connector. It has only one connector like the letters "د", "ذ", "و", and "ا". The Raa "ر" is written almost entirely below the line. To write the initial "ر" begin on the line and curve downward below it. The letter "ر" looks like the shape of a crescent moon or a banana. To write a "ر" that is connected from a preceding letter, start from the connecting segment on the line, and then curve down.

Writing Letter ر

Final Form	Medial Form	Initial Form	Independent Form
ـر/ر	ـر	ر	ر

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter "Raa" ر



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Raa راء الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

6.3: Letter Raa is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

6.4: Letter Zay

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ز in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ز with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The letter "ز" (zay) is a prominent character in the Arabic alphabet, occupying the eleventh position in the script. Pronounced as a voiced alveolar fricative, similar to the "z" in the English word "zebra," "zay" adds a sharp and distinct sound to the Arabic language. Its form is simple and elegant, featuring a single vertical stroke with a dot above it, making it easy to distinguish from other letters.

"Zay" is frequently encountered in Arabic, appearing in many common words and names. Examples include "زيت" (zayt, meaning "oil") and "زمان" (zamaan, meaning "time" or "era"). For learners of Arabic, mastering the pronunciation and recognition of "zay" is crucial for proper reading, writing, and speaking. The letter "zay" also exemplifies the beauty of Arabic calligraphy with its clean and balanced design, often incorporated into intricate artistic patterns.

The Letter Zay ز

This letter corresponds to the English sound “*z*” as in the word “zebra”. The articulation place of the letter “**ز**” is the tongue and the top edge of the two frontal lower incisors. There is a little space left in between the tip of the tongue and the plates of the teeth when pronouncing this letter. In other words, the tip of the tongue just misses the edge of the top and lower teeth. When this letter is emitted, a light whistle-like sound should be heard accompanying the sound, which is called in Arabic “Safeer, صفير”. The most common mistake when pronouncing this letter is pressing the tongue up against the plates of the teeth causing the sound to be suppressed when attempting to say the letter.

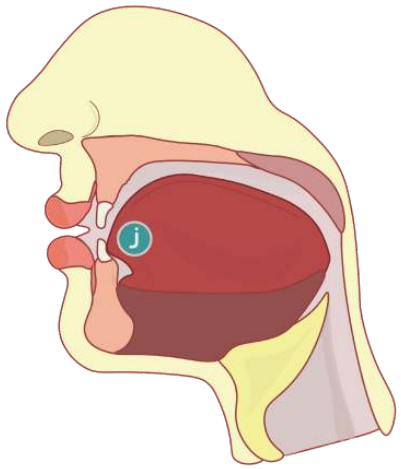


Figure **6.4.1**: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter **ز**

Pronunciation of letter Zay "ز" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

https://human.libretexts.org/@go/page/269736

Pronunciation of the Letter Zay with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	زَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	زُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	زِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	زْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Zay "ز" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter ز with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	زا	0:0
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	زو	0:0
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	زي	0:0

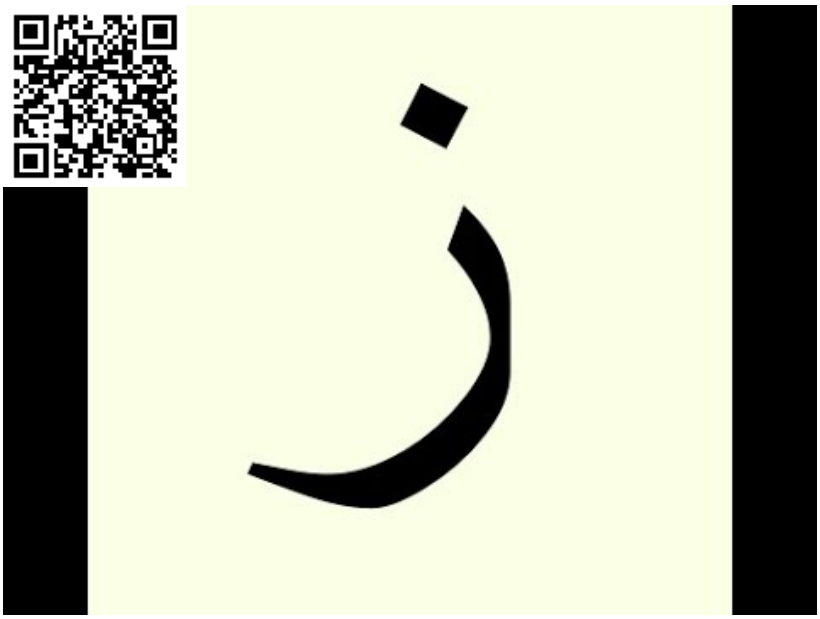
How to write the Letter ز

You write the letter "ز" in the same way you write the letter "ر." The only difference is the letter "ز" has a dot above it. (Watch the video)

Writing Letter ز

Final Form	Medial Form	Initial Form	Independent Form
ـز / ز	ـزـ	زـ	ز

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Zay.



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Zay زاي الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

6.4: Letter Zay is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

6.5: Taa Marbouta "Tied Taa"

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about Taa Marbouta (Tied Taa) تاء مربوطة

Introduction to Taa Marbouta (ة)

The letter "Taa Marbouta" (ة) is a unique and important character in the Arabic alphabet, often encountered by learners of the language. Its name, "Taa Marbouta," translates to "tied Taa," reflecting its distinctive appearance and function. Understanding how and when to use Taa Marbouta is essential for mastering Arabic grammar and writing.

Appearance and Pronunciation

Taa Marbouta looks like a small circle or knot attached to the end of a word. In its isolated and final forms, it resembles the letter "Ha" (ه) with two dots above it. It is pronounced like the letter "Taa" (ت) when the word is in certain grammatical states, such as when followed by a possessive suffix or in the construct state. ة "taa marbuta" is a special version of the same letter Taa ت. "Taa marbuta" only occurs in nouns, and it is not found in verbs أفعال or particles حروف. It occurs only at the end of a noun and is not used in the beginning or middle.

As in many other languages, any Arabic noun/adjective has to be either masculine or feminine. With few exceptions, the general rule is to suffix the taa marbuta (ة/ـة) to the masculine noun/adjective forms to derive the feminine ones. Note that some male names also end in a ة "taa marbuta" and their gender is still male. Sometimes the ة does not make the word female but is used to signify that it is singular. This occurs with words that represent collective plurals. When Taa Marbouta (ة) is followed by a possessive suffix, it is pronounced like the letter "ت."

- **Isolated form:** ة
- **Connected form:** ـة

Usage of Taa Marbouta

Feminine Marker: Taa Marbouta is primarily used to indicate that a noun or adjective is feminine. For example:

- **جَدَّة** Grandmother
- **زَوْجَة** Wife
- **معلمة** (muallima): Female teacher
- **مدرسة** (madrasa): School

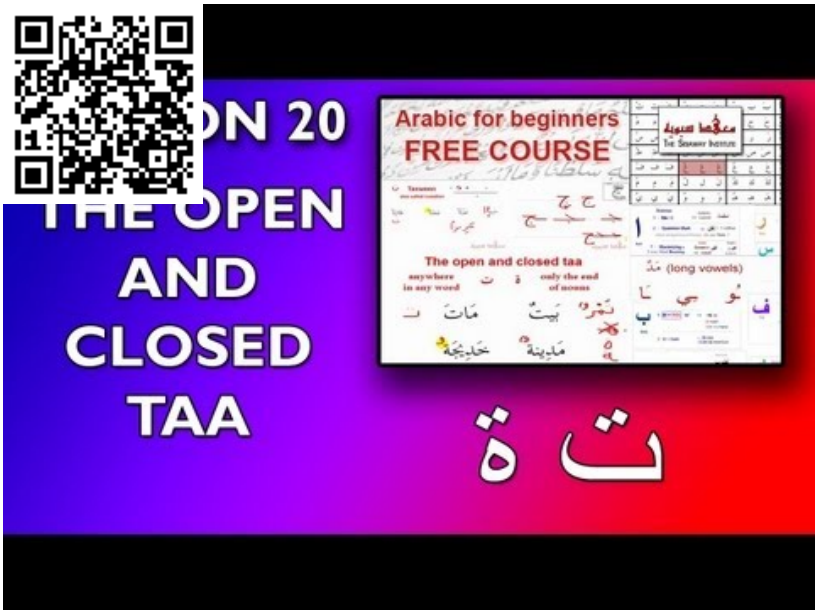
Pronunciation in Context

The pronunciation of Taa Marbouta can change depending on the grammatical context. In the pausal form (when stopping at the end of a sentence), it is often pronounced as a silent "h" or "a." However, in the construct state or when followed by certain suffixes, it is pronounced as "Taa."

- **Pausal form:** مدرسة (madrasa) - pronounced "madrasah"
- **Construct state:** مدرسة الطلاب (madrasa at-talab) - pronounced "madrasa-t-talab"

Watch these videos to learn more about "taa Marbuta".





Listen to the following audios

Listening

Pausal Form	Pronunciation of Taa Marbouta Form	Words
0:00 / 0:18	0:00 / 0:00	أُسرةٌ
0:00 / 0:18	0:00 / 0:00	زَوجةٌ
0:00 / 0:18	0:00 / 0:00	أُستاذةٌ
0:00 / 0:18	0:00 / 0:00	حَبيبةٌ
0:00 / 0:18	0:00 / 0:00	جَدةٌ

Activities

6.5: Taa Marbouta "Tied Taa" is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.4: Possessive Pronoun ي, Demonstrative Pronouns هذه - هذا, Taa Marbuta ة** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

6.6: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn new vocabulary using the new letters in this chapter.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary

https://human.libretexts.org/@go/page/251245

Image	Recording	Meaning	Formal / Writing
 Grandfather	0:00 / 0:00		جَدٌّ
 My grandfather	0:00 / 0:00		جَدّي
 Grandmother	0:00 / 0:00		جَدّتي
 neighbor	0:00 / 0:01		جَار

Image	Recording	Meaning	Formal / Writing
 bear	0:00 / 0:00		دُب
 nightclub	0:00 / 0:00		نادي
 Husband	0:00 / 0:00		زَوج
 Wife	0:00 / 0:00		زَوجتي
 Rice	0:00 / 0:00		أَرز

Adjectives

Image	Recording	Meaning	Formal / Writing
 new house	0:00 / 0:01		جَديد
 thumbs up	0:00 / 0:00		جَيِّد

Cognates

Cognates are words used in multiple languages that originate from the same linguistic root. Some examples are these words.

Cognates

English	Arabic
Bachelor’S Degree	البكالوريوس
Brazil	برازيل
Mexico	مكسيك
Argentina	أرجنتين
Kuwait	كويت
Qatar	قطر
Bahrain	بحرين

Activities

6.6: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.2: Vocabulary** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

6.7: Demonstrative Pronouns هذه - هذا

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

1. Demonstrative pronouns هذه - هذا

Demonstrative Pronouns هذه - هذا

In Arabic, we called the demonstrative pronouns **أَسْماءُ الإشارَة** (asmā' al-ishirāh). In English the demonstrative pronouns are (this, that, these and those). A demonstrative pronouns change according to the gender (male and female) and come in form of (singular, dual, plural).

For example:

هذا (Hatha) is for singular masculine

هذه (Hathihi) is for singular feminine

Listen to the following audios

Demonstrative Pronouns

Audio	Audio	English	Transliteration	Arabic
 This is (for masculine)	0:00 / 0:00		Hathaa	هذا
 This is (for feminine)	0:00 / 0:00		Hathihi	هذه

Listening

Audio	Text
0:00 / 0:00	هَذا جَدي
0:00 / 0:00	هَذا أَبي
0:00 / 0:00	هَذا أُسْتاذ
0:00 / 0:00	هَذِهِ جَدتي
0:00 / 0:00	هَذِهِ أُسْتاذة
0:00 / 0:00	هَذِهِ زَوجة

6.7: Demonstrative Pronouns هذه - هذا is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.4: Possessive Pronoun ي, Demonstrative Pronouns هذه - هذا, Taa Marbuta ة** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

6.8: Dialog - My Family

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Introduce your family.

Introduction to the Arabic Family Structure

In many Arabic-speaking cultures, the family structure is traditionally patriarchal, with the father often considered the head of the household. Extended families are common, and it's not unusual for multiple generations to live together or maintain close ties. Respect for elders is a core value, and family gatherings play a significant role in social life.

Importance of Family

Family bonds are very strong in Arabic culture. Social and personal identity is often closely tied to one's family. Celebrations, festivals, and important life events are usually family-oriented, reinforcing the significance of familial connections.

Learning the vocabulary and cultural nuances related to the family is a vital step for anyone beginning their journey into the Arabic language and culture. It not only helps in everyday conversation but also provides insight into the values and traditions that shape Arabic-speaking societies.

The concept of family, or "عائلة" (aaila), holds great importance in Arabic culture. Understanding family vocabulary is essential for anyone learning Arabic, as family ties and relationships are central to social life in Arabic-speaking communities. Here's a basic introduction to some key terms and concepts:

Family Members

- **أب** : Father
- **أم** : Mother
- **ابن** : Son
- **ابنة** (ibnah): Daughter
- **أخ** : Brother
- **أخت** : Sister
- **جد** : Grandfather
- **جدة** (jaddah): Grandmother
- **زوج :** Husband
- **زوجة** (zoujah): Wife

Popular Terms

In Arabic, family members often use affectionate terms to address each other. For example:

- **بابا** (baba): Dad
- **ماما** (mama): Mom
- **يا أخي** (ya akhi): My brother
- **يا أختي** (ya ukhti): My sister

Dialog 1

Listen to the dialog between Rana and Adam about the family.

0:00 / 0:25

Dialog 1

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Rana: Peace be upon you	Rana: As-salam Alaykum	رنا: السَّلامُ عَليكُم
Adam: peace be upon you, how are you?	Adam: Wa Alaykum al-Salam, kayfa haluki	آدم: وَعَليكم السَّلام , كَيفَ حالكِ؟
Rana: I am fine and thank God. And you?	Rana: Ana bikhayr wa al-hamdulillah. Wa anta?	رنا: أنا بِخَيرٍ وَ الحمدُ لله . وَأَنتَ؟
Adam: I'm fine. Who is this?	Adam: Ana bikhayr. Man hatha?	آدم: أَنا بِخَير. مَن هَذا؟
Rana: this is my father.	Rana: Hatha abi.	رنا: هَذا أَبي
Adam: Who is this?	Adam: Man hathihi?	آدم: مَن هَذِهِ؟
Rana: This is my mother.	Rana: Hathihi ummi.	رنا: هَذِهِ أُمي
Adam: Who is this?	Adam: Man hatha?	آدم: مَن هَذا؟
Rana: This is my brother.	Rana: Hatha akhi.	رنا: هَذا أَخي
Adam: Who is this?	Adam: Man hathihi?	آدم: مَن هَذِهِ؟
Rana: This is my sister.	Rana: Hathihi ukhti.	رنا: هَذِهِ أُختي
Adam: Who is this?	Adam: Man hatha?	آدم: مَن هَذا؟
Rana: This is my grandfather.	Rana: Hatha jeddi.	رنا: هَذا جَدي
Adam: Who is this?	Adam: Man hathihi?	آدم: مَن هَذِهِ؟
Rana: This is my grandmother.	Rana: Hathihi jadati.	رنا: هَذِهِ جَدَّتي

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Adam: MashaAllah!	Adam:Masha’allah	آدم: مَا شاءَ الله

Activities 1

Practice

- What do you think "ما شاء الله" means, and why is it commonly used in conversations?
- Why do you think Rana starts the conversation with "السلام عليكم"? What is its importance in Arabic-speaking cultures?
- Can you imagine a situation where you might introduce your family in Arabic?

Dialog 2

Listen to the dialog between Rana and Bob about the family.

0:00 / 0:30

Dialog 2

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Bob: Good morning	sabah alkhayr	بَوب: صَباحُ الخَير
Rana: Good morning	sabah al noor	رنا: صَباح النور
Bob: How are you?	Kayf haluki?	بَوب: كَيفَ حالُكِ؟
Rana: Fine and thank God. And you?	bikhayr wa al-hamdulillah. Wa anta?	رنا: بِخَيْرٍ والحمدُ لله. وأنتَ؟
Bob: I'm fine. Where are you from?	bikhayr, min 'ayn 'anti?	بَوب: بِخَيْرٍ. مِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتِ؟
Rana: I am from Beirut. Where are you from?	Ana min bairut. Min ayan anta?	رنا: أَنا مِنْ بيروت. مِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتَ؟
Bob: I am from America. Who is this?	Ana min amerca. Man hatha?	بَوب: أَنا مِنْ أمْريكا. من هذا؟
Rana: This is my brother his name is Naji.	Hatha akhi, ismuho Naji.	رنا: هَذا أَخي اسمُه ناجي
Bob: What does he study?	Mathaa yadrus?	بَوب: ماذا يَدْرُس؟
Rana: He studies English.	yadrus inglizi.	رنا: يدْرُس انكليزي
Bob: Who is this?	Man hathihi?	بَوب: من هذه؟
Rana: This is my sister, her name is Bayan.	Hathihi ukhti, ismuha Bayan.	رنا: هَذِهِ أُختي اسمُها بَيان
Bob: What does she study?	Mathaa tadrus?	بَوب: ماذا تَدرُسُ؟

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Rana: She studies Biology.	tadrus biology.	رنا: تَدْرس بيولوجي
Bob: Pleased to meet you.	tasharafna	بَوب: تَشَرَّفْنَا

Activities 2

Practice

- Draw your family tree and label each member using Arabic vocabulary for family members.
- Practice using possessive pronouns.

6.8: Dialog - My Family is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

6.9: Qatar

Learning Objectives

In this section, students will be able to:

- Learn about Qatar, its Geographic location, famous cities, most famous artifacts, and traditional food and clothes.

Arab Countries of the Gulf are:

- Kuwait.
- Bahrain
- Qatar
- The United Arab Emirates.
- Oman.
- Saudi Arabia.

Facts to know about Qatar

Qatar, a small but immensely wealthy country located on the northeastern coast of the Arabian Peninsula, has gained significant global attention due to its substantial natural gas and oil reserves. The capital city, Doha, is a vibrant hub of economic, cultural, and political activity, known for its modern skyline dominated by futuristic skyscrapers, luxury shopping malls, and cultural landmarks such as the Museum of Islamic Art. Governed by the Al Thani family since the mid-19th century, Qatar has developed a high-income economy largely driven by its energy exports, making it one of the richest countries in the world per capita.

Qatar's influence extends beyond its borders through its ownership of the influential media network Al Jazeera, which has reshaped news coverage in the Arab world and beyond. The country is also known for its ambitious infrastructural developments, including the creation of the ultra-modern city of Lusail and preparations for hosting the FIFA World Cup in 2022, the first time the event will be held in the Middle East.

The Qatari government has launched Vision 2030, a strategic plan aimed at diversifying the economy away from hydrocarbon dependence and promoting sustainable development. This includes investments in education, healthcare, tourism, and technology. The country is also known for its progressive social policies compared to some of its neighbors, including significant investments in education and women's rights, though it still maintains traditional cultural norms.

- Official Name: State of Qatar دولة قطر Dawlat Qatar
- Capital: Doha
- Population: 2,795,484 (2020 estimate)
- Currency: Qatari riyal الريال القطري Qatari riyal
- Continent: Asia آسيا asia
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic

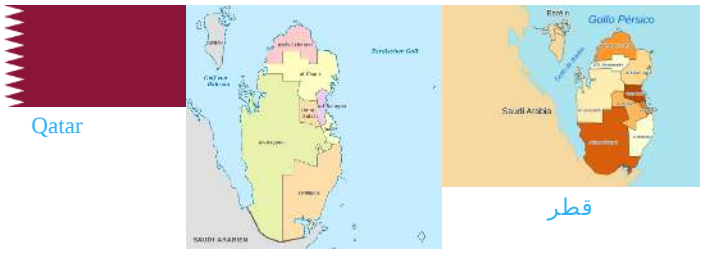


Figure **6.9.1**: Arabian Gulf Countries Map by furfur via Wikimedia Commons CC BY-SA 4.0

Geographical Location and Flag

Qatar, a small but influential nation in the Middle East, is situated on the northeastern coast of the Arabian Peninsula, sharing its sole land border with Saudi Arabia to the south and surrounded by the Persian Gulf on all other sides. The country's strategic position has made it a significant player in regional politics and economics. Doha, the capital city, is located on the central-eastern coast and serves as the political, economic, and cultural heart of Qatar.

The national flag of Qatar is distinct and symbolic, featuring a maroon field with a broad white serrated band (nine white triangles) on the hoist side. The maroon color represents the bloodshed in the various wars Qatar has fought, while the white symbolizes peace. The nine-point serrated edge signifies Qatar as the ninth member of the "reconciled Emirates" of the Persian Gulf at the conclusion of the Qatari-British treaty in 1916. The flag's unique design and colors are deeply rooted in the nation's history and identity, symbolizing its resilience, heritage, and aspirations for peace and unity.



Qatar قطر

Qatar

Famous Cities

Qatar, though relatively small in size, boasts several cities that are significant for their cultural, economic, and historical importance. Each city offers a unique blend of modernity and tradition, contributing to the rich tapestry of Qatari life.

- **Doha,** the capital and largest city of Qatar, is the epicenter of the nation's economic, political, and cultural activities. Known for its stunning skyline, Doha is home to numerous modern skyscrapers, luxury hotels, and shopping malls. Key landmarks include the Museum of Islamic Art, designed by architect I.M. Pei, and the futuristic Qatar National Library. The city's Corniche offers a picturesque waterfront promenade, while Souq Waqif provides a traditional market experience where visitors can buy spices, textiles, and handicrafts. Doha is also the venue for major international events, such as the 2022 FIFA World Cup.
- **Al Wakrah** is one of Qatar's oldest cities, blending its historical roots with modern development. It was once a small fishing and pearling village, and its heritage is preserved in attractions like the Al Wakrah Museum and the traditional Al Wakrah Souq. The city has seen significant growth and now includes modern amenities, parks, and the Al Janoub Stadium, one of the venues for the FIFA World Cup.
- **Al Rayyan** is Qatar's second-largest municipality and encompasses several districts, including the well-known Education City. This area is home to numerous universities, research institutions, and the Qatar National Convention Centre. Al Rayyan is also known for its sports facilities, including the Al Rayyan Stadium, another World Cup venue. The city provides a mix of residential areas, green spaces, and cultural institutions.
- **Al Khor is** situated on the northeastern coast of Qatar, Al Khor is known for its beautiful beaches and mangrove reserves. It has a rich maritime history and continues to be an important center for fishing and pearling. Al Khor's attractions include the Al Khor Corniche, Al Khor Park, and the Al Thakhira Mangroves. The city is also undergoing development to accommodate the needs of the growing population, with new residential and commercial projects.
- **Lusail** is a planned city that represents Qatar's ambitious vision for the future. Located to the north of Doha, Lusail is designed to be a smart and sustainable city, featuring innovative infrastructure, luxury residences, and commercial centers. Key attractions include the Lusail Marina, Lusail Iconic Stadium (the main stadium for the 2022 FIFA World Cup), and the Lusail Entertainment City. The city is expected to accommodate over 200,000 residents and play a crucial role in Qatar's ongoing development.
- **Dukhan** is known for its oil and gas industry, and is located on the western coast of Qatar, . It was one of the first areas in Qatar where oil was discovered and remains a key site for petroleum extraction and processing. The city is managed by Qatar Petroleum and features residential areas for workers, as well as recreational facilities and services.


Doha


Al-Wakra


Dukhan


Al Rayyan

Each of these cities contributes uniquely to Qatar's dynamic landscape, offering a blend of historical significance, modern development, and cultural richness. From the bustling streets of Doha to the tranquil beaches of Al Khor, Qatar's cities provide a diverse array of experiences for residents and

Traditional Food

Qatari cuisine is a delightful reflection of the country's rich cultural heritage, blending Arabian, Indian, Persian, and Levantine influences. Traditional Qatari dishes are characterized by their use of fresh ingredients, aromatic spices, and time-honored cooking techniques. Here are some of the most famous foods in Qatar:

- **Machboos**, also known as Kabsa, is the national dish of Qatar. This spiced rice dish is typically made with basmati rice, meat (such as chicken, lamb, or fish), and a blend of spices including cloves, cinnamon, cardamom, and black lime. The meat is slow-cooked with tomatoes and onions, then mixed with the rice to create a fragrant and flavorful meal. It is often garnished with nuts and raisins for added texture and sweetness.
- **Harees** is a traditional Qatari dish enjoyed particularly during Ramadan and festive occasions. It is made from ground wheat and meat (usually chicken or lamb), which are cooked together slowly until they reach a creamy consistency. The dish is seasoned with simple spices and sometimes topped with ghee or cinnamon. Harees is both hearty and nutritious, making it a popular comfort food.
- **Balaleet** is a unique Qatari breakfast dish that combines sweet and savory flavors. It consists of sweetened vermicelli noodles flavored with sugar, cardamom, and saffron, topped with a savory omelet. The combination of the sweet noodles and the

slightly salty omelet creates a delicious contrast that is beloved by many Qataris.

- **Thareed** is a traditional Qatari stew made with meat (chicken or lamb), vegetables, and pieces of bread soaked in the flavorful broth. It is similar to a hearty potage, where the bread absorbs the stew's rich flavors. Thareed is often enjoyed during Ramadan and is considered a comforting and filling dish.
- **Saloona** is a popular Qatari stew that is both versatile and flavorful. It is made with a variety of vegetables, meat (such as chicken or lamb), and a mix of spices including turmeric, cumin, and coriander. The ingredients are simmered together until tender, resulting in a rich and aromatic dish that is often served with rice or bread.
- **Madrouba** is a creamy porridge-like dish made from rice, chicken, and lentils, cooked with garlic, ginger, and a blend of spices. The ingredients are mashed together to create a smooth and comforting consistency. It is often served with a drizzle of ghee and is especially popular during the cooler months.
- **Luqaimat** are sweet dumplings that are a favorite Qatari dessert. These small, deep-fried balls of dough are soaked in sugar syrup or honey and sometimes sprinkled with sesame seeds. They are crispy on the outside and soft on the inside, making them a perfect treat during Ramadan and other celebrations.
- **Khanfaroosh** is a traditional Qatari dessert made from a mixture of rice flour, sugar, and saffron, which is shaped into small cakes and fried until golden. These sweet treats are often flavored with rose water or cardamom and are enjoyed during special occasions and celebrations.



Lugimat



Harees

Traditional Clothes

Traditional clothing in Qatar is a significant aspect of the country's cultural identity and heritage, reflecting its Arabian roots and Islamic traditions.

- For Qatari men, the traditional attire is the "thobe" or "dishdasha," a long white robe that is both comfortable and practical for the hot desert climate. This is often accompanied by the "ghutra," a square headscarf that can be white or checkered, held in place by the "agal," a black cord.
- Women in Qatar traditionally wear the "abaya," a long, flowing black cloak that provides modesty and is often beautifully embroidered or adorned. The "shayla" or "hijab" is worn to cover the hair, and sometimes the face is covered with a "niqab." These garments not only serve religious and cultural purposes but also symbolize Qatari identity and pride. During special occasions and festivals, such as weddings and national celebrations, these traditional outfits are often worn with more elaborate decorations and luxurious fabrics, showcasing the rich cultural heritage of Qatar.

Conclusion

Qatar, a dynamic and rapidly developing nation on the northeastern coast of the Arabian Peninsula, stands as a remarkable example of modern prosperity interwoven with deep-rooted cultural traditions. Its strategic location, coupled with vast natural gas and oil reserves, has propelled it to the forefront of global economic and political influence.

Qatar's commitment to diversification, embodied in its Vision 2030 initiative, showcases its dedication to sustainable development across various sectors, including education, healthcare, and technology. The nation's rich cultural heritage is celebrated through its traditional cuisine, clothing, and numerous festivals, which continue to thrive alongside its rapid modernization.

Hosting global events like the FIFA World Cup and investing in innovative infrastructure projects such as Lusail City further underline Qatar’s ambition and vision for the future. Despite its small size, Qatar's impact on the regional and global stage is significant, driven by its economic prowess, cultural diplomacy, and forward-thinking policies.

In essence, Qatar is a nation of contrasts and harmony, where the past and future coexist seamlessly, offering a unique and enriching experience to all who visit or call it home. Its journey from a modest pearling community to a global powerhouse is a testament to its resilience, vision, and unwavering commitment to progress.

Activities

6.9: Qatar is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

6.10: The United Arab Emirates

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about the United Arab Emirates, its Geographic location, famous cities, most famous artifacts, and traditional food and clothes.

Arab Countries of the Gulf are:

- Kuwait.
- Bahrain
- Qatar
- The United Arab Emirates.
- Oman.
- Saudi Arabia.

Facts about the United Arab Emirates:

The United Arab Emirates (UAE), located on the southeastern edge of the Arabian Peninsula, is a federation of seven emirates, each with its unique charm and cultural heritage. The UAE was established on December 2, 1971, and has since become one of the most prosperous and dynamic countries in the Middle East. The capital city is Abu Dhabi, while Dubai is known as the country's largest and most cosmopolitan city.

The official language of the UAE is Arabic, making it an excellent place for Arabic language learners to immerse themselves in the language and culture. Arabic is used in government, media, education, and daily communication, providing ample opportunities for learners to practice and enhance their skills.

- Official Name: United Arab Emirates الإمارات العربية المتحدة Al - Imarat Al--Aranyiah Al- Muttahida
- Capital: Abu Dhabi
- Population: 9,282,410 (2020 estimate)
- Currency: UAE dirham الدرهم الإماراتي dirham alimarati
- Continent: Asia آسيا asia
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic



Arabian, CC BY-SA 4.0

Geographical Location and Flag

The United Arab Emirates (UAE) is strategically located on the southeastern tip of the Arabian Peninsula, bordering the Persian Gulf to the north and the Gulf of Oman to the east. It shares land borders with Saudi Arabia to the south and west, and Oman to the southeast. This prime geographical location has historically made the UAE a crucial maritime and trade hub, linking the East and West. The country's diverse landscape includes vast deserts, beautiful coastlines, and mountainous regions, providing varied and picturesque scenery. The UAE's coastal areas are characterized by sandy beaches and mangroves, while the inland regions feature the stunning sand dunes of the Rub' al Khali desert. The unique geographical position of the UAE not only enhances its economic significance but also contributes to its rich cultural heritage and tourism appeal.

The flag of the United Arab Emirates (UAE) is a symbol of national pride and unity, consisting of four colors: red, green, white, and black. These colors are arranged in a unique design that holds deep significance. The flag features a vertical red stripe along the hoist side, while the remaining part of the flag is divided into three horizontal stripes: green on the top, white in the middle, and black on the bottom. The colors of the flag are derived from the Pan-Arab colors, which represent Arab unity and independence. Red symbolizes bravery and strength, green represents hope, joy, and prosperity, white stands for peace and honesty, and black signifies the defeat of enemies.



United Arab Emirates

Famous Cities

The United Arab Emirates (UAE) is home to several famous cities, each known for its unique blend of modernity, cultural heritage, and economic significance. Here are the most important cities in the UAE:

- **Dubai** is the most famous and populous city in the UAE, known globally for its futuristic architecture, luxury shopping, and vibrant nightlife. Landmarks such as the Burj Khalifa, the tallest building in the world, and the Palm Jumeirah, an artificial archipelago, make Dubai a top tourist destination. The city also hosts numerous international events, including the Dubai Shopping Festival and the Dubai World Cup, further solidifying its status as a global city.

- **Abu Dhabi**, the capital of the UAE, is the largest emirate by area and a major political, cultural, and economic center. It is home to important government institutions and the UAE's royal family. The city boasts a blend of modern skyscrapers and traditional architecture, with landmarks such as the Sheikh Zayed Grand Mosque, one of the largest mosques in the world, and the Louvre Abu Dhabi, a renowned art and civilization museum. Abu Dhabi's rich cultural scene and extensive oil reserves make it a pivotal city in the UAE.
- **Sharjah** is known as the cultural capital of the UAE, celebrated for its dedication to preserving Emirati heritage and promoting arts and culture. The city is home to numerous museums, including the Sharjah Museum of Islamic Civilization and the Sharjah Art Museum. It also hosts the annual Sharjah International Book Fair, one of the largest book fairs in the world. Sharjah's commitment to culture and education has earned it the title of UNESCO's World Book Capital in 2019.
- **Ajman,** the smallest emirate by area, offers a more relaxed and traditional atmosphere compared to its bustling neighbors. The city is known for its beautiful coastline, historic forts, and the Ajman Museum, which provides insights into the region's history and heritage. Ajman is also developing rapidly, with growing infrastructure and tourism sectors.
- **Fujairah** is unique for being the only emirate located entirely on the eastern coast along the Gulf of Oman. It is known for its stunning natural landscapes, including mountains and beaches, making it a popular destination for outdoor activities such as diving, hiking, and fishing. The Fujairah Fort, one of the oldest forts in the UAE, and the Al-Bidyah Mosque, the oldest mosque in the country, are significant historical landmarks.
- **Ras Al Khaimah** is known for its diverse landscape, which includes mountains, deserts, and beaches. The emirate is a growing tourist destination, offering attractions such as the Jebel Jais mountain, home to the world's longest zipline. Ras Al Khaimah also has a rich history, with sites like the Dhayah Fort and the National Museum of Ras Al Khaimah showcasing its cultural heritage.
- **Umm Al Quwain** is the least populous emirate, known for its peaceful environment and natural beauty. It is famous for activities such as sailing, camel racing, and bird watching, especially in the Khor Al Beidah lagoon. The emirate also has historical sites like the Umm Al Quwain Fort and Museum, which provide a glimpse into the area's past.

Each of these cities contributes to the UAE's unique identity, offering a mix of tradition and modernity that makes the country a fascinating place to explore.



Dubai



Abu Dhabi



Sharjah



Ajman

Traditional Food

Traditional food in the United Arab Emirates (UAE) reflects the country’s rich cultural heritage and its history as a trading hub connecting the Middle East, Africa, and Asia. Emirati cuisine is characterized by the use of spices, herbs, and fresh ingredients, creating flavorful and aromatic dishes that are enjoyed by locals and visitors alike. Here are some of the most important traditional foods in the UAE:

- **Al Machboos**, also known as Kabsa, is a traditional rice dish that is a staple in Emirati households. It is made with basmati rice, meat (usually chicken, lamb, or fish), and a blend of spices such as saffron, cardamom, cinnamon, and cloves. The meat is cooked slowly with the rice, allowing the flavors to meld together. The dish is often garnished with fried onions, nuts, and raisins, adding texture and sweetness.
- **Al Harees** is a popular dish during Ramadan and festive occasions. It is a simple yet hearty dish made from wheat and meat (usually chicken or lamb). The ingredients are cooked together in a pot until they reach a porridge-like consistency. The dish is often seasoned with salt and flavored with ghee, giving it a rich taste. Al Harees is typically served hot and is appreciated for its comforting and filling qualities.
- **Al Majboos** is another traditional rice dish similar to Al Machboos but typically uses different spices and preparation methods. It is made with meat, rice, and a variety of spices, including turmeric, black lime, and cumin. The dish is cooked slowly, allowing the flavors to develop fully. Al Majboos is often served with a side of salad or yogurt.

- **Al Madrooba** is a savory fish dish that is unique to the UAE. It is made with salted fish, which is cooked with flour and a blend of spices to create a thick, flavorful sauce. The dish is known for its rich taste and is often served with rice or bread.
- **Balaleet** is a traditional breakfast dish that combines sweet and savory flavors. It is made from vermicelli noodles cooked with sugar, cardamom, and saffron, then topped with a thin layer of scrambled eggs. The dish is sometimes garnished with nuts and raisins. Balaleet is particularly popular during Eid celebrations.
- **Luqaimat** are sweet dumplings that are a beloved Emirati dessert. These small, golden balls of dough are deep-fried until crispy on the outside and soft on the inside. They are then drizzled with date syrup or honey and sprinkled with sesame seeds. Luqaimat are often enjoyed during Ramadan and other special occasions.
- **Machbous** is a fragrant rice dish similar to Biryani, made with meat (usually chicken or lamb), rice, and a blend of spices. The meat is marinated and cooked with the rice, allowing the flavors to infuse. The dish is often garnished with fried onions, nuts, and raisins, adding texture and richness.
- **Khabeesa** is a traditional Emirati dessert made from roasted semolina, flour, sugar, and cardamom. It is cooked with rose water and saffron, giving it a fragrant and sweet flavor. The dish is typically served during special occasions and is loved for its unique taste and aroma.
- **Thareed** is a hearty stew made with meat, vegetables, and pieces of bread soaked in the flavorful broth. The dish is often compared to a bread pudding and is known for its rich taste and comforting qualities. Thareed is particularly popular during Ramadan and is often served as a main course.

These traditional foods are an integral part of the UAE's culinary heritage, offering a glimpse into the country's rich history and cultural diversity. Whether enjoyed at home or in a traditional restaurant, Emirati cuisine provides a unique and flavorful dining experience that reflects the warmth and hospitality of the Emirati people.

Traditional Clothes

Traditional clothing in the United Arab Emirates (UAE) is a significant aspect of the country's cultural identity and heritage. It reflects the region's history, climate, and Islamic values, emphasizing modesty and elegance. Both men and women in the UAE wear traditional attire that is not only practical for the desert climate but also a symbol of national pride and social status.



UAE Traditional Clothes

Men's Traditional Clothing

- **Kandura (Dishdasha or Thobe):** The primary traditional garment for Emirati men is the "kandura," also known as "dishdasha" or "thobe" in other parts of the Arab world. It is a long, ankle-length robe typically made of white cotton, which helps to keep the wearer cool in the hot desert climate. During the cooler months, men might wear darker shades such as brown, gray, or blue. The kandura is characterized by its simple design and straight-cut sleeves.
- **Ghutra and Agal:** Complementing the kandura, men wear a headscarf called the "ghutra" or "shemagh." The ghutra is usually made of cotton and comes in different colors, such as white or a red-and-white checkered pattern. It is held in place by an "agal," a black cord that secures the headscarf on the head. The ghutra provides protection from the sun and sand, essential for the desert environment.
- **Bisht:** For formal occasions and special events, men may wear a "bisht," a cloak worn over the kandura. The bisht is typically black, brown, or beige and is often made from wool or camel hair. It is embroidered with gold or silver thread, adding a touch of elegance and prestige. The bisht is a symbol of honor and is worn during ceremonies, weddings, and other significant events.

Women's Traditional Clothing

- **Abaya:** The "abaya" is the traditional outer garment for Emirati women. It is a long, flowing black cloak that covers the entire body except for the face, hands, and feet. The abaya is made from lightweight fabric and is designed to be both modest and stylish. Many abayas feature intricate embroidery, beadwork, or sequins, adding a personal touch to the garment.
- **Shayla:** Under the abaya, women wear the "shayla," a long, rectangular headscarf that covers the hair and neck. The shayla is usually made from a lightweight material and is wrapped around the head and shoulders. It is often chosen to match or complement the abaya.
- **Niqab:** Some women may also wear the "niqab," a face covering that leaves only the eyes visible. The niqab is worn for additional modesty and is a personal choice influenced by cultural and religious beliefs.
- **Jalabiya:** Under the abaya, women often wear a "jalabiya," a long, loose-fitting dress that comes in various colors and designs. The jalabiya is usually adorned with embroidery and is worn for special occasions and everyday comfort.

Traditional Accessories

- **Jewelry:** Emirati women often accessorize their traditional attire with gold jewelry, which holds cultural and social significance. Common pieces include necklaces, bracelets, earrings, and rings. Gold is seen as a symbol of wealth and status, and intricate designs are highly valued.
- **Footwear:** Traditional footwear for both men and women includes sandals or slippers made from leather or other materials suitable for the desert climate. These are designed to be comfortable and practical for everyday wear.

Modern Influences

While traditional clothing remains an important part of Emirati culture, modern influences have led to some changes in daily attire, especially among the younger generation. Many Emiratis now incorporate contemporary fashion elements while maintaining the essence of their traditional dress. However, during religious events, national celebrations, and formal gatherings, traditional attire is still proudly worn, symbolizing the rich cultural heritage of the UAE.

In summary, traditional clothing in the UAE is a reflection of the country's values, climate, and cultural heritage. It represents a blend of modesty, elegance, and practicality, making it an integral part of Emirati identity and daily life.

Conclusion

The United Arab Emirates (UAE) is a remarkable nation that seamlessly blends tradition and modernity. It has rapidly transformed from a desert landscape into a global hub of innovation, commerce, and tourism within just a few decades. The UAE's seven emirates each contribute uniquely to the country's rich cultural tapestry, economic strength, and social diversity. From the futuristic skyline of Dubai to the cultural heritage of Sharjah and the natural beauty of Fujairah, the UAE offers a wide array of experiences and attractions. Its strategic location, progressive vision, and commitment to preserving its cultural heritage while embracing technological advancement make the UAE a leading example of growth and development in the Middle East. As the country continues to innovate and diversify its economy, it remains a beacon of prosperity, hospitality, and cultural richness, making it a fascinating place for both residents and visitors.

Activities

6.10: The United Arab Emirates is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

6.11: Assessment

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Review what you have learned in this chapter

Activities

Write the name of the letter in English.

6.11: Assessment is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **3.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

7: Chapter Seven- Numbers “Al-Arqam”

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Read, write, and type the letters س ش ص ض in their different shapes.
- Ask someone about his/her age, birthday, and address
- Ask simple questions and the answers of time, number, human, and non-human using Interrogative Words
- Count Arabic Numbers from 0-100
- Learn about Egypt, its Geographical location, famous cities, its most famous artifacts, and its traditional food and clothes.

7.1: Letter Seen
7.2: Letter Sheen
7.3: Letter Saad
7.4: Letter Daad
7.5: The Phrase "To Have" In Arabic
7.6: Vocabulary
7.7: Numbers الأرقام
7.8: Dialog - Tell Me More About YOU
7.9: Interrogative Words in Arabic (Part 1)
7.10: Egypt
7.11: Assessment

Watch the video about the history of Arabic Numbers.



7: Chapter Seven- Numbers “Al-Arqam” is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

7.1: Letter Seen

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write س in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter س with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The letter "س" (seen) is the twelfth letter in the Arabic alphabet. Pronounced like the "s" in the English word "sun," "seen" is a voiceless alveolar fricative, adding a crisp, hissing sound to the language. Its shape is distinctive and easily recognizable, consisting of three teeth-like peaks with a smooth curve underneath them when written in isolation or at the end of a word.

"Seen" also appears in many everyday Arabic phrases and expressions, making it an important letter to recognize and use. Its presence in common greetings, such as "السلام عليكم" (as-salaamu 'alaykum), which means "peace be upon you," highlights its significance in daily communication.

The Letter Seen س

0:00 / 0:01

The letter “Seen” “**س**” is the name of the Arabic letter that corresponds to English “*s*”, as in the word seen itself. However, remember that English “*s*” is often pronounced as “z”, such as in “easy” and “optimism”, and in many plurals like “dogs”. Arabic “**س**”, on the other hand, always retains the soft “*s*” sound. “**س**” is a frontal consonant, which means that surrounding vowels take a frontal quality, especially Alif (the long vowel), and fathah, which sound like the “*e*” in bet.

The articulation point of the letter “**س**” is the tongue and the tip top edge of the two frontal low incisors. There is a space left in between the tip of the tongue and the plates of the teeth when pronouncing this letter. A whistle-like sound should accompany its pronunciation.

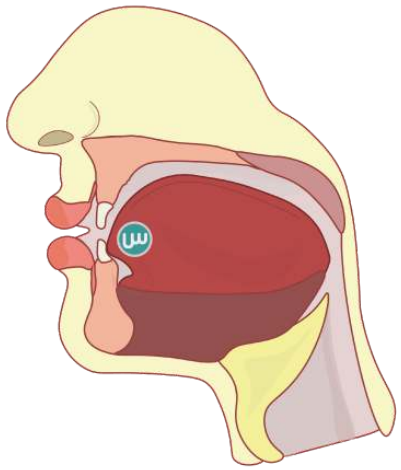


Figure 7.1.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter س

Pronunciation of letter Seen "**س**" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Seen with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	سَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	سُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	سِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	سْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Seen "**س**" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter س with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	سا	0:0
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	سو	0:0
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	سي	:0

How to Write The Letter س

The letter "س" is a connecting letter distinguished in print by its three teeth. In handwriting, the letter "س" is often written without its teeth (as straight line). To write the independent "س", begin on the line and draw a tiny hook and three teeth (like a toothbrush) then dip below the line into the tail, almost like a semicircle. In the beginning of the word, "ســـ" is written like independent "س", but without the tail - the segment should be longer to distinguish the letter.

When "س" is connected to a preceding letter, the connecting segment and the body of the letter are indistinguishable, and there is no hook in the beginning. This means that the connecting segment and the letter should form a line like this "ســـــ". The body should be long enough to distinguish it from a connecting segment.

The final "ـــس" is written with a tail, which must come all the way back up to the line. (Watch the video)

Writing Letter س

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـــس	ـســـ	ســـــ	س

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Seen



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Seen س الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

7.1: Letter Seen is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

7.2: Letter Sheen

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ش in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ش with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The letter "ش" (sheen) is the thirteenth letter of the Arabic alphabet. Pronounced like the "sh" in the English word "shoe," "sheen" is a voiceless postalveolar fricative, producing a sound that is both smooth and distinctive. Its shape is characterized by three dots arranged in a triangular formation above a base that resembles a small, wavy line.

Mastering the pronunciation and various forms of "sheen" is essential for learners of Arabic. It helps in achieving accurate pronunciation and effective communication. Understanding its different positions within words is also crucial for reading and writing Arabic correctly.

"Sheen" appears in many everyday Arabic words and expressions, making it an important letter to recognize and use. Its presence in common phrases, such as "إن شاء الله" (in shaa' Allah), meaning "God willing," highlights its significance in daily conversation and cultural expressions.

The Letter Sheen ش

0:00 / 0:01

The letter “**ش**” articulation point is the middle of the tongue and what lies opposite to it from the roof of the mouth of the hard palate – similar to the letter “ج” and the consonant “ي,” but it has specific characteristics. The letter “**ش**” is similar to the English sound “*sh*” in the words “should, shall, she”.

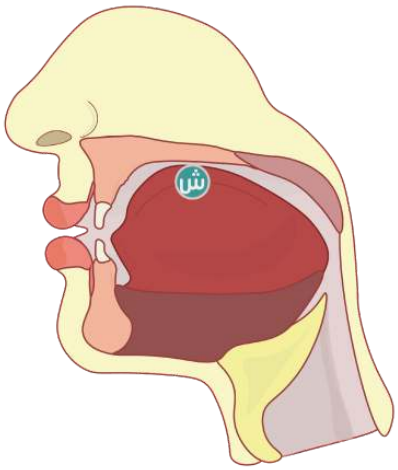


Figure **7.2.1**: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter "ش"

Pronunciation of letter Sheen "**ش**" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Sheen ش with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	شَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	شُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	شِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	شْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Sheen "**ش**" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter ش with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	شا	0:0
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	شو	0:0
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	شي	0:0

How to Write The Letter ش

You write the letter Sheen "**ش**" in the same way you write the letter Seen "**س**", but with the addition of three dots over the three teeth. The three dots are connected in handwriting and take the shape of the overturned letter "*v*". (Watch the video)

Writing Letter ش

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـش	ـشـ	شـ	ش

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Sheen



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Sheen شين الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

7.2: Letter Sheen is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

7.3: Letter Saad

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ص in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ص with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The letter "ص" (Saad) is the fourteenth letter in the Arabic alphabet. Pronounced as a heavy "s" sound, similar to the "s" in "sod," but with more emphasis and a deeper resonance, "Saad" is a voiceless alveolar fricative. This sound is produced by pressing the tongue against the alveolar ridge while allowing air to pass through the sides of the tongue, creating a distinctive, emphatic quality that sets it apart from the lighter "seen" (س).

"Saad" is used in various words and contexts in Arabic. It can appear in nouns, verbs, and adjectives, contributing to the rich phonetic diversity of the language. "Saad" appears in many common Arabic words and phrases, making it an important letter to recognize and use. For example, in the phrase "صباح الخير" (sabah al-khayr), meaning "Good morning," "Saad" plays a key role in the greeting.

Examples

Here are some examples of words containing the letter "Saad":

- **صباح** (sabah): Morning
- **صديق** (sadeeq): Friend
- **صغير** (sagheer): Small
- **صوت** (sawt): Voice

The Letter Saad ص

0:00 / 0:01

The articulation place of the letter “Saad” “**ص**” is the same as the letter “**س**” from the tip of the tongue and the top edge of the two front lower incisors. However, this letter represents the emphatic counterpart of “**س**.” Pronounce “**س**” out loud and note the position of your tongue. It should be toward the front and close to the roof of the mouth. Now, starting at the back of your teeth, move your tongue back along the roof of your mouth. You will find a bony ridge just behind the teeth, before the upward curve of the roof of your mouth; place your

tongue against this ridge. The rest of the tongue will drop lower inside your mouth to gather air. The emphatic consonants in Arabic are pronounced by placing the end of the tongue in this spot and dropping the rest of the tongue as low as you can.

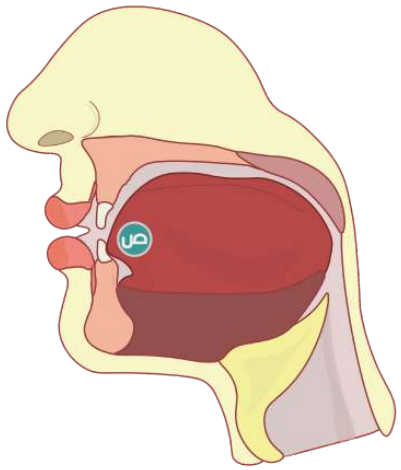


Figure **7.3.1**: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ص

Pronunciation of letter Saad "**ص**" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Saad ص with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	صَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	صُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	صِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	صْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Saad "**ص**" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter ص with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	صا	0:0
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	صو	0:0
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	صي	:0

How to Write The Letter ص

The letter “ص” is a connector letter and retains the same basic shape in both print and handwriting. There are two essential points to keep in mind when writing “ص”. First, the loop must be large and oval-shaped. Secondly, there should be a small tooth after the loop.

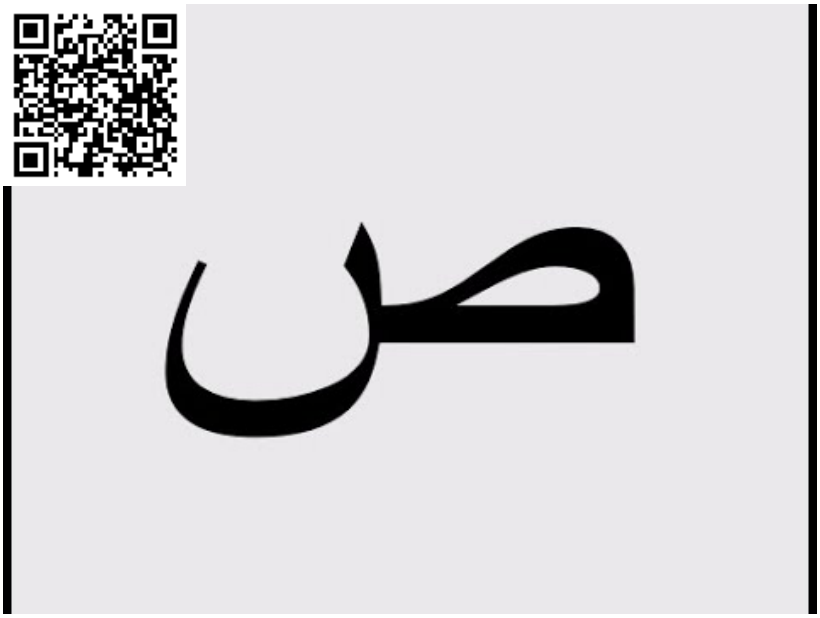
To write the independent “ص”, start on the line and make a big loop up and back to your right, then swing down and close it. Without stopping, make the tooth, then drop well below the line to make the tail. The tail of “ص” is the same shape of the tail of “س” and must come all the way back up to the line.

The letter in the beginning of the word, “صـ”, is written in the same way, but without the tail. After making the tooth, continue to the connecting segment. To write the middle “ـصـ” connected from a previous letter, draw the connecting segment to the starting point of the loop, the same point at which you started in the initial position, and then follow the same steps. At the end of the word, “ـص” is connected in the same way as the medial “ـصـ” and ends with a tail.

Writing Letter ص

Final Form	Medial Form	Initial Form	Independent Form
ـص	ـصـ	صـ	ص

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Saad.



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Saad صاد الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

7.3: Letter Saad is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

7.4: Letter Daad

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ض in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ض with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The letter "ض" (Daad) is the fifteenth letter of the Arabic alphabet and holds a special place in the Arabic language. Known as the "emphatic" or "heavy" "d," Daad is pronounced with a unique sound that does not exist in English, making it one of the more challenging letters for non-native speakers to master. This distinctive sound has led to Arabic being referred to as "لغة الضاد" (Lughat al-Daad), or "the language of Daad."

Daad is pronounced as a voiced alveolar emphatic plosive, which means it is produced by pressing the tongue against the alveolar ridge with the sides of the tongue also touching the upper teeth, and then releasing it with an emphatic quality. The sound is deeper and more resonant than the regular "d" sound in English.

Mastering the pronunciation and usage of Daad is crucial for Arabic learners. Its unique sound requires practice and careful listening. Correct pronunciation is important for clear communication and understanding in Arabic, as the difference between emphatic and non-emphatic sounds can change the meaning of words.

For example:

- **ضوء** (daw'): Light
- **دور** (dawr): Role or turn

The distinction between Daad and its non-emphatic counterpart "Daal" (د) is essential for conveying the correct meaning.

Daad is not only a linguistic marker but also a cultural one. Arabic is often called "Lughat al-Daad" because Daad is considered a unique sound to the language. This highlights the cultural pride associated with the Arabic script and pronunciation.

The Letter Daad ض

0:00 / 0:01

The letter Daad “**ض**” is articulated from the one or both sides of the tongue and from the molars and the gum area next to the molars. This letter can be articulated from one side (right or left) of the tongue alone, or from both sides of the tongue simultaneously, which is more difficult. “**ض**” has the characteristic of compression of the sound, as well as tafkheem (elevated/heaviness), so the deep part of the tongue raises when pronouncing it and compresses the sound at the same time. The “**ض**” represents the emphatic counterpart of “**د**”. To pronounce “**ض**”, place your your tongue in the same position as you did to say “**ص**” and “**د**”, and the result will be “**ض**”.

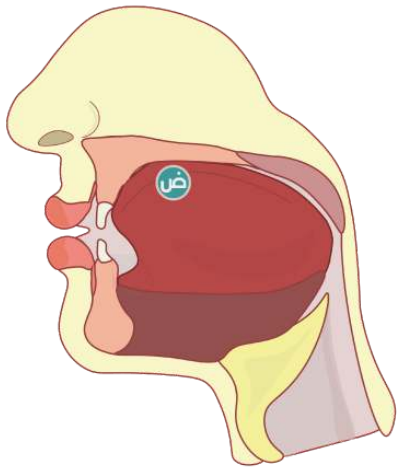


Figure **7.4.1**: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ض

Pronunciation of letter Daad "**ض**" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Daad with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	ضَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	ضُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	ضِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	ضْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Daad "**ض**" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter ض with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	ضا	0:0
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	ضو	0:0
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	ضي	:0

How to Write The Letter Daad ض

You write the letter "ض" in the same way as the letter "ص" and add a dot above the letter. (Watch the video)

Writing Letter ض

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـض	ـضـ	ضـ	ض

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Daad.



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Daad ضاد الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

7.4: Letter Daad is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

7.5: The Phrase "To Have" In Arabic

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn the concept of "having" something is typically done using the phrase "عندي" (ʿindī).

Introduction to the Verb "عندي" (To Have) in Arabic

In Arabic, expressing possession or the concept of "having" something is typically done using the phrase "عندي" (ʿindī). Unlike English, where the verb "to have" is directly used, Arabic utilizes a more descriptive structure that translates literally to "with me" or "at me." The word "عندي" is a combination of the preposition "عند" (ʿind), meaning "at" or "with," and the possessive suffix "ي" (ī), indicating "my" or "me."

Usage and Structure

The structure "عندي" is used to indicate possession or existence of something in relation to the speaker. Here's a breakdown of how it's used:

- **عندي كتاب** (ʿindī kitāb): I have a book.
- **عندك سيارة** (ʿindaka sayyārah): You have a car. (masculine singular)
- **عندكِ قلم** (ʿindaki qalam): You have a pen. (feminine singular)
- **عنده بيت** (ʿindahu bayt): He has a house.
- **عندها حقيبة** (ʿindahā ḥaqībah): She has a bag.

As seen in the examples above, the possessive suffix changes according to the subject:

- **عندي** (ʿindī) - I have
- **عندك** (ʿindaka / ʿindaki) - You have (masculine/feminine singular)
- **عنده** (ʿindahu) - He has
- **عندها** (ʿindahā) - She has
- **عندنا** (ʿindanā) - We have
- **عندكم** (ʿindakum) - You have (plural)
- **عندهم** (ʿindahum) - They have

Cultural and Linguistic Notes

The usage of "عندي" reflects the syntactic structure of Arabic, which often employs prepositional phrases to express concepts that would be single verbs in English. It is important to note that the literal translation does not carry the same meaning as in Arabic; instead, it emphasizes the possession or presence of an item.

This construction is versatile and commonly used in everyday Arabic conversation. It can refer to tangible possessions, such as objects or belongings, as well as abstract concepts, such as time or feelings.

- **عندي وقت** (ʿindī waqt): I have time.
- **عندي فكرة** (ʿindī fikrah): I have an idea.

The phrase "عندي" is a fundamental and versatile part of the Arabic language, essential for expressing possession. Understanding its usage is crucial for learners, as it appears frequently in both spoken and written Arabic. By mastering "عندي" and its variations, learners can effectively communicate ownership, relationships, and availability, enriching their overall command of the language.

Expressing "Do Not Have" with "ليس عندي" (laysa ʿindī)

To express the lack of possession or "not having" something, Arabic uses the structure "ليس عندي" (laysa ʿindī), where "ليس" (laysa) means "is not" or "there is not." This phrase negates the possession expressed by "عندي."

Examples include:

- **ليس عندي وقت** (laysa ʿindī waqt): I do not have time.
- **ليس عنده مال** (laysa ʿindahu māl): He does not have money.
- **ليست عندها فكرة** (laysat ʿindahā fikrah): She does not have an idea.

As shown, the form of "ليس" changes to agree with the subject's gender and number, similar to how verbs agree in Arabic.

The structure "عندي" and its negative form "ليس عندي" are foundational in Arabic for expressing possession. Unlike English, where "to have" serves as a stand-alone verb, Arabic relies on prepositional phrases that convey the relationship between the possessor and the possessed item. This difference highlights the rich syntactical and grammatical structure of Arabic.

Furthermore, understanding how to use "عندي" and "ليس عندي" is essential for daily communication, as these phrases are frequently used to discuss belongings, needs, and availability of resources.

The Phrase "To Have"

Image	Meaning	Arabic	Audio
 I have; CC BY 2.0	I have	عِندي	
	I don't have	لَيْسَ عِندي	

The phrases "عندي" (ʿindī) and "ليس عندي" (laysa ʿindī) are crucial components of the Arabic language, enabling speakers to express possession and its absence. Mastery of these expressions allows for accurate and nuanced communication, helping learners convey a wide range of situations and concepts. By practicing these phrases and their variations, learners can deepen their understanding of Arabic grammar and improve their conversational skills.

Activities

7.5: The Phrase "To Have" In Arabic is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.2: Vocabulary** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

7.6: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn and say new vocabulary about family members.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

Vocabulary:

Vocabulary

Image	Meaning	Arabic	Audio
 Professor, teacher (male)	Professor, teacher (male) (noun)	أُستاذ	0:00 / 0:00
 Professor, teacher (female)	Professor, teacher (female) (noun)	أُستاذة	0:00 / 0:00
 Mr.	To introduce a male with no title. (noun)	سَيِّد	0:00 / 0:00
 To introduce a female with no title	To introduce a female with no title (noun)	سَيِّدة	0:00 / 0:00
 Young lady, unmarried woman; CC BY 2.0	Refer to a young , unmarried woman	آنِسة	0:00 / 0:00
 Young man	Young man (noun)	شاب	0:00 / 0:00

Image	Meaning	Arabic	Audio
 Young Lady	Young lady (noun)	شابة	0:00 / 0:00
 Youths	Youths (noun)	شَباب	0:00 / 0:00
 Family	Family (immediate) (noun)	أُسرَة	0:00 / 0:00
 (عائلة كرم) CC BY-SA 4.0	Family (extended) (noun)	عائِلة	0:00 / 0:00
 drink	Drink (noun)	شَراب	0:00 / 0:00
 Car	Car (noun)	سَيَّارة	0:00 / 0:00
 Syria; CC BY-SA 3.0	Syria (noun)	سوريا	0:00 / 0:00

Image	Meaning	Arabic	Audio
 Morning	Morning	صباح	0:00 / 0:01
 Picture	Picture (noun)	صورة	0:00 / 0:00
 Number	Number	رَقَم Raqam	0:00 / 0:03

Adjectives

Adjectives

Image	English	Arabic	Audio
 Black	Black	أَسْوَد	
 Green	Green	أَخْضَر	
 White; CC BY-SA 3.0	White	أَبْيَض	

Cognate

cognate

Meaning	Formal / Written
Secretary	سكرتير
Salad	سلطة
Pepsi	بيبسي
Cigarette	سيجارة
Cinema	سينما
Biscuit	بسكويت

Cultural Phrases

Cultural Phrases

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Arabic	Audio
 Thank you	Shukran	Thank you (noun)	شكراً	0:00 / 0:00
 Please	Min Fadlak	Please (adverb)	مِنْ فَضلك	0:00 / 0:00
 Please come in (for a male)	Tafaddal	Please come in (for a male)	تَفَضَّل	0:00 / 0:00
 Please come in (for a female)	Tafaddalii	Please come in (for a female)	تَفَضَّلي	0:00 / 0:00
 Thank you	Shukran	Thank you (noun)	شكراً	0:00 / 0:00

Activities

New Verb (to study)

You will learn a new verb in the table below. The verb to study means in Arabic درس. Then, practice the verb in conversation.

The verb to study (درس)

Example meaning in English	Example	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning
I study Spanish Literature.	أَدْرُسُ أَدَب إسباني	I study	أَدْرُسُ
We study Spanish Literature.	نَدْرُسُ أدب إسباني	We Study	نَدْرُسُ
Oh, Ben, do study Spanish Literature.	تَدْرُسُ أدب إسباني، يا بِنْ	You study (Masculine/ Singular)	تَدْرُسُ
Oh, Tina, do study Spanish Literature.	تَدْرُسين أدب إسباني، يا تينا	You study (Feminine/ Singular)	تَدْرُسين
You study Spanish Literature.	تَدْرُسُون أدب إسباني، يا شباب	You study (all)	تَدْرُسُون
John studies Spanish Literature.	يَدْرُسُ جون أدب إسباني	He studies	يَدْرُسُ
Rana studies Spanish Literature.	تَدْرُسُ رنا أدب إسباني	she studies	تَدْرُسُ
They study Spanish Literature.	جون ورنا يَدْرُسُون أدب إسباني	They (all) study	يَدْرُسُون

7.6: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.2: Vocabulary** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- **5.2: Vocabulary** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

7.7: Numbers الأرقام

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Count Arabic Numbers from 0-100.
- Say and Write your phone number.

Arabic Numerals from 0-100

What you need to know about Arabic Numerals?

- Western Numerals 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8, and 9, also described as the Arabic numerals, are considered the first ten digits that are usually used for writing decimals. These numerals are called Arabic because they were presented to Europe by the Arabs.
- While the Eastern (mashriq) Arabic Numerals, also called Arabic- Hindu numeral, are currently used in the east of the Arabic countries.
- These are the Arabic Numerals that are used nowadays: ٠ ،١ ،٢ ،٣ ،٤ ،٥ ،٦ ،٧ ،٨ ،٩
- Arabic letters are read and written from right to left, but the Arabic numerals are read and written from left to right.
-



Count with Me from (0-10)

Let's learn how to count in Arabic from 0-10



Arabic Numbers from 1-10

Arabic Number	English Number	Number pronunciation	Arabic Word
٠	0	Sifer	صفر
١	1	wahid	واحد
٢	2	Ithnan	اثنان
٣	3	Thalatha	ثلاثة
٤	4	arba-ah	أربعة
٥	5	khamsah	خمسة
٦	6	Sittah	ستة
٧	7	Sab-ah	سبعة
٨	8	thamaniya	ثمانية
٩	9	tis-ah	تسعة
١٠	10	ashara	عشرة

Arabic Numbers from 11-20

Arabic numbers from 11-20

Arabic Numbers	English Number	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal written
١١	11	ahada ‘ashara	eleven	أحد عشر
١٢	12	ithna ‘ashara	tweleve	اثنا عشر
١٣	13	thalatha 'ashar	thirteen	ثلاثة عشر
١٤	14	arbaa 'ashar	forteen	أربعة عشر
١٥	15	khamsa 'ashar	fifteen	خمسة عشر
١٦	16	sitta 'ashar	sixteen	ستة عشر
١٧	17	saba 'ashar	seventeen	سبعة عشر
١٨	18	thamaniya 'ashar	eighteen	ثمانية عشر
١٩	19	tisa 'ashar	ninteen	تسعة عشر
٢٠	20	ishrun	twenty	عشرون

? Exercise 7.7.6

Look at the pictures below and answer the question

What is the number of the street in the picture in Arabic number? ma raqm alshaarie fi alsuwra ما رقم الشارع في الصورة



Street Number

Answer

١٦

Arabic Numbers from 21-30

Let's learn more Arabic numbers from 21-30. دعونا نتعلم الأرقام العربية

Arabic numbers 21-30

Arabic Numbers	English Number	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal written
٢١	21	wahed wa-’ishrun	twenty-one	واحد و عشرون
٢٢	22	ithnane wa-’ishrun	twenty-two	إثنان وعشرون
٢٣	23	thalatha wa-’ishrun	twenty-three	ثلاثة و عشرون
٢٤	24	arba’a wa-’ishrun	twenty-four	أربعة و عشرون
٢٥	25	khamsa wa-’ishrun	twenty-five	خمسة و عشرون
٢٦	26	sitta wa-’ishrun	twenty-six	ستة و عشرون
٢٧	27	sab’a wa-’ishrun	twenty-seven	سبعة وعشرون
٢٨	28	thamaniya wa-’ishrun	twenty-eight	ثمانية و عشرون
٢٩	29	tis’a wa-’ishrun	twenty-nine	تسعة و عشرون
٣٠	30	thalathun	thirty	ثلاثون

Arabic Numbers from 10-100

Let's learn more Arabic numbers from 10-100. دعونا نتعلم الأرقام العربية



Arabic numbers 30-100

Arabic Numbers	English Number	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal written
١٠	10	ashara	Ten	عشرة
٢٠	20	ishrun	twenty	عشرون
٣٠	30	thalathun	thirsty	ثلاثون
٤٠	40	arba’un	forty	أربعون
٥٠	50	khamsun	fifty	خمسون
٦٠	60	sittun	sixty	ستون
٧٠	70	sab’un	seventy	سبعون
٨٠	80	thamanun	eighty	ثمانون
٩٠	90	tis’un	ninety	تسعون
١٠٠	100	mi'a	hundred	مائة

7.7: Numbers الأرقام is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.4: Numbers الأرقام** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

7.8: Dialog - Tell Me More About YOU

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Say and write my phone number and home number.
- Ask and answer about someone's phone number, and age.

Dialog 1:

In this dialogue, Tariq and John meet in the library. Listen to their conversation and then practice with your classmates.

0:00 / 1:11

Asking Questions

English	Transcription	Arabic
Tarek: peace be upon you	Assalamu Alaikum	طارق: السَّلامُ عليكم
John: and peace be upon you	Wa Aalkium Assalaam	جون: وَ عَليكمُ السَّلام
Tarek: How are you?	Kayfa haluka?	طارق: كِيْفَ حالُكَ؟
John: Fine, thank God. And you, Tarek?	Bikhayr wa alhamdu lillah, wa 'anta ya Tarek?	جون: بِخَيْر والحمدُ لله، و أنتَ يا طارِق؟
Tarek: I am good. What is your name?	Anna jayed, maa ismuka?	طارق: أنا جَيْد، ما اِسمُكَ؟
John: my name is John. And you?	Ismee John, and you?	جون: اسمي جون، وَأَنْتَ؟
Tarek: My name is Tarek. Where are from?	Ismee Tarek. min ayana anta?	طارق: اسمي طارق. مِنْ أَينَ أنتَ؟
John: I am from New Jersey. and you?	Ana min madinat New Jersy, wa anta?	جون: أنا مِن مَدينَةِ نيو جِرسي، وأنتَ؟
Tarek: I am from San Diego. What do you study?	Ana min madinat San Diego. Ayana tadrus?	طارق: أنا مِن مَدينَةِ سان دييغو. أَيْنَ تَدرُسُ؟

English	Transcription	Arabic
John: I study at City College, and you?	Adrys fi kolyat seety, wa anta?	جون: أَدْرُسُ في كليَّةِ سيتي، وأنتَ؟
Tarek: I study at New Jersey University. How old are you?	Adrusu fi jamia'et New Jersey. Kam omurak?	طارق: أدرُسُ في جامِعَةِ نيوجِرسي. كَم عمْرُكَ؟
John: 20 years old, and you?	Oshroon sanah, and you?	جون: عُشرون سَنَة، وأنتَ؟
Tarek: I am 21 years old. Where is your house?	Omree wahid wa oshroon sanah. Ayna baytuk?	طارق: عُمري واحد وَعشرون سَنة. أينَ بيتُكَ؟
John: My house near Broadway, and you?	Baytee fi share'e Broadway, and you?	جون: بيتي قريب في شارع "برود وي"، وأنتَ؟
Tarek: My house in New Jersey.	Baytee ba'eed fi New Jersey.	طارق: بيتي بَعيد في نيو جرسي
John: You have a car?	Endak syyarahk, ya Tarek?	جون: عِنْدكَ سيّارَة، يا طارق؟
Tarek: Yes, I have a black Toyota car, and you?	Na'em, indee sayyarah Toyota sawdaa, wa anta?	طارق: نَعم، عندي سيّارَة تويوتا سَوْداء، وأنتَ؟

English	Transcription	Arabic
John: I do not have a car. What is phone number?	Laysa indee sayyarah. Ma raqam talphonak?	جون: لَيْسَ عِندي سيّارَة. ما رَقم تلفونكَ؟
Tarek: my phone number is (555-1234), and you?	Telefony 5551234, wa anta?	طارق: تلفوني: ٥٥٥١٢٣٤ وأنتَ؟
John: (555-6920)	5556920	جون: ٥٥٥٦٩٢٠
Tarek: Nice to meet you. Good Bye.	Fursah saeida, Ma'a alsalama	طارق: فُرصَةٌ سَعيدَةٌ، مع السلامة
John: See you. Bye.	Ila alliqa'a, Ma'a alsalama	جون: إلى اللقاء، مع السلامة

Reading

Listen to the text, and then practice reading. The text talks about Tarek, who lives in Baghdad, and his Lebanese friend Jud.



Tariq

0:00 / 0:52

طارق وجود

طَارِق عِراقيٌّ، يَدْرُسُ طارق فِي جامِعَةِ بَغداد. بَيْتُ طَارِقِ بَعيد مِنْ مّدينة بَغداد. بَيْتُ طَارق في شارع عَدَن في بِنايَة جَديدَة. رَقَمُ بَيْتِ طارِق سِتَّة وَتُسعون. عِندَ طارق أسرّة صغيرَة في مَدينَةِ بَغداد. جود صديق طارق. جود لُبْناني، وَيَدرُسُ عَرَبي في كُلَّيَّة سيتي في سان دييغو. عِندَ جود سيّارَة جَديدَة خَضْراء وَسريعة . طارق يُحِبُّ سيّارَةَ جود

Here is the text transliterated:

Tariq 'iraqiyyun, yadrusu Tariq fi jaami'ati Baghdad. Baytu Tariq ba'idun min madinati Baghdad. Baytu Tariq fi shaari' 'Adan fi binaaya jadeeda. Raqamu bayti Tariq sitta wa-tis'oon. 'Inda Tariq usratun sagheeratun fi madinati Baghdad. Jud sadeeq Tariq. Jud Lubnaniyyun, wa-yadrusu 'arabi fi kulliyat Siti fi San Diego. 'Inda Jud sayyaratun jadeedatun khadra' wa-sari'a. Tariq yuhibbu sayyarata Jud.

Activities

Listening

7.8: Dialog - Tell Me More About YOU is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.3: Dialogue and Reading** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

7.9: Interrogative Words in Arabic (Part 1)

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Ask and answer simple questions about time, and phone number, by using Interrogative Words: who مَن "Man", what ما "Maa", how much كم "Kam".

أدوات الاستفهام- Interrogative words

Interrogative words: "who" مَن "Man", "what" ما "Maa", "how much" or "how many" كم "Kam" are used to ask questions, and "where" أيْنَ.

Listen to the audio to learn the pronunciation of the interrogative words, and then review the table below. You will learn about four interrogative words that are used to ask questions with examples.

0:00 / 0:06

Interrogative words

Example	Example	Meaning in English	Interrogative Word
كَمْ عُمرُكِ؟ How old are you (feminine, singular)? kam Oumarki?	كَمْ عُمْرُكَ؟ How old are you (masculine, singular)? kam Oumarka?	How (much/ many)	كَمْ
مَا اِسْمُك ؟ What is your name? Maa ismuk?	مَا عِنْوانُ طارِق ؟ What's Tarek address? Ma eunwana Tarek?	What	مَا
أَيْنَ أنت؟ Where are you?	أَيْنَ طارِق ؟ Where is Tarek?	Where	أيْنَ
مَنْ أنْت؟ Who are you? Man Ant?	مَنْ هُوَ؟ Who is he? Man huwa?	Who	مَنْ

Activities

7.9: Interrogative Words in Arabic (Part 1) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 5.4: Numbers الأرقام by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

7.10: Egypt

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

1. Learn about Egypt, its Geographical location, famous cities, its most famous artifacts, and its traditional food and clothes.

Egypt مصر: Misr

Egypt (مِصر) is one of the most historically rich and culturally significant countries in the Arab world. Located in **North Africa**, Egypt connects Africa to the Middle East and has played a crucial role in world history for thousands of years. The country is well known for its **ancient civilization, pyramids, and the Nile River**.



Facts to know about Egypt

- Official Name: Arab Republic of Egypt- جمهورية مصر العربية- jumhuriat misr alearabia
- Capital: Cairo- القاهرة- Al Qahirah
- Population: 106,789,274 - (2022)
- Currency: Egyptian Pound- الجنيه المصري- aljunayh almisriu
- Continent: Africa- أفريقيا- afriqya
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic -اللغة العربية الفصحى الحديثة- allughat alearabiat alfushaa alhaditha.
- Tourism is a major part of Egypt's economy, with millions of visitors coming each year to see its famous historical sites. The country also has industries in agriculture, manufacturing, and trade, with the Suez Canal playing a key role in global shipping.

Geographical location and flag



Egypt; CC BY-SA 3.0



Flag of Egypt

Egypt is located in the northeast corner of Africa. It is the link between the northeast of Africa and the southwest corner of Asia. It borders with Sudan to the south, Libya to the west, the Red Sea and Gulf of Aqaba to the east, the Mediterranean Sea to the north, and the Gaza Strip to the northeast. Egypt was a cradle of one of the most ancient Middle Eastern civilizations, the Pharaonic ancient Egyptian civilization.

Watch this movie about Ancient Egypt and learn about ancient Egyptian



Famous cities

- Cairo (القاهرة) – The capital and largest city of Egypt, Cairo is the political, economic, and cultural heart of the country. It is home to numerous historical and modern landmarks, including the Pyramids of Giza, the Sphinx, and the Egyptian Museum, which houses a vast collection of ancient artifacts, including treasures from the tomb of Tutankhamun. Cairo is also famous for its vibrant markets, such as Khan el-Khalili, where visitors can buy traditional crafts, spices, and jewelry. The city has a unique blend of ancient history and modern infrastructure, featuring high-rise buildings, traffic congestion, and a lively arts and music scene. The Nile River runs through Cairo, offering scenic views and traditional felucca boat rides.
- Alexandria (الإسكندرية) – A major port city on the Mediterranean coast, famous for the ancient Library of Alexandria and the Citadel of Qaitbay.



Alexandria; CC BY-SA 3.0

- Luxor (الأقصر) – Home to some of the most famous ancient Egyptian temples and monuments, including the Valley of the Kings.

- Aswan (أسوان) – A southern city known for its beautiful scenery, Nubian culture, and the Aswan High Dam.
- Tanta (طنطا) – A key city in the Nile Delta region, known for its religious significance and the Mosque of Ahmad al-Badawi.



Tanta; CC BY-SA 4.0

- Asyut (أسيوط) – A major city in Upper Egypt with a deep historical and cultural heritage, playing a central role in trade and education.



Asyut; CC BY-SA 3.0

- Suez (السويس) – A strategically important port city located on the Suez Canal, connecting the Mediterranean Sea to the Red Sea and serving as a major



As-Suezالسويس; CC BY-SA 4.0

- Port Said (بورسعيد) – A significant coastal city at the northern entrance of the Suez Canal, known for its strategic importance in international trade. The city played a crucial role in Egyptian history, particularly during the Suez Crisis of 1956. Port Said is famous for its picturesque Corniche, colonial-style buildings, and duty-free shopping, making it a popular tourist destination.





Egyptian Major Cities

History and Culture

Egypt has a long and fascinating history that dates back over 5,000 years. It was home to one of the world's earliest civilizations, the Ancient Egyptians, who built the famous pyramids, temples, and tombs. The country was later influenced by Greek, Roman, Arab, and Ottoman cultures. Today, Egypt is known for its rich blend of ancient traditions and modern life.

Most famous artifacts

The Great Sphinx of Giza

The Great Sphinx of Giza is one of the most famous artifacts in Egypt and one of the largest monuments in the world. It has two parts a lion's body and a human head. It is a huge 4,500-year-old limestone statue measuring 240 feet long and 66 feet high near the Great Pyramid in Giza.



A View of the Great Sphinx of Giza beside a Pyramid; pexels license

The Rosetta Stone

The Rosetta Stone is one of the most ancient artifacts in Egypt. It went back to Pharaoh Ptolemy V. It contains a decree about religious texts written in three different writing systems Greek, Egyptian Hieroglyphics, and Egyptian Demotic. It is the key to undersatnd the ancient writing system of egypt.



The Rosetta Stone; CC BY-SA 4.0

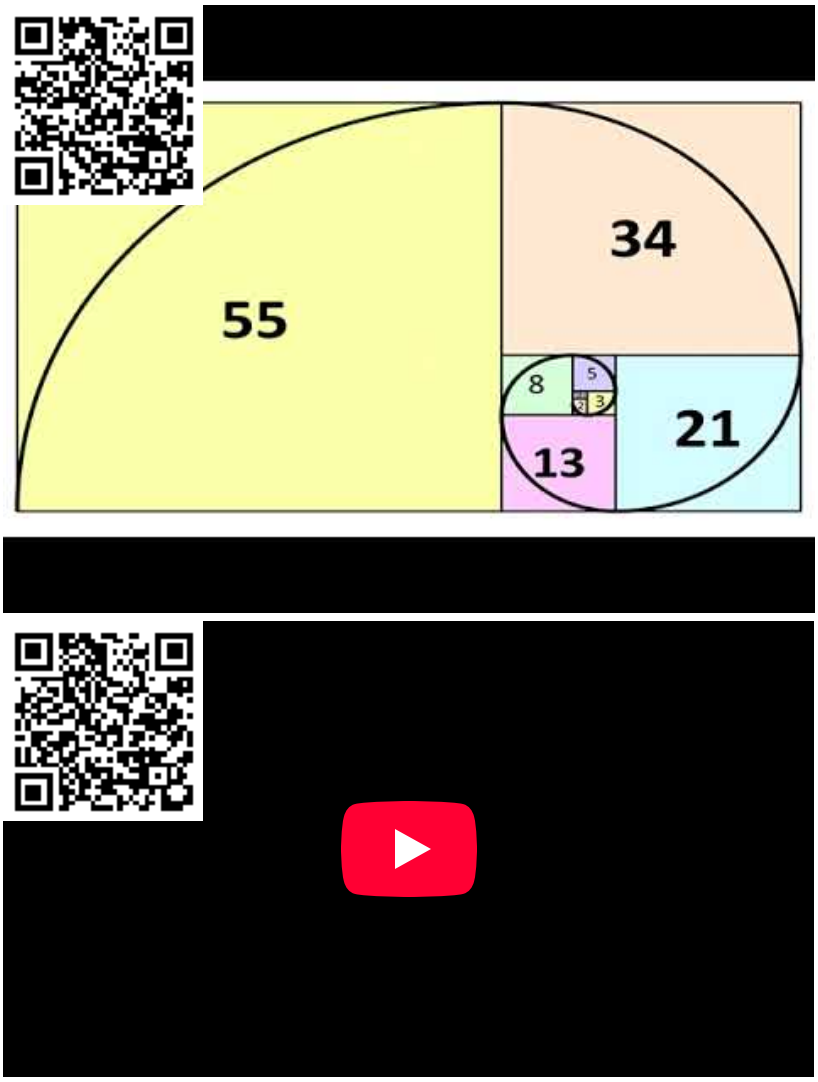
Nefertiti Bust

Nefertiti Bust is one of the most famous artifacts of the most beautiful woman in Ancient Egypt. She is the great royal wife of the Egyptian Pharaoh Akhenaton. The bust is made of limestone covered with modeled gypsum.

Egyptian Pyramids

Egyptian Pyramids are Ancient buildings and great structures that are located in Egypt. They were built during the brightest time of the Egyptian civilizations, especially the Great Pyramids of Giza. The oldest pyramids were built around 2630 B.C. at Saqqarah for the king Djoser.

Watch the videos to learn more about Pyramids.



Ramesses II

Ramesses II is known as Ramesses the Great. He was one of the most famous pharaohs of Egypt. He was the third Pharaoh of the Nineteenth Dynasty. He was famous for his bravery, leadership, and martial Skills over the Egyptian army.

Most Popular Food in Egypt

Egyptian cuisine is rich in flavors and influenced by centuries of trade and cultural exchanges. Some of the most popular dishes include:

- **Kushari (كشري)** – A beloved street food made from rice, pasta, lentils, chickpeas, and fried onions, all topped with a spicy tomato sauce and garlic vinegar.



Koshari; CC BY-SA 4.0

- **Ful medames (فول مدمس)** – A staple breakfast dish made of fava beans, usually cooked slowly and served with olive oil, lemon juice, and garlic.
- **Ta'meya (طعمية)** – Egyptian falafel made from fava beans instead of chickpeas, deep-fried and served with bread, salad, and tahini sauce.
- **Molokhia (ملوخية)** – A green leafy soup made from jute leaves, cooked with garlic and served with rice or bread, often with chicken or rabbit.



Mulukhiya; CC BY-SA 4.0

- **Feteer meshaltet (فطير مشلتت)** – A layered, flaky pastry that can be eaten plain, with honey, or stuffed with cheese or meat.
- **Mahshi (محشي)** – Vegetables such as zucchini, eggplant, or grape leaves stuffed with rice, herbs, and spices.
- **Hawawshi (حواوشي)** – A spiced minced meat sandwich baked inside a crispy bread crust.
- **Om Ali (أم علي)** – A traditional Egyptian dessert similar to bread pudding, made with layers of pastry, milk, nuts, and sugar.



Om Ali; CC BY-SA 4.0

Activity 1

Write the missing words after reading the chapter above

Most Popular Traditional Clothing in Egypt

- Egyptian fashion mostly has simple patterns with high-quality cotton, linen, and wool fabrics mixed with Islamic, Ottoman, and European cultures, traditions, and customs.
- There are differences in the styles of fashion between rich and poor, farmers and city residents, Muslims and non-Muslims.
- Egyptian Men's outfit differs from one place to another. Men mainly wear "*Gallegaya"* in striped colors with baggy pants and wide and large sleeves. For their headdresses, they put *"taqiyia"*, or "*turban"* made from cotton.
- Egyptian women's fashion is mainly inspired by Islamic Culture attire. Women wear "*Gallebaya"* that fully cover their bodies with headdresses, ears, and necks. while some of the women wear European fashion and others wear Islamic clothing with either *Hijab* or *Burka*.
- **Nubian Traditional Dress** – In southern Egypt, Nubian communities wear colorful, intricately designed garments that reflect their unique cultural heritage.
- **Siwan Clothing** – In the Siwa Oasis, local Berber communities wear traditional embroidered dresses and silver jewelry, reflecting their distinct cultural identity.

Watch this video about Ancient Egyptian Fashion



Egyptian Women's Traditional Clothing



Egyptian Woman's Dress; CC BY-SA 4.0



Islamic Egyptian Woman's Abayia; CC BY-SA 3.0



Egyptian Woman's Dress; CC BY-SA 4.0

Egyptian Men's Traditional Clothing



Egyptian wearing gellabiyas; public domain

7.10: Egypt is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

7.11: Assessment

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Review what you have learned in this chapter.

Activities

7.11: Assessment is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

8: Chapter Eight- Where do you live?

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Read, write, and type the letters ط ظ ع غ in their different shapes.
- Ask someone, "Where do you live?"
- Ask simple questions and the answers using Interrogative Words.
- Learn a new verb (to live- سكن) in the present tense.
- Learn about Saudi Arabia and Kuwait's geographical location, famous cities, their most famous artifacts, and their traditional food and clothes.

8.1: Letter Tuaa
8.2: Letter Dhaa
8.3: Letter Aein
8.4: Letter Ghien
8.5: Vocabulary
8.6: Interrogative words (Part Two)
8.7: New Verbs (To live)
8.8: Dialog - Where do you live?
8.9: Kuwait
8.10: Saudi Arabia

8: Chapter Eight- Where do you live? is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

8.1: Letter Tuaa

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ط in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ط with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The letter "ط" (Tā') is the sixteenth letter of the Arabic alphabet and is one of the emphatic or velarized consonants, which means it is pronounced with a constricted throat and a raised tongue, giving it a unique, robust sound distinct from its non-emphatic counterpart "ت" (Tā). The letter "ط" is transliterated as "ṭ" to distinguish it from "t" in Roman script.

Learning to write and pronounce ط is crucial for Arabic learners, as it appears frequently in everyday vocabulary. For example, words like طائرة (ta'ira, meaning "airplane"), طعام (ta'am, meaning "food"), and طبيب (tabib, meaning "doctor") all include this letter. Mastering ط will enhance your reading, writing, and speaking skills, contributing to a more accurate and authentic use of the Arabic language.

For example, "الطَّالِب" (aṭ-ṭālib), meaning "the student." Understanding the proper pronunciation and usage of "ط" is crucial for learners of Arabic, as it is frequently used in the language and is essential for clear and accurate communication. Mastery of the letter "ط" will greatly enhance your reading, writing, and pronunciation skills in Arabic.

The Letter Tuaa

0:00 / 0:00

To pronounce the letter “ط”, put the tip of your tongue up against the bony ridge behind your teeth on the roof of your mouth and drop your tongue low in your mouth. Try to say “t” holding this position. The result will be “ط”. The letter “ط” is emitted from the top part of the tip of the tongue and the gum line of the two top incisors.

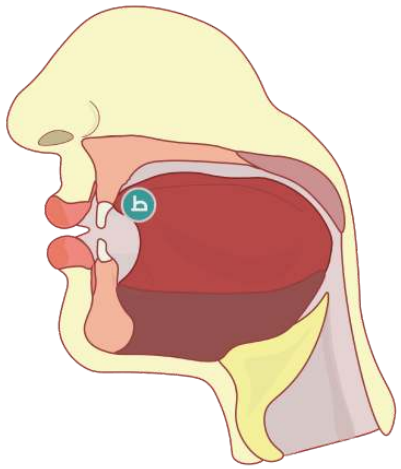


Figure **8.1.1**: Pronunciation of Letter ط

Pronunciation of letter Letter Tuaa "ط" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Daad with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	طَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	طُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	طِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	طْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Tuaa "ط" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter ض with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	طا	0:0
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	طو	0:0
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	طي	0:0

How to Write the letter Tuaa "ط"

"ط" is a connector letter, and it is written in two separate steps. It is important for the loop to be written in one motion and then connected to the word. To write the independent "ط", start on the line and make the loop first. It should be large, oval, and should rest along the line lengthwise. The final step is the downstroke. After forming the loop, lift your pen and draw this stroke as you draw Alif - from the top down. The downstroke should be near the left end of the loop.

To write "ـطـ" in the beginning of the word, follow the same steps and then, without stopping to write the downstroke, continue into the connecting segment, but without a tooth. When writing "ـطـ" in the medial position, start from the connecting segment and continue along with the previous steps. In its final position, "ـط" should end when past the oval in a relatively short line.

Writing Letter ط

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـط	ـطـ	طـ	ط

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Tuaa.



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Tuaa طاء الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

8.1: Letter Tuaa is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

8.2: Letter Dhaa

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ظ in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ظ with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The Arabic letter ظ (pronounced "Dha") is the seventeenth letter of the Arabic alphabet and is classified as an "emphatic" or "pharyngealized" consonant. This means it is pronounced with a constriction of the throat, giving it a heavier and more resonant sound compared to its non-emphatic counterpart, ذ (Dhal). The letter ظ is unique and challenging for learners due to its distinct pronunciation, which involves the back of the tongue touching the roof of the mouth while the vocal cords vibrate. In written form, ظ is easily recognizable and connects to other letters in various positions within a word.

Learning to write and pronounce ظ accurately is essential for Arabic learners, as it appears in many common words and names. Examples include ظَهْر (zahr, meaning "back"), نَظَر (nazar, meaning "sight" or "view"), and ظَرِيف (zareef, meaning "witty" or "charming"). Mastering the letter ظ will significantly enhance your ability to read, write, and speak Arabic with precision and confidence, allowing for clearer communication and deeper understanding of the language.

The Letter Dhaa ظ

0:00 / 0:01

Pronunciation of letter Letter Dhaa "ظ" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Daad with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	ظَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	ظُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	ظِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	ظْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Dhaa "ظ" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter ض with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	ظا	
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	ظو	
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	ظي	

How to Write the Letter Dhaa ظ

You write the letter "ظ" the same way you write the letter "ط", with the addition of a dot on the top

Writing letter ظ Form

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـظ	ـظـ	ظـ	ظ

Watch the video and learn how to write the letter Dhaa



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Dhaa ظاء الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

8.2: Letter Dhaa is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

8.3: Letter Aein

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ع in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ع with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The Arabic letter ع (pronounced "Ayn") is the eighteenth letter of the Arabic alphabet. It is a unique and challenging letter for many learners due to its deep, pharyngeal pronunciation, which involves constricting the throat. Unlike any sound in English, the letter ع is produced by pressing the root of the tongue against the back of the throat, creating a guttural sound.

Learning to write and pronounce ع correctly is crucial for Arabic learners as it frequently appears in everyday vocabulary. Words like عَرَب (Arab), عِلْم (ilm, meaning "knowledge"), and سَاعَة (saa'a, meaning "hour" or "clock") all include this letter. Mastering the pronunciation and usage of ع will greatly enhance your reading, writing, and speaking skills in Arabic, contributing to more accurate and effective communication. Understanding this letter is essential for grasping the nuances of the Arabic language and for achieving fluency.

The Letter Aien ع

0:00 / 0:01

Pronunciation of letter Letter Aein "ع" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Daad with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	عَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	عُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	عِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	عْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Aien "ع" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter ض with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	عا	0:0
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	عو	0:0
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	عي	:0

How to Write the Letter Aien ع

The letter "ع" is a connecting letter and has four different shapes according to its location in the word. Independent "ع" has two parts, and they are the head and the body. The head takes the shape of a lowercase "c" on the line, and the second part is the tail, which takes the shape of a large "C".

To write the initial "عـ", draw the head, which is the shape of the small "c" , then draw the segment to be connected to the following letter.

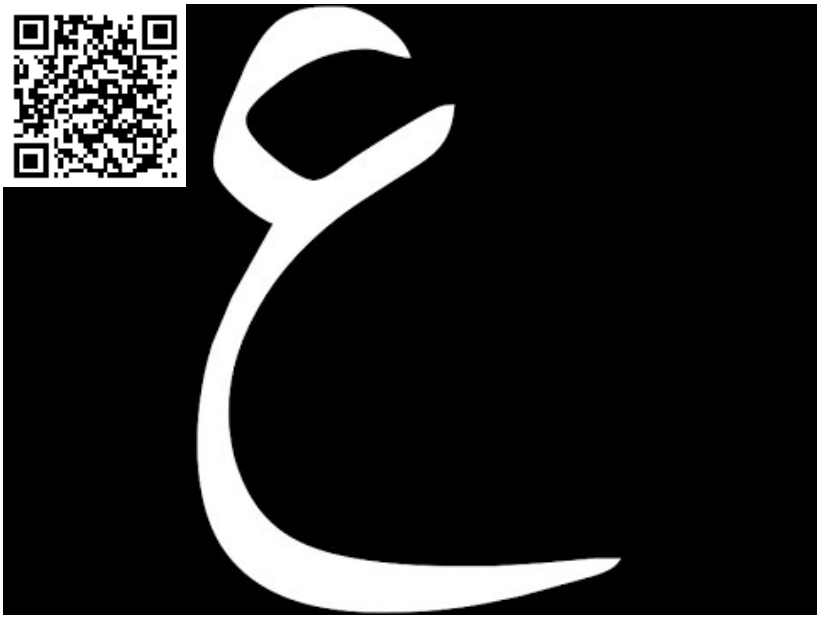
When "ع" is connected from a previous letter in the medial and final positions, the body of the letter becomes a closed loop "ـع /ـعـ".

In some forms of calligraphy, the body of the loop is filled but in others is not "ـع."

Writing letter عform

Final	Final	Final	Final
ع	ـعـ	عـ	ع

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Aien



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Aien عين الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

8.3: Letter Aein is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

8.4: Letter Ghien

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write غ in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter غ with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The Arabic letter غ (pronounced "Ghien") is the nineteenth letter of the Arabic alphabet. It is a unique guttural sound, produced by vibrating the uvula at the back of the throat. This sound does not have an exact equivalent in English, making it one of the more challenging letters for Arabic learners to master. The letter غ is important in Arabic phonetics and can significantly alter the meaning of words if mispronounced.

Learning to correctly write and pronounce غ is crucial for Arabic learners, as it appears in many common words and names. Examples include غُرْفَة (ghurfa, meaning "room"), غَرِيب (ghareeb, meaning "strange" or "foreigner"), صَغِير (sagheer, meaning "small"), and مَغْرِب (Maghreb, meaning "west" or "Morocco"). Mastering the letter غ will enhance your ability to communicate accurately and effectively in Arabic, ensuring that you can convey the correct meanings and sounds in both spoken and written contexts. Understanding and using غ properly is an important step towards achieving fluency in Arabic.

The Letter Ghien غ

0:00 / 0:00

There is not an exact equivalent sound to the letter "**غ**", but it is very close to sound of the combination of the two letters "*GH.*" The articulation place of the letter "**غ**" is the throat. The articulation point is the closest part of the throat, which is the beginning of the throat, or the closest to the mouth. The sound of "**غ**" is similar to the sound you make when you gargle.

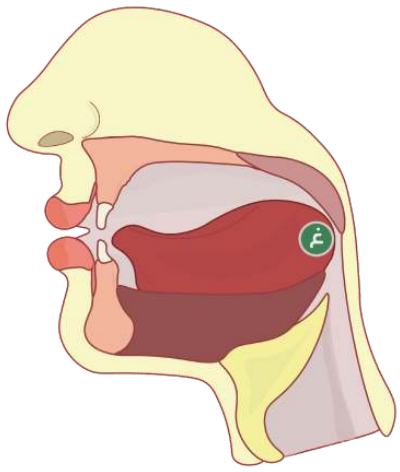


Figure 1: Pronunciation of Letter غ

Pronunciation of letter Ghien "**غ**" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Ghien with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	غَ	
Dhama الضمة	غُ	
Kasra الكسرة	غِ	
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	غْ	

Pronunciation of the letter Ghien "غ" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter غ with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	غا	
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	غو	
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	غي	

How to Write The Letter Ghien غ

You write the letter "غ" in the same way you write the letter "غ", but you place a dot on the top.

The Letter Ghain "غ" (See the figure)

letter form

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
غ	ـغـ	غـ	غ

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Ghein.



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Ghein غين الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

8.4: Letter Ghien is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- **5.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

8.5: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn new vocabulary using the new letters in this chapter.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary

https://human.libretexts.org/@go/page/272583

Image	Meaning	Arabic	Audio
 Street	Street	شَارِع	
 Address	Address	عِنْوان	
 Juice	Juice	عَصير	
 Watermelon	Watermelon	بَطيخ	
 Baghdad	Baghdad	بَغداد	
 Abu Dhabi	Abu Dhabi	أَبو ظَبي	
 Aden	Aden	عَدن	0:00 / 0:01

Image	Meaning	Arabic	Audio
 Doctor	Doctor	طَبيب	0:00 / 0:00
 Police Officer	Police Officer	شِرطيّ	
 Building	Building	بِناية	
 شقة	Apartment	شَقَّة Shaqah	

Activities

Adjectives

Adjectives in Arabic follow the nouns in everything. You should add "Taa Marbouta" ة "تاء مربوطة" to make the adjectives feminine.

Adjectives

English meaning	Adjective (feminine)	Adjective (masculine)
Far	بعيدَة	بعيد
Cold	بارِدة	بارِد
Hot	حارَة	حار
New	جديدَة	جديد
Weird	غريبَة	غريب
Small/ Little/ Young	صغيرَة	صغير
Weak	ضعيفَة	ضعيف
Stupid	غَبيَّة	غَبي
Happy	سعيدَة	سعيد
Sad	حَزينَة	حزين
Fast	سَريعَة	سَريع
Slow	بطيئَة	بَطيء
Hard / Difficult	صَعْبَة	صَعب

Activities

Months Names In Arabic (Cognates)

Months of the year

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Happy New Year	0:00 / 0:05		سَـنَةٌ
 Calendar	0:00		شَـهْـرٌ
 January	0:00 / 0:02		يَـناير
 February	0:00 / 0:02		فِبْراير
 March	0:00 / 0:02		مارس
 April	0:00		أَبْريل
 May	0:00 / 0:02		مايو

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 June	0:00 / 0:02		يونيو
 July	0:00 / 0:02		يوليو
 Augusts; CC BY-SA 4.0	0:00		أغسطس
 September	0:00 / 0:02	ıber	سَبْتَمبَر
 October	0:00 / 0:02	ɔer	أوكْتوبِر
 November	0:00 / 0:02	ıber	نوفَـمبَر
 December	0:00 / 0:02		ديسَـمْبَر

8.5: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.2: Vocabulary** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- **8.2: Vocabulary** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

8.6: Interrogative words (Part Two)

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Ask questions with interrogative words.

Introduction to Interrogative Words

Interrogative words, also known as question words, are essential in any language as they enable us to ask questions and gather information. For Arabic learners, understanding these words is crucial for effective communication and comprehension. In Arabic, these words are used to inquire about people, places, things, reasons, methods, and more. They form the foundation for constructing questions and are integral to daily conversations, formal interactions, and written communication. By mastering interrogative words, learners can enhance their ability to engage in meaningful dialogues, seek clarification, and explore the richness of the Arabic language and culture. Let's delve into the key interrogative words in Arabic, their usage, and how they can be applied in various contexts.

Study the table below.

Interrogative Words in Arabic

Example	English	Transliteration	Arabic	Audio
كَيْفَ حَالُكَ؟ (kayfa haluka?)	How	kayfa	كَيفَ	0:00 / 0:18
أَيْنَ تَسْكُنُ؟ (ayna taskunu?)	Where	ayna	أَينَ	0:00 / 0:18
مِنْ أَيْنَ أَنْتَ؟ (min ayna anta?)	From where	min ayna	مِنْ أَيْنَ	0:00 / 0:18
أَيُّ كِتَابٍ؟ (ayy kitaab?)	Which	ayy	أَيّ	0:00 / 0:18
في أَيِّ جَامِعَةٍ تَدْرُسُ؟ (fi ayyi jaami'ati tadrusu?)	In Which	fi ayyi	في أَيّ	0:00 / 0:18
مَاذَا تَدْرُسُ؟ (maadha tadrusu?)	What (In questions with verbs are used)	maadha	مَاذا	0:00 / 0:18
مَا اِسْمُكَ؟ (ma ismuka?)	What (In questions without verbs)	ma	ما	0:00 / 0:18
مَنْ هَذَا؟ (man haadhaa?)	Who	man	مَن	0:00 / 0:18
مَعَ مَنْ تَسْكُنِينَ؟ (ma'a man taskuneen?)	With Who	ma'a man	معَ مَنْ	0:00 / 0:18
هَلْ أَنْتَ طَالِبٌ؟ (hal anta taalib?)	For yes / no questions	hal	هَل	0:00 / 0:18

Activities

8.6: Interrogative words (Part Two) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

8.7: New Verbs (To live)

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn these verb (to live- سكن) in the present tense.

Introduction to the Verb "To Live" (سكن)

In Arabic, the verb "to live" or "to reside" can be expressed as "سَكَنَ" (sakana). This verb is commonly used to describe where someone lives or resides. It is an essential verb in everyday conversations, particularly when discussing living arrangements, places of residence, or moving to a new location.

The verb "سَكَنَ" follows regular conjugation patterns in Arabic, changing form based on the subject pronoun (I, you, he, she, we, you all, they) and the tense (past, present, future). Here are some examples of its conjugation in the present tense:

- I live: أَنَا أَسْكُنُ (ana askunu)
- You live (masculine): أَنْتَ تَسْكُنُ (anta taskunu)
- You live (feminine): أَنْتِ تَسْكُنِينَ (anti taskuneen)
- He lives: هُوَ يَسْكُنُ (huwa yaskunu)
- She lives: هِيَ تَسْكُنُ (hiya taskunu)
- We live: نَحْنُ نَسْكُنُ (nahnu naskunu)
- You all live: أَنْتُمْ تَسْكُنُونَ (antum taskunoon)
- They live: هُمْ يَسْكُنُونَ (hum yaskunoon)

Mastering the conjugation and usage of "سَكَنَ" will enhance your ability to discuss living arrangements and places of residence in Arabic. As you practice, you will become more fluent in using this verb in various contexts, making your conversations more dynamic and comprehensive.

The verb to live (سكن)

Example meaning in English	Example	English	Arabic	Audio
I live in an old house.	أَسْكُنُ في بيتٍ قَديم (askunu fi baytin qadeem)	I Live	أَسْكُنُ	0:00 / 0:01
We live in a new house.	نَسْكُنُ في بيتٍ جديد (naskunu fi baytin jadeed)	We Live	نَسْكُنُ	0:00 / 0:01
Do you live in a house or an apartment, Oh Ben?	هَل تَسْكُنُ في بيتٍ أو شقةٍ، يا بِنْ؟ (hal taskunu fi baytin aw shaqqatin, yaa Ben?)	You Live (Masculine/ Singular)	تَسْكُنُ	0:00 / 0:01
Do you live in a house or an apartment, Oh Tina?	هَل تَسْكُنين في بيتٍ أو شقةٍ، يا تينا؟ (hal taskuneen fi baytin aw shaqqatin, yaa Tina?)	You Live (Feminine/ Singular)	تَسْكُنِين	0:00 / 0:01
Do you live at the dorm, oh Cuys?	هَل تَسْكُنُون في بيتِ الطّلاب، يا شباب؟	You Live (all)	تَسْكُنُون	0:00 / 0:01

	(hal taskunoon fi bayt al-tullaab, yaa shabaab?)			
John lives with his family.	يَسْكُنُ جون معَ أسْرَتِهِ (yaskunu John ma'a usrati)	He Lives	يَسْكُنُ	0:00 / 0:01
Rana lives with her family.	تَسْكُنُ رنا معَ أسْرَتِها (taskunu Rana ma'a usratihā)	she Lives	تَسْكُنُ	0:00 / 0:01
John and Rana live with their family.	جون ورنا يَسْكُنُون معَ أسْرَتِهِم (John wa Rana yaskunoon ma'a usratihim)	They (all) Live	يَسْكُنُون	0:00 / 0:01

8.7: New Verbs (To live) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

8.8: Dialog - Where do you live?

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Ask and answer questions where do you live, and with who do you live?

Dialog 1

In this dialogue, Bashier calls Sarah, the receptionist at the doctor's office, so he can schedule an appointment to see the doctor. He asks her about the doctor's address. Listen to their conversation and then practice with your partner. Listen to the audio, read the dialog, and then answer the questions.

Recording

0:00 / 0:28



Judy

ما العنوان؟ - Ma Alinwan? What is the address?

English	Transcription	Arabic
Bashier: Hello, good evening!	Allo, Masau alkhayr	بشير: آلو مساء الخير
Sarah: Good Evening! Welcome, who is with me?	Masa u annour! Ahlan man ma'ee	سارة: مساء النّور، أَهْلاً مَنْ مَعِي؟
I am Tariq Arabi. Please I want the doctor's address.	Ismee Basheer, ma eunwana at-tabeeb?	بشير: اسمي بَشير، ما عِنوانُ الطَّبيب؟
Sarah: Baghdad Street, Building Seven	Share'a Baghdad, binayah sab'ah.	سارة: شارِعُ بغداد، بِنايَة سَبعَة
Bashier: Thank God, it is close to my house	Alhamdu lillah, qareeb min baytee.	بشير: الحمدُ لله، قريبٌ من بَيْتي
Sarah: What is your phone number?	Ma raqam telephonak?	سارة :ما رقم تلفونك؟
Bashier: 9405556789. What time?	9405556789, fi ay sa'ah	بشير: ٩٤٠٥٥٥٦٧٨٩. في أيّ ساعة؟
Sarah: At four o'clock	fi as-sa'ah arba'ah	سارة: في السَّاعَة أربعة
Bashier: Good, thanks	Jayed, shukran.	بشير: جيد، شكراً
Sarah: Sorry. See you soon	Afwan, Ila alliqa'a	سارة: عفواً. إلى اللقاء

Dialog 2

Watch the dialogue between two friends. In this dialogue, Maysaa's friend Sally visits her friend Maysaa for the first time. Read and listen to their talk.



Dialog 2

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Hello Maysaa!	Saali: Marhaban Misaa'	سالي: مرحبا ميساء
Hello Sally!	Misaa': Ahlan Saali	ميساء: أهلاً سالي
How are you?	Saali: Kayfa haluki?	سالي: كَيفَ حَالُكِ؟
I'm fine, thank God!! come on in.	Misaa': Bikhayr walhamdu lillah! Tafaddali	مَيساء: بِخَيرٍ والحمدُ لله !! تَفَضَّلي
Your house is beautiful "Maa Shaa Allah." Is your house new?	Saali: Baytuki jameelun ma shaa' Allah. Hal baytuki jadeedun?	سالي: بَيتُكِ جَميلٌ ما شاءَ الله. هل بيتُكِ جَدِيدٌ؟
Thank you, yes, it is new.	Misaa': Shukran, na'am innahu jadeed	ميساء: شُكراً، نَعَم اِنَهُ جَدِيدٌ
Who lives with you?	Saali: Ma'a man taskuneen?	سالي: معَ مَنْ تَسْكُنين؟
My father, mother, and Brother. Do you live in a house or apartment?	Misaa': Abi wa'ummi wa'akhi, wa'anti hal taskuneena fi baytin aw fi shaqqatin?	ميساء: أَبي وأُمي وأخي، وَأنتِ هل تَسكُنينَ في بيتٍ أو في شَقةٍ؟
I live in an apartment	Saali: Ana askunu fi shaqa	سالي: أنا أسْكُنُ في شقة

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Is your apartment big, or small?	Misaa': Hal shaqatuki kabeeratan aw sagheeratan?	ميساء: هل شقتُكِ كبيرةٌ أوْ صَغيرَةٌ ؟
My apartment is small.	Saali: Shaqati sagheerah	سالي: شَقتيٌ صَغيرة
Who lives with you?	Misaa': Ma'a man taskuneen?	ميساء: مَعَ مَنْ تَسْكنين ؟
I live with my husband, Jack.	Saali: Askunu ma'a zawji Jack	سالي: أسْكنُ مَعَ زَوْجي جاك
Where is your apartment?	Misaa': Ayna shaqatuki?	ميساء: أينَ شقَتُكِ؟
In Los Angeles city, on Broadway street.	Saali: Fi madinati "Los Angeles" fi shaari' Broadway	سالي: في مدينةِ "لوس أنجلوس" في شارعِ برود وي
Is your apartment nearby or far from your university?	Misaa': Hal shaqatuki qareebatun aw ba'eedatun min jaami'atik?	ميساء: هل شـقَّـتُكِ قريبةٌ أو بعيدةٌ من جامعَتِكِ؟
My apartment is near your university.	Saali: Shaqati qareebatun min jaami'ati	سالي: شَقَتي قريبةٌ مِنْ جامعَتي
Maa Shaa Allah!	Misaa': Ma shaa' Allah	ميساء: ما شاء الله

8.8: Dialog - Where do you live? is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.3: Dialogue and Reading** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- **6.3: Dialogue and Reading** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

https://human.libretexts.org/@go/page/272586

8.9: Kuwait

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about Kuwait, its Geographic location, famous cities, most famous artifacts, and traditional food and clothes.

Arab Countries of the Gulf are:

- Kuwait.
- Bahrain
- Qatar
- The United Arab Emirates.
- Oman.
- Saudi Arabia.

Facts about Kuwait:

Kuwait, a small yet wealthy nation located on the northeastern edge of the Arabian Peninsula, is renowned for its significant oil reserves, which are among the largest in the world. The capital, Kuwait City, is a bustling metropolis characterized by modern skyscrapers, luxurious shopping malls, and cultural landmarks such as the Kuwait Towers. The country has a high-income economy, primarily driven by petroleum and petrochemicals, contributing to a high standard of living for its citizens. Kuwait's history is marked by its strategic position as a trade hub, and it gained independence from British protection in 1961. The nation faced a major crisis during the Gulf War in 1990-1991 when it was invaded by Iraq, but it was subsequently liberated by coalition forces. Today, Kuwait is known for its rich cultural heritage, vibrant arts scene, and efforts towards economic diversification, including investments in infrastructure and education. The country also boasts a unique blend of traditional Arab culture and modernity, offering a fascinating glimpse into the dynamics of the Gulf region.

- Official Name: State of Kuwait دولة الكويت Dawlat Al-Kuwait
- Capital: Kuwait city
- Population: 4.67 million (2022 estimate)
- Currency: Kuwaiti dinar الدينار الكويتي aldinar alkuwaiti
- Continent: Asia آسيا asia
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic



Figure **8.9.1**: Arabian Gulf Countries Map by furfur via Wikimedia Commons CC BY-SA 4.0

Geographical Location and Flag



Kuwait. CC BY-SA 4.0

Kuwait is strategically located at the northwestern tip of the Arabian Gulf, bordered by Iraq to the north and west, Saudi Arabia to the south, and the Persian Gulf to the east. This small yet strategically important nation covers an area of approximately 17,818 square kilometers. Kuwait's coastline stretches for about 499 kilometers along the Persian Gulf, providing significant access to maritime routes and resources. The country is mostly flat and arid, with its highest point being Mutla Ridge at around 306 meters above sea level. Kuwait's climate is characterized by extremely hot summers and mild winters, typical of a desert environment. The country experiences minimal rainfall, averaging around 100 millimeters annually, most of which occurs between November and April. Despite its arid landscape, Kuwait has several important ecological sites, such as the Bubiyan and Warbah Islands, which serve as critical habitats for various bird species. The Kuwait Bay area is also a vital ecological and economic zone, supporting marine biodiversity and the country's fishing industry.

Famous Cities



Kuwait

Kuwait is home to several important and well-known cities, each contributing to the country's rich cultural and economic landscape.

- **Kuwait City,** the capital, is the heart of the nation and its most prominent urban center. It is a bustling metropolis known for its modern architecture, including the iconic Kuwait Towers, which symbolize the country's progress and prosperity. The city is a hub for government, finance, and commerce, hosting numerous skyscrapers, luxury hotels, and shopping malls. Kuwait City is also rich in cultural landmarks, such as the Grand Mosque, the Kuwait National Museum, and the Souq Al-Mubarakiya, one of the oldest markets in the country.
- **Al Ahmadi** is another significant city, located to the south of Kuwait City. It is known as the center of Kuwait's oil industry, housing the headquarters of the Kuwait Oil Company (KOC). The city's development is closely tied to the oil sector, with numerous oil refineries and petrochemical plants situated in the area. Al Ahmadi also features a well-planned residential area with green spaces, making it a pleasant place for the expatriate community working in the oil industry.
- **Salmiya,** situated along the coast to the east of Kuwait City, is a vibrant city known for its cosmopolitan lifestyle. It is a major commercial and residential area, popular among both locals and expatriates. Salmiya boasts a wide range of shopping centers, restaurants, and entertainment options, including the famous Marina Mall and Al Fanar Mall. The city is also home to several educational institutions and recreational facilities, such as the Scientific Center, which features an aquarium and an IMAX theater.
- **Hawalli** is a densely populated city located just west of Kuwait City. It is renowned for its diverse population and vibrant cultural scene. Hawalli is a major educational hub, housing several universities and schools. The city is also known for its technology markets, offering a wide range of electronic goods and services. Hawalli's mix of residential areas, commercial establishments, and cultural venues make it a dynamic and important part of Kuwait.
- **Jahra,** located to the northwest of Kuwait City, is a historic city with a rich heritage. It is known for its agricultural significance, as the area has traditionally been a farming region. Jahra is also home to several historical sites, including the Red Fort, which played a crucial role in Kuwait's history. The city has been expanding rapidly, with new residential and commercial developments adding to its importance.

Each of these cities plays a crucial role in the overall fabric of Kuwait, contributing to its economic strength, cultural richness, and social diversity.

Traditional Food

Kuwaiti cuisine is a delightful reflection of the country’s rich cultural heritage and its position as a historical trade hub in the Arabian Gulf. Traditional Kuwaiti dishes often feature a mix of Arabian, Persian, Indian, and Mediterranean influences, creating a unique and flavorful culinary experience. Here are some of the most traditional foods in Kuwait:

- **Machboos**, also known as Majboos, is the national dish of Kuwait. It is a fragrant rice dish cooked with basmati rice, a variety of spices, and typically served with chicken, lamb, or fish. The meat is slow-cooked to perfection, allowing it to absorb the rich flavors of the spices, which often include saffron, cardamom, cinnamon, and cloves. The dish is usually garnished with fried onions, raisins, and nuts, adding both texture and taste.
- **Mutabbaq Samak** is a traditional Kuwaiti fish dish, often made with Zubaidi (pomfret fish), which is considered the national fish of Kuwait. The fish is marinated in a mixture of spices, then fried or grilled, and served with rice. The rice is typically cooked in a fish stock, giving it a rich and savory flavor that complements the fish.

- **Harees** is a popular dish during the holy month of Ramadan and other special occasions. It is a hearty porridge made from wheat and meat, usually chicken or lamb. The ingredients are cooked together slowly until they reach a creamy consistency. Harees is often seasoned with cardamom and topped with a drizzle of ghee, giving it a rich and comforting flavor.
- **Jireesh**, also known as Qatari, is another traditional porridge-like dish made from crushed wheat and meat. It is similar to Harees but has a coarser texture. Jireesh is cooked with spices such as cumin, black lime, and turmeric, creating a warm and aromatic dish. It is typically served with a dollop of ghee on top.
- **Margoog** is a traditional Kuwaiti stew made with meat, vegetables, and thin, flat pieces of dough. The dough is cooked in the stew, absorbing the flavors of the broth and becoming soft and delicious. This dish is often prepared with lamb or chicken and includes vegetables like zucchini, eggplant, and tomatoes, making it a wholesome and satisfying meal.
- **Balaleet** is a traditional sweet and savory breakfast dish made from vermicelli noodles, sugar, and eggs. The noodles are cooked with sugar, cardamom, and saffron, then topped with a thin omelet. Sometimes, rose water and cinnamon are added for extra flavor. Balaleet is often served during Eid celebrations.
- **Gers Ogaily** is a traditional Kuwaiti cake flavored with saffron, cardamom, and rose water. It is a popular dessert, often served with tea. The cake has a light and fluffy texture and is sometimes topped with sesame seeds or powdered sugar.

These traditional dishes highlight the rich culinary traditions of Kuwait, offering a delicious blend of flavors and ingredients that reflect the country's diverse cultural influences. Whether enjoyed at a family gathering, a festive occasion, or a casual meal, Kuwaiti food provides a true taste of the nation's heritage and hospitality.

Traditional Clothes

Traditional clothing in Kuwait is an important aspect of the country's cultural identity and heritage. It reflects the region's history, climate, and social norms. Both men and women in Kuwait wear distinct traditional attire that is not only practical but also deeply symbolic.

Men's Traditional Clothing

Dishdasha: The most prominent piece of clothing for Kuwaiti men is the "dishdasha" or "thobe," a long, ankle-length robe that is usually white, especially during the hot summer months. In the winter, darker colors such as gray, brown, and navy are more common. The dishdasha is made of lightweight fabrics suitable for the desert climate, allowing for comfort and ventilation.

Ghutra and Agal: Along with the dishdasha, Kuwaiti men wear a head covering called the "ghutra" or "shemagh," a square piece of cloth that is folded into a triangle and draped over the head. It is usually held in place by an "agal," a black cord. The ghutra is typically white, or white with red checks, and provides protection from the sun and sand.

Bisht: For formal occasions, men may wear a "bisht," a cloak made from wool or camel hair, over their dishdasha. The bisht is often black, brown, or beige and is embroidered with gold or silver thread. It is a symbol of prestige and is worn during important events like weddings, religious ceremonies, and state functions.

Women's Traditional Clothing

Abaya: Kuwaiti women traditionally wear the "abaya," a long, black cloak that covers the entire body. The abaya is elegant and modest, reflecting Islamic principles of dress. It is often made of lightweight, flowing fabric and can be adorned with intricate embroidery, sequins, or beadwork, adding a touch of personal style.

Hijab and Niqab: Many Kuwaiti women also wear the "hijab," a headscarf that covers the hair, neck, and sometimes the shoulders, leaving the face visible. Some women opt for the "niqab," which covers the face, leaving only the eyes exposed. These coverings are worn for reasons of modesty and religious observance.

Thobe and Kaftan: Underneath the abaya, women might wear a "thobe" or "kaftan," which are long, loose-fitting dresses that come in various colors and designs. These garments are often beautifully decorated with embroidery and are worn at home or during special occasions.

Traditional Accessories

Jewelry: Kuwaiti women often accessorize their traditional attire with gold jewelry, which holds cultural significance and is a sign of wealth and status. Common pieces include necklaces, bracelets, rings, and earrings, often featuring intricate designs.

Footwear: Traditional footwear includes leather sandals for men and women, which are practical for the hot climate. During special occasions, women may wear embellished slippers or shoes that match their outfits.



Kuwaiti Traditional Clothes

Modern Influences

While traditional clothing remains an important part of Kuwaiti culture, modern influences have led to some changes in daily attire, especially among the younger generation. Many Kuwaitis now incorporate contemporary fashion elements while maintaining the essence of their traditional dress. However, during religious events, national celebrations, and formal gatherings, traditional attire is still proudly worn, symbolizing the rich cultural heritage of Kuwait.

In summary, traditional Kuwaiti clothing is a blend of practicality, cultural expression, and religious adherence, representing the country's deep-rooted traditions and evolving modernity.

Conclusion

Kuwait, a small yet influential nation on the Arabian Peninsula, stands out for its rich cultural heritage, significant economic power, and unique blend of tradition and modernity. Renowned for its vast oil reserves, Kuwait has built a high-income economy that supports a high standard of living for its citizens. The country’s capital, Kuwait City, is a vibrant metropolis that showcases both modern architectural marvels and historic landmarks. Kuwaiti cuisine and traditional clothing reflect the nation's diverse cultural influences and deep-rooted traditions.

Kuwait's strategic location has historically made it a hub for trade and cultural exchange, further enriching its cultural tapestry. Despite facing challenges such as the Gulf War, Kuwait has demonstrated resilience and a commitment to rebuilding and advancing its society. Initiatives aimed at economic diversification and modernization, like those outlined in its national development plans, promise a future of sustained growth and prosperity.

In essence, Kuwait is a nation that honors its past while looking confidently towards the future, blending the old and the new to create a unique and dynamic society. Whether through its food, fashion, or forward-thinking economic strategies, Kuwait continues to be a beacon of culture, wealth, and innovation in the Gulf region.

Activities

8.9: Kuwait is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- **4.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

8.10: Saudi Arabia

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about Saudi Arabia, its Geographic location, famous cities, most famous artifacts, and traditional food and clothes.

Arab Countries of the Gulf are:

- Kuwait.
- Bahrain
- Qatar
- The United Arab Emirates.
- Oman.
- Saudi Arabia.

Facts about Saudi Arabia:

- Official Name: Kingdom of Saudi Arabia المملكة العربية السعودية Al-Mamlakah al-Arabiya as Suudiya
- Capital: Riyadh
- Population: 34,218,000 (2019 estimate)
- Currency: Saudi riyal الريال السعودي riyal saudi
- Continent: Asia آسيا Asia
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic



Figure 8.10.1: Arabian Gulf Countries Map by furfur via Wikimedia Commons CC BY-SA 4.0

Geographical Location and Flag



Figure 8.10.2: Saudi Arabia, CC BY-SA 4.0

Saudi Arabia is located in the Middle East, occupying most of the Arabian Peninsula. It is bordered by Jordan and Iraq to the north, Kuwait to the northeast, Qatar, Bahrain, and the United Arab Emirates to the east, Oman to the southeast, and Yemen to the south. To the west, it is bounded by the Red Sea, and to the east by the Arabian Gulf. The country has a diverse landscape, ranging from the vast deserts like the Rub' al Khali (Empty Quarter), the largest continuous sand desert in the world, to the coastal plains along the Red Sea and mountainous regions in the southwest. Saudi Arabia's capital and largest city is Riyadh, located in the central part of the country. Its strategic location has made it a key player in the region, especially because of its significant oil reserves and its role in the Islamic world as the birthplace of Islam and home to the two holiest cities, Mecca and Medina.

Famous Cities



The Ka'ba



Jaddah



Riyadh



Dammam

Saudi Arabia is home to several famous cities, each with its own unique significance and attractions.

- **Riyadh**: The capital city of Saudi Arabia, known for its modern skyscrapers like the Kingdom Centre and Al Faisaliyah Center. It is a cultural and business hub with attractions like the National Museum.
- **Mecca**: The holiest city in Islam, home to the Kaaba and the Grand Mosque (Masjid al-Haram). It is the destination for millions of Muslims during the Hajj pilgrimage.
- **Medina**: Another sacred city in Islam, where the Prophet Muhammad is buried. It houses the Prophet's Mosque, a significant religious site.
- **Jeddah**: Located on the Red Sea, Jeddah is known for its beautiful beaches, historic old town (Al-Balad), and role as a commercial and pilgrimage gateway to Mecca.
- **Dammam**: A major city in the Eastern Province, known for its oil industry and modern infrastructure. It blends traditional Saudi culture with contemporary urban development.

These cities are not only central to the country's religious and economic life but also showcase Saudi Arabia's rich cultural heritage and modern development.

Traditional Food:

Saudi Arabia is known for its delicious and traditional cuisine, which reflects the country's rich culture and history. One of the most famous dishes is **Kabsa**, a spiced rice dish often served with lamb, chicken, or fish. It is flavored with a blend of spices like cinnamon, cloves, and black lime, giving it a unique taste. Another popular dish is **Mandi**, similar to Kabsa but typically cooked with meat that is slow-cooked underground, giving it a distinct smoky flavor.

Mutabbaq is a savory stuffed pastry that can be filled with a variety of ingredients, such as minced meat, vegetables, and eggs. **Shawarma**, a well-loved street food, consists of thinly sliced meat (usually chicken or beef) wrapped in flatbread, often with garlic sauce, pickles, and vegetables.

Dates and **Arabic coffee (Gahwa)** are also essential parts of Saudi hospitality and culture. Dates are often served as a snack or dessert, while Arabic coffee is a lightly spiced beverage, usually flavored with cardamom, and is often served to guests as a sign of hospitality.

These dishes and traditions offer a taste of Saudi Arabia's culinary heritage, combining rich flavors and warm hospitality.

Traditional Clothing

Traditional clothing in Saudi Arabia is deeply rooted in the country's cultural and religious heritage. Men typically wear the "thobe," a long, white robe that is suited to the hot desert climate. It is often paired with the "ghutra" or "shemagh," a traditional headscarf held in place by a black cord called an "agal." Women usually wear the "abaya," a long, black cloak that covers their clothing, accompanied by a headscarf called the "hijab," and sometimes a face veil known as the "niqab." These garments are not only functional but also symbolize modesty and cultural identity. In recent years, while traditional attire remains prevalent, there has been a growing trend of incorporating modern fashion elements, reflecting a blend of tradition and contemporary styles. The distinctiveness of Saudi traditional dress is also showcased during cultural festivals and celebrations, highlighting the nation's rich heritage and evolving fashion landscape.



Traditional clothing in Saudi Arabia

Conclusion

Saudi Arabia, located on the Arabian Peninsula, is known for its significant role in global energy markets, possessing the world's largest proven oil reserves. Its capital, Riyadh, is a thriving metropolis and a center of political and economic activity. The Kingdom is also home to the two holiest cities in Islam, Mecca and Medina, attracting millions of pilgrims annually during the Hajj season. Governed by a monarchy, Saudi Arabia has recently undertaken extensive reforms under Vision 2030, aimed at diversifying its economy away from oil dependence, promoting tourism, and increasing women's participation in the workforce. The nation's cultural heritage, rooted in Bedouin traditions, coexists with its rapid modernization and ambitious infrastructure projects, such as the futuristic city of NEOM.

Activities

8.10: Saudi Arabia is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- **4.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

9: At Home “ fi Albayet”

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to

- Read, write, and type the letters ق ف ل ك in their different shapes.
- Identify furniture and house items.
- Use the vocabulary furniture and house items in dialogues.
- Learn new verbs (live, drink, watch) in the present tense.
- Learn about Yemen and the sultanate of Oman, as well as their geographical location, famous cities, culture, historical places, traditional food, and clothes.

9.1: Letter Faa
9.2: Letter Qaaf
9.3: Letter Kaaf
9.4: Letter Laam
9.5: Vocabulary
9.6: Colors
9.7: New Verbs (to drink, to watch)
9.8: Dialog - At Home
9.9: Sultanate of Oman
9.10: Yemeni Republic
9.11: Assessment

9: At Home “ fi Albayet” is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

9.1: Letter Faa

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ف in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ف with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The Arabic letter ف (pronounced "Fa") is the twentieth letter of the Arabic alphabet. It is equivalent to the letter "F" in the English alphabet and is pronounced similarly, with air passing through the upper teeth and lower lip. This letter is essential for Arabic learners, as it appears frequently in everyday vocabulary and is fundamental for accurate pronunciation and communication.

The letter ف is used in a variety of common words and phrases. For instance, it appears in the word فِيل (feel, meaning "elephant"), فَرَح (farah, meaning "joy"), and فَم (fam, meaning "mouth"). Its presence in both formal and colloquial Arabic makes it a crucial letter to master for learners aiming to achieve fluency.

Understanding the pronunciation and usage of ف is important not only for speaking but also for reading and writing Arabic. It helps learners to form correct sounds and meanings, enhancing their overall grasp of the language. By practicing and familiarizing yourself with this letter, you will improve your ability to communicate effectively in Arabic, both in written and spoken forms.

The Letter Faa

0:00 / 0:00

This letter is pronounced like “f” in the word “feather”. The articulation place of the letter “**ف**” is the lips, between the inside of the lower lip and the tips/ edges of the two top front incisors. Usually, aspiration occurs with the pronunciation of the letter “**ف**.”

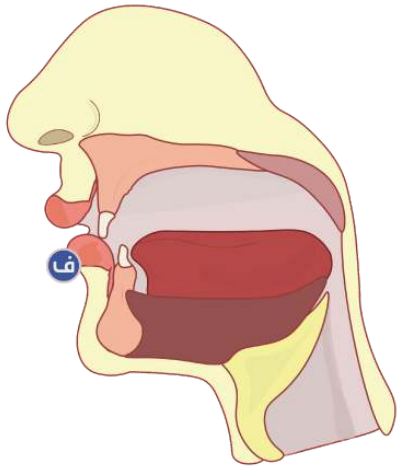


Figure **9.1.5**: Pronunciation of Letter **ف**

Pronunciation of letter Faa "**ف**" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Faa ف with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	فَ	
Dhama الضمة	فُ	
Kasra الكسرة	فِ	
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	فْ	

Pronunciation of the letter Faa "ف" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter ف with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	فا	
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	فـو	
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	في	

How to Write the Letter Faa

The letter "ف" is a connector letter and can be connected from the two sides. It's independent and final forms have a tail that is unusual in that it remains on the line rather that dipping below.

To write the independent "ف", begin above the line and draw a flat loop to your left and down around. Keep the loop of the "ف" small and just above the line, resting on a short neck. Continue along the line into a hook to finish the tail.

To write the initial "فـ", begin the same way then finish with a connecting segment to attach to the next letter.

The medial "ـفـ" starts from the connecting segment and loops up to the left and back around to the line, then into the connecting segment. In the medial position, the loop is small and oval-shaped.

The final "ـف" combines the shape of the medial position with the tail of the independent "ف"

Writing Letter ف

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـف	ـفـ	فـ	ف

Watch the video to learn how to write the letters Faa.



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Faa فاء الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

9.1: Letter Faa is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- **4.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.2: Letter Qaaf

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ق in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ق with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The Arabic letter ق (pronounced "Qaf") is the twenty-first letter of the Arabic alphabet. It is one of the most distinctive and unique sounds in Arabic, characterized by a deep, guttural pronunciation that does not have a direct equivalent in English. The sound is produced by constricting the throat and raising the back of the tongue towards the uvula, creating a strong, emphatic quality.

The letter ق is an essential component of Arabic phonetics and appears frequently in both formal and colloquial Arabic. It is used in many common words, such as قَلْب (qalb, meaning "heart"), قَمَر (qamar, meaning "moon"), and قَرْيَة (qaryah, meaning "village"). Mastering the pronunciation of ق is crucial for Arabic learners, as it significantly impacts the meaning of words and enhances the authenticity of spoken Arabic.

Understanding the use of ق is vital for reading and writing Arabic as well. It appears in various forms depending on its position in a word (initial, medial, final, or isolated), and recognizing these forms helps in accurately interpreting and constructing sentences. By practicing the pronunciation and usage of ق, learners can improve their fluency and comprehension, making their Arabic communication more effective and nuanced.

The Letter Qaaf

0:00 / 0:00

The articulation place of the letter "ق" is the tongue. The letter "ق" is articulated from the deepest part of the tongue and what lies opposite to it from the roof of the mouth in the area of the soft palate. The letter "ق" is emphatic counterpart to the sound of "*k*". Like the other emphatic sounds, it is pronounced with the tongue low in the mouth, and it impacts the quality of the surrounding vowels so that the fatha sounds like "u" in "but". The letter "Qaaf" "ق" is pronounced at the very back of the tongue. Open your mouth and say aah, as if you were at a doctor's appointment. Your tongue should be flat in your mouth. Without raising your tongue pull it back so that the base of it closes off air by pulling back against the throat. The only thing that should move in your mouth is your tongue, and only at the very back, as if you were sliding it back like a sliding door. At this point you should be able to breathe through your mouth, although it is wide open. Listen to yourself pronouncing the letter "ق".

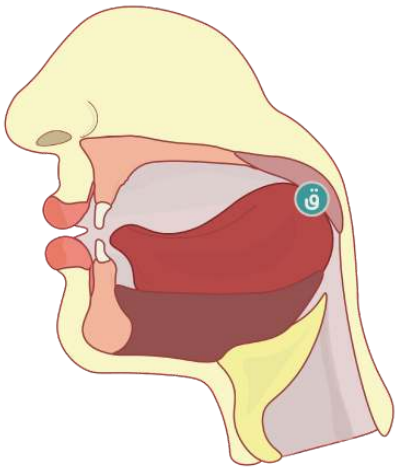


Figure 9.2.1: Pronunciation of Letter ق

Common Mistakes in pronouncing the letter "ق"

- Either the letter is articulated on the hard palate or close to it, so it ends up sounding like an English "k".

Or the letter is pronounced not from the tongue, but from the throat, and the resultant incorrect sound is a cross between the letter "غ" and "ق"

The letter with short vowels and sukun

Pronunciation of letter Qaaf "ق" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Qaaf ق with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	قَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	قُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	قِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	قْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Qaaf "ق" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter ق with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	قا	
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	قو	
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	قي	

How to Write The Letter Qaaf

The letter “ق” is a connector letter, and its shape is similar to the letter “ق” in its connected positions. However, “ق is written with two dots above it. In the independent and final positions, the “ق” has a deep semicircle tail that drops well below the line.

To write the independent “ق”, make the same loop you made for “ق, then drop below the line to draw the tail and bring the tail back up to the line. The final “ـق” has a tail that drops well below the line.

Writing Letter ق

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـق	ـقـ	قـ	ق

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Qaaf



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Qaaf قاف الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

9.2: Letter Qaaf is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **5.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.3: Letter Kaaf

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ك in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ك with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The Arabic letter ك (pronounced "Kaaf") is the twenty-second letter of the Arabic alphabet. It is equivalent to the letter "K" in the English alphabet and shares a similar pronunciation. The sound is produced by pressing the back of the tongue against the soft palate, creating a clear and crisp consonant. The letter ك is fundamental in Arabic phonetics and appears frequently in both written and spoken forms.

Learning to recognize and write these forms is crucial for Arabic learners, as it helps in understanding the structure and flow of Arabic text. The letter ك is commonly found in many everyday words, such as كتاب (kitaab, meaning "book"), كبير (kabeer, meaning "big"), and مكان (makaan, meaning "place"). Mastering the pronunciation and usage of ك will enhance your ability to read, write, and speak Arabic accurately.

The Letter Kaaf

0:00 / 0:00

This letter corresponds to English “k”. ك represents a familiar sound that takes no extra effort on your part. The articulation place of the letter ك is the tongue.

The letter ك is articulated from the deepest part of the tongue and what lies opposite to it from the roof of the mouth in the area of the hard palate.

The letter ك is closer to the mouth and farther from the throat than the letter ق. Remember that ق is an emphatic letter that deepens the quality of surrounding vowels, whereas vowels surrounding ك are frontal. ك is often mispronounced at an articulation point further back in the mouth rather than the correct articulation point, resulting in a sound closer to the letter ق.

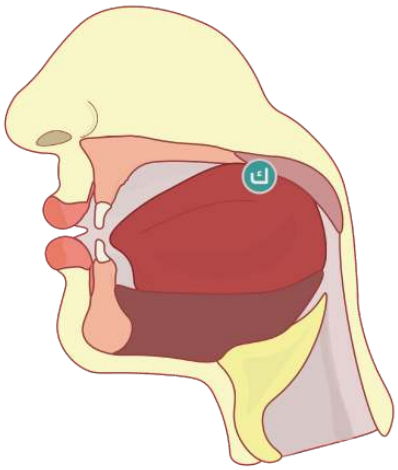


Figure 9.3.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ك

Pronunciation of letter Kaaf "ك" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Kaaf ك with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	كَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	كُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	كِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	كْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Kaaf "ك" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter ك with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	كا	0:0
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	كو	0:0
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	كي	:0

How to Write The Letter Kaaf

The letter ك is a connector letter. To write the independent ك, start above the line, draw straight down to the line, then curve and follow the line. Make a tiny hook at the end, then pick up the pen to draw a little “hamza” “ء”.

The shape of the initial ـكـ is different. When “ك” is connected to a letter, it has a crossbar on the top. To write the initial ـكـ, begin as you do the independent form, drawing down to the line, then make a right angle and draw along it into a connecting segment.

Note that the body of the initial ـكـ is not precisely perpendicular to the line on the paper; it may be slightly slanted or even curved, depending on individual style.

After you finish writing the skeleton of the word, go back and cross the ـكـ.

Medial ـكـ is written like the initial ـكـ, except that you must start from a connecting segment on the line and draw up, then trace the same line back down.

Final ـك is similar in shape to the independent ك, except that it is connected to the previous letter. (Watch the video)

The letter ك in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـك	ـكـ	كـ	ك

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter "kaaf".



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Kaaf كاف الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

9.3: Letter Kaaf is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- **4.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.4: Letter Laam

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write ل in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter ل with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The Arabic letter ل (pronounced "Lam") is the twenty-third letter of the Arabic alphabet. It is equivalent to the letter "L" in the English alphabet and shares a similar pronunciation, produced by placing the tip of the tongue against the upper front teeth or the alveolar ridge. The sound is clear and voiced, making it one of the more familiar and easily recognizable letters for Arabic learners.

Recognizing and writing these forms is essential for understanding Arabic text structure. The letter ل appears frequently in many common words, such as لَبَن or حَليب (laban, or haleeb, meaning "milk"), لِسان (lisan, meaning "tongue"), and مَكْتَب (maktab, meaning "office" or "desk").

Mastering the pronunciation and usage of ل is crucial for effective communication in Arabic. By practicing the different shapes and sounds of this letter, learners can improve their reading, writing, and speaking skills, enhancing their overall proficiency in the language.

The Letter Laam

0:00 / 0:00

The articulation point of the letter "**ل**" is from the tongue. The letter "**ل**" is articulated from the tip of the tongue and what lies opposite to it of the gums of the upper front incisors. The articulation of the letter "**ل**" is in the shape of an arc - with both sides - until the tip of the tongue meets with the gums of the mentioned teeth. The articulation of the "**ل**" is an upward movement, not a forward movement like the English "*L*". The letter " **ل**" articulation point is from the nearest part of the sides of the tongue closer to the mouth, and the end of its tip and what lies opposite to it of the gums of the first upper premolars, the two upper canines, the two upper lateral incisors, and the two upper front incisors. Its articulation point is the front edges of the tongue. The letter "**ل**" represents the sound of the French and Spanish "*L*" with the tongue farther back and lower down in the mouth, resulting in a more emphatic sound with Arabic "**ل**".

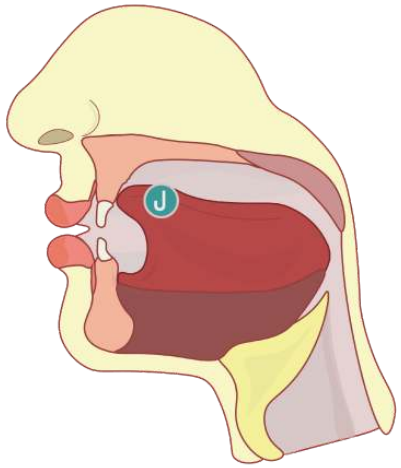


Figure 9.4.1: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter ل

Pronunciation of letter Laam "ل" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Laam ل with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	لَ	0:0
Dhama الضمة	لُ	0:0
Kasra الكسرة	لِ	0:0
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	لْ	0:0

Pronunciation of the letter Laam "**ل**" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter ل with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	لا	0:0
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	لو	0:0
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	لي	0:0

How to Write The Letter Laam

The letter “ل” is a connector letter. The shape of “ل” is similar to the shape of a hook. To write the independent “ل”, start at the top and draw straight down, continuing below the line and into the tail. The tail must come all the way back up above the line.

The initial “لـ” begins the same way, but once you reach the line, curve into the connecting segment along the line.

To write the medial “ـلـ”, start from the connecting segment, draw up, then trace back down to the line into the next connecting segment as shown.

When “ل” is followed by the letters “خ“ ”ح“ ”ج”, its shape is different in handwriting than what is normally seen in print. You begin writing from the same point but rather than go all the way down to the line, you stop at the height of the “حـ” and curve into it “**لحـ**”.

To write the final “ـل”, drop the connecting segment and draw a big, rounded tail. Be sure to dip well below the line and finish the hook by returning the pen to the line again. (Watch the video)

Writing (لا = ا + ل)

The combination of the letter “Laam” “**ل**” followed by “Alif” “**ا**” has two meanings: the linguistic definition, which means “no,” and the common usage to negate the present tense. There is a specific symbol that must be used to write these two letters whenever they occur in this order, both when written in a word or separately (لا = ا + ل). This shape varies slightly in print and handwriting styles.

This is the form "**لا**" you see in print. However, in handwriting, it has a different form - it has two separate strokes. When handwriting, start as you would write the initial connected “**لـ**”. When you reach the line, extend it slightly, then make a slanted “Alif” stroke into the corner of

“ـــلـ” to get “ـــلا”. Remember that “Alif” does not connect to the following letters; therefore, “لا” does not connect to the following letters.

The letter ل in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـــل	ـــلـ	ـــلـ	ل

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Laam



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Laam لام الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

9.4: Letter Laam is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- **4.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.5: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn new vocabulary using the new letters in this chapter.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary in this section

https://human.libretexts.org/@go/page/273388

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Arabic
 صَديق	0:00 / 0:01		صديق
 Number	0:00 / 0:00		رَقْم
 Garden	0:00 / 0:00		حَديقة
 Room	0:00 / 0:00		غُرفة
 living room	0:00 / 0:00		غرفة جلوس
 Bedroom	0:00 / 0:00		غرفة نوم

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Arabic
 Bathroom	0:00 / 0:00	Hammam	حمَّام
 Bed	0:00 / 0:00		سَرِير
 Closet	0:00 / 0:00		خِزَانَة
 Office	0:00 / 0:00	Maktab	مَكتب
 Chair	0:00 / 0:00		كُرسي

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Arabic
 window	0:00 / 0:00		شُبَاك
 Kitchen	0:00 / 0:00		مَطبخ Matbakh
 Refrigerator	0:00 / 0:00		ثَلاجة (براد)
 Stove	0:00 / 0:00		فرن
 Table	0:00 / 0:00		طاولة

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Arabic
 Food	0:00 / 0:00		طَعام Ta'am غُرفَةُ طَعام Ghurfat ta'am
 No	0:00 / 0:00		لا
 Yes	0:00 / 0:00		نعم Na'am
 طالب	0:00 / 0:01		طالب طلاب
 بيت الطلاب	0:00 / 0:01		بيتُ الطّلّاب

Cognate

Cognate

Meaning	Formal / Written
Sofa	صوفا
Television	تلفزيون
Radio	راديو
Film	فيلم
Restroom	تواليت (مِرْحاض)
Balcony	بَـلَـكونَة

Adjectives

Adjectives in Arabic follow the nouns in everything. You should add "Taa Marbouta" ة" تاء مربوطة" to make the adjectives feminine.

Arabic Adjectives

English meaning	Adjective (feminine)	Adjective (masculine)
Ugly	قبيحَة	قبيح
Short	قصيرَة	قَصير
Strong	قَويَّة	قَوي
Big	كَبيرَة	كَبير
Easy	سَهلَة / Sahla	سَهل / Sahl
Tall / Long	طَويلَة	طويل
Beautiful / Pretty	جَميلَة / Jameela	جَميل / Jameel
Old / Ancient	قديمَة / Qadeema	قديم / Qadeem
Wide / Spacious	واسِعَة	واسِع
Narrow / Tight	ضَيِّقَة	ضَيِّق
Smart	ذَكيَّة	ذَكي

Adjectives and their opposites

Adjectives and their Opposite

Opposite	Adjective	Opposite	Adjective
قَوي	ضعيف	بعيد	قريب
بَطيء	سَريع	حزين	سعيد
حار	بارِد	أَسْوَد	أَبْيَض
صَعب	سَهل / Sahl	صغير	كَبير
جديد	قديم / Qadeem	قَصير	طويل
ضَيِّق	واسِع	غَبي	ذَكي

9.5: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.2: Vocabulary** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- **8.2: Vocabulary** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.6: Colors

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Identify common colors in Arabic in masculine and feminine forms.

Introduction to Colors

Colors play a fundamental role in our daily lives and language. Learning the names of colors in Arabic is an essential step for beginners, as it helps describe objects, express preferences, and enhance vocabulary. In Arabic, colors are used in various contexts, from clothing and nature to art and everyday items. This introduction will cover the basic colors in Arabic, their pronunciations, and simple sentences to help you practice using them.

Here are the basic colors in Arabic:

1. **أبيض (abyad)** - White
2. **أسود (aswad)** - Black
3. **أحمر (ahmar)** - Red
4. **أزرق (azraq)** - Blue
5. **أصفر (asfar)** - Yellow
6. **أخضر (akhdar)** - Green
7. **برتقالي (burtuqali)** - Orange
8. **بنفسجي (banafsaji)** - Purple
9. **وردي (wardi)** - Pink
10. **رمادي (ramadi)** - Gray
11. **بني (bunni)** - Brown

By learning these basic colors and practicing with simple sentences, you will be able to describe the world around you in Arabic. This foundational vocabulary will help you build confidence and prepare you for more advanced language skills. Happy learning!

Colors

Audio	Meaning	Adjective in the Feminine Form	Adjective in the Masculine Form
0:00 / 0:00		بيضاء	أبيض
0:00 / 0:00		سوداء	أسود
0:00 / 0:00		زرقاء	أزرق
0:00 / 0:00		حمراء	أحمر
0:00 / 0:00		خضراء	أخضر
0:00 / 0:00		صفراء	أصفر
0:00 / 0:18		برتقالية	برتقالي
0:00 / 0:00		بنية	بني
0:00 / 0:00		رمادية	رمادي

Practice Sentences

Practice Sentences

English	Transliterlation	Arabic
The car is red.	Al-sayara hamra.	السيارة حمراء
The sky is blue.	Al-sama zarqa.	السماء زرقاء
The apple is green.	Al-tuffaha khadra.	التفاحة خضراء
The flower is pink.	Al-warda wardiya.	الوردة وردية
The cat is black	Al-qitta sawda.	القطة سوداء

By learning these basic colors and practicing with simple sentences, you will be able to describe the world around you in Arabic. This foundational vocabulary will help you build confidence and prepare you for more advanced language skills.

Explanation of the Word "لون" (Lawn)

The Arabic word "لون" (pronounced "lawn") means "color" in English. It is a fundamental noun used to describe the hues and shades of objects in the Arabic language. Understanding this word is essential for discussing and identifying colors in various contexts.

Usage in Sentences

Here are some examples of how "لون" can be used in sentences:

1. **ما لون السماء؟ (Ma lawn al-sama?)**
   - What is the color of the sky?
2. **لون البحر أزرق. (Lawn al-bahr azraq.)**
   - The color of the sea is blue.
3. **لون هذا القميص أحمر. (Lawn hatha al-qamees ahmar.)**
   - The color of this shirt is red.
4. **أحب لون الزهور. (Uhibb lawn al-zuhoor.)**
   - I love the color of the flowers.

Plural Form

The plural form of "لون" is "ألوان" (pronounced "alwan"), which means "colors." Here are some examples of how "ألوان" can be used:

1. **ما هي ألوان الطيف؟ (Ma hiya alwan al-taif?)**
   - What are the colors of the spectrum?
2. **ألوان هذه اللوحة جميلة. (Alwan hathi al-lawha jameela.)**
   - The colors of this painting are beautiful.
3. **نرى ألوانًا مختلفة في الحديقة. (Nara alwanan mukhtalifa fi al-hadeeqa.)**
   - We see different colors in the garden.

Gender Agreement

In Arabic, adjectives must agree with the noun they describe in gender (masculine or feminine). The word "لون" itself is masculine, so any adjectives describing it must be in their masculine form. For example:

- **لون جميل (lawn jameel)** - Beautiful color (masculine)
- **لون فاتح (lawn fath)** - Light color (masculine)

To become more comfortable using the word "لون" and its plural "ألوان," try incorporating them into your daily conversations. Describe the colors of objects around you, ask questions about colors, and practice with language partners or in language learning apps.

By understanding and practicing the word "لون," you will enhance your ability to describe and discuss colors in Arabic, adding depth and detail to your language skills.

Activities

9.6: Colors is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.4: Interrogative words أدوات الاستفهام, New Verbs and Colors** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

- **8.1: Adjectives in Arabic (Masculine and Feminine)** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.7: New Verbs (to drink, to watch)

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn these verbs (to drink, and to watch) in the present tense.

New Verb (To drink)

You will learn a new verb in the table below. The verb شرب means in English "to drink." Listen and practice saying and using these forms in conversation.

English	Example	English Meaning	Arabic	Audio
I drink red tea.	أَشْرَبُ شاي أَحْمَر Ashrabu shay ahmar	I Drink	أَشْرَبُ	0:00 / 0:01
We drink green tea.	نَشْرَبُ شاي أَخْضَر Nashrabu shay akhdar	We Drink	نَشْرَبُ	0:00 / 0:01
Do you drink tea, Oh Ben?	هَل تَشْرَبُ شاي، يا بِنْ؟ Hal tashrabu shay, ya Ben?	You Drink (Masculine/ Singular)	تَشْرَبُ	0:00 / 0:01
Do you drink coffee, Oh Tina?	هَل تَشْرَبين قهوَة، يا تينا؟ Hal tashrabeen qahwa, ya Tina?	You Drink (Feminine/ Singular)	تَشْرَبين	0:00 / 0:02
Do you drink coffee, oh Guys?	هَل تَشْرَبُون قَهْوَة، يا شباب؟ Hal tashraboon qahwa, ya shabaab?	You Drink (all)	تَشْرَبُون	0:00 / 0:01
John drinks Arabic coffee.	يَشْرَبُ	He Drinks	يَشْرَبُ	0:00 / 0:01

	جون قَهْوَة عَرَبيَّة Yashrabu John qahwa arabiyya			
Rana drinks Arabic coffee.	تَشْرَبُ رنا قَهْوَة عَرَبيَّة Tashrabu Rana qahwa arabiyya	she Drinks	تَشْرَبُ	0:00 / 0:01
John and Rana drink American coffee.	جون ورنا يَشْرَبُون قَهْوَة أمْريكيَّة John wa Rana yashraboon qahwa amrikiyya	They (all) Drink	يَشْرَبُون	0:00 / 0:01

New Verb (To Watch)

You will learn a new verb in the table below. The verb شاهد means in English "to Watch." Listen and practice saying and using these forms in conversation.

Example	Example	English Meaning	Arabic Meaning	Audio
I watch the TV.	أَشاهِدُ التِّلَفِزيون Ashahidu at-tilfizyoon	I Watch	أُشاهِدُ	0:00 / 0:01
We watch the TV in my brother's room.	نُشاهِدُ التِّلفزيون في غرفةِ أخي Nushahidu at-tilfizyoon fi ghurfat akhi	We Watch	نُشاهِدُ	0:00 / 0:01
Do you watch TV, Oh Ben?	هَل تُشاهِدُ التِّلفزيون، يا بِنْ؟ Hal tushahidu at-tilfizyoon, ya Ben?	You Watch (Masculine/ Singular)	تُشاهِدُ	0:00 / 0:01
Do you watch TV, Oh Tina?	هَل تُشاهِدين التِّلفزيون، يا تينا؟ Hal tushahideen at-tilfizyoon, ya Tina?	You Watch (Feminine/ Singular)	تُشاهِدين	0:00 / 0:01
Do you watch the movie at the cinema (theater), oh Guys?	هَل تُشاهِدُون الفيلم في السِّينَما، يا شباب؟	You Watch (all)	تُشاهِدُون	0:00 / 0:01

	Hal tushahidoon al-film fi as-sinama, ya shabaab?			
John watches the movie at the theater (cinema).	يُشاهِدُ جون الفيلم في السِّينَما Yushahidu John al-film fi as-sinama	He Watches	يُشاهِدُ	0:00 / 0:01
Rana watches Arabic movie (film).	تُشاهِدُ رنا فيلم عَربيّ Tushahidu Rana film arabi	she Watches	تُشاهِدُ	0:00 / 0:01
John and Rana watch American movie.	جون ورنا يُشاهِدُون فيلم أمْريكيّ John wa Rana yushahidoon film amriki	They (all) Watch	يُشاهِدُون	0:00 / 0:01

9.7: New Verbs (to drink, to watch) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.4: Interrogative words أدوات الاستفهام, New Verbs and Colors** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- **6.2: Vocabulary** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.8: Dialog - At Home

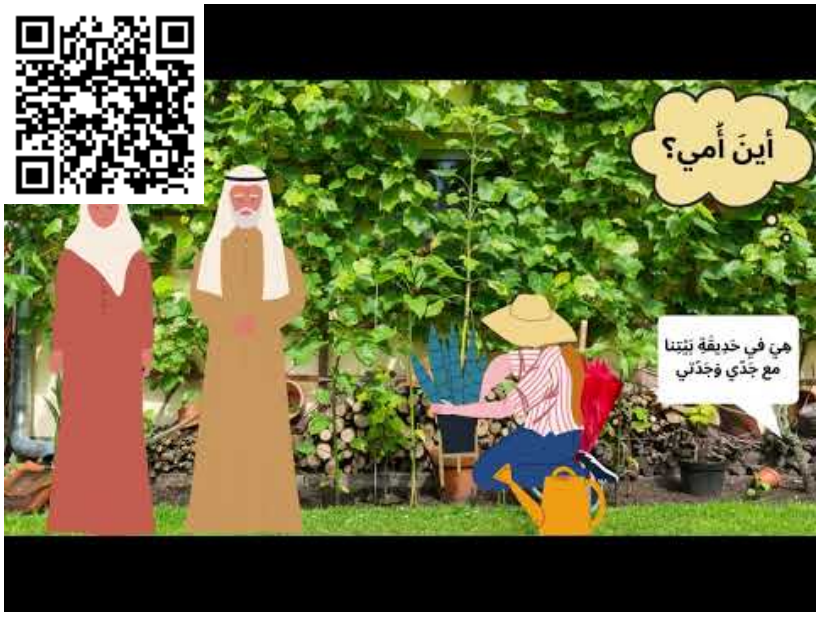
Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Name different rooms and household items in your home.
- List the furniture and the household items in your home.
- Describe your house or apartment.

Dialog 1

Watch the video about a dialogue between a brother and his sister. The sister entered the house and began asking questions to her brother. Read and listen to their conversation.



Dialog 1

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Hello Tarek, where are you?	Layla: Marhaban Tareq, ayna anta?	ليلى: مرحباً طارِق أَيْنَ أَنْتَ؟
Hello, I am in my office.	Tareq: Ahlan, ana fi ghurfat maktabi	طارِق: أهلاً أنا في غرفة مكتبي
What do you study?	Layla: Madha tadrusu?	ليلى: ماذا تدْرُسُ؟
I study Arabic.	Tareq: Ana adrusu 'arabiyya	طارِق: أنا أدرسُ عَربيّ
Where is my father?	ayla: Ayna abi?	ليلى: أَيْنَ أبي؟
He is watching TV in his room.	Tareq: Abi yushaahidu tilfizyoon fi ghurfatihi	طارِق: أبي يُشاهِدُ تِلفزيون في غُرفته
Where is my mother?	Layla: Ayna ummi?	ليلى: أينَ أُمي؟
She is in our house's garden with my grandfather and grandmother.	Tareq: Hiya fi hadeeqat baytina ma'a jaddi wa jaddati	طارِق: هِيَ في حَدِيقَةِ بَيْتِنا مع جَدّي وَجَدّتي
Where is my brother Hasan?	Layla: Ayna akhi Hasan?	ليلى: أيْنَ أَخي حَسن؟
Hasa is drinking green tea in the kitchen.	Tareq: Hasan fi al-matbakh yashrabu shayan akhdar	طارِق: حسن في الْمَطْبَخ يَشربُ شاياً أخضراً
Let's drink green tea with Hasan.	Layla: Haya nashrabu shayan akhdar ma'a Hasan	ليلى: هَيا نَشربُ

English	Transliteration	Arabic
		شاياً أخضراً معَ حسن
Yalla, to the kitchen.	Tareq: Yalla, ila al-matbakh	طارِق: يلا، إلى المطبخ
Ok	Layla: Hasanan	ليلى: حسناً

Activities

Reading

Sally Khalil is writing an email to her mother describing her new apartment near the university and attaching a picture of it.

Reading

Reading	
السَّلامُ عَلَيْكُم ماما هذه صورة غرفتي، أَسْكُنُ في شقَّةٍ صغيرَةٍ وَجديدةٍ قريبَةً من الجامعةِ. في شقتي مَطبَخ صغير. فيه ثلاجةٌ وفِرْنٌ أبيضٌ وطاولةٌ صغيرةٌ وكُرسيٌ. في غُرفةُ الجلوسِ تِلْـفِزيون كِبير وَمَكتَب وَشبَّاك كَبير. وفي غرفةِ النَّوم سَريرٌ صَغيرٌ وخِزانَةٌ وحَمّامٌ أَنا أُحِبُّ شَقَّـتي ِوالْحَمْدُ لله عنوانُ شقتي الجديدة: عِشرون (٢٠) شارع برود وي مدينة لوس أنجلوس، ولاية في كاليفورنيا. مع السلامة اِبْنَتُكِ سالي	Arabic
As-salamu alaykum, Mama Hadhi sura ghurfati, askunu fi shuqatin saghiratin wa jadidatin qaribatan min al-jami'ati. Fi shuqati matbakh saghir. Fihi thalaja wa firn abyad wa tawila saghira wa kursi. Fi ghurfat al-julus tilfizyoon kabir wa maktab wa shubbak kabir. Wa fi ghurfat an-nawm sarir saghir wa khizanah wa hammam. Ana uhhibu shaqati wal-hamdu lillah Unwan shaqati al-jadida: 'ishroon (20) shari' Broad Way madinat Los Angeles, wilayat fi California. Ma'a as-salama. Ibnatuki Sally	Transliteration
Alsslam Aliekoum Mom. This is my apartment picture. I live in a small, new apartment close to the university. In my apartment, there is a small kitchen. It	English

Reading	
has a refrigerator, a white oven, a small table, and a chair. In the living room, there is a large TV, a desk, and a window. And the bedroom has a bed, a closet, and a bathroom. Thank God, I love my apartment. My new apartment address: Twenty Broadway Street, city of Los Angeles, California state. Goodbyes, Your daughter Sally.	

Activities

9.8: Dialog - At Home is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.3: Dialogue and Reading** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.9: Sultanate of Oman

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about the Sultanate of Oman, its Geographic location, famous cities, most famous artifacts, and traditional food and clothes.

Arab Countries of the Gulf are:

- Kuwait.
- Bahrain
- Qatar
- The United Arab Emirates.
- Oman.
- Saudi Arabia.

Facts About Sultanate Of Oman

Oman, officially known as the Sultanate of Oman, is a country located on the southeastern coast of the Arabian Peninsula. It shares borders with the United Arab Emirates to the northwest, Saudi Arabia to the west, and Yemen to the southwest, while the Arabian Sea lies to the south and east, and the Gulf of Oman to the northeast.

Oman has a rich cultural heritage influenced by its maritime history, Bedouin traditions, and Islamic faith. Traditional music, dance, and crafts are integral to Omani culture. The country is also known for its historic forts, such as Bahla Fort, a UNESCO World Heritage site.

The official language of Oman is Arabic, making it an excellent place for learners to immerse themselves in the language. Omani Arabic has its own distinct dialect, which adds to the rich diversity of the Arabic languag.

Historically, Oman's economy was based on maritime trade and agriculture. Today, it is diversifying, although oil and gas remain crucial sectors. The government is actively promoting tourism, logistics, and manufacturing as part of its economic diversification efforts.

Oman is a growing tourist destination, known for its natural beauty, including pristine beaches, lush wadis (valleys), and impressive mountains. Popular tourist activities include trekking, diving, and exploring historical sites.

Oman is an absolute monarchy, with Sultan Haitham bin Tariq as the current ruler. The country has a rich history of sultanate rule, which influences its cultural and political landscape.

- Official Name: Sultanate of Oman سلطنة عمان *Saltanat Uman*
- Capital: Muscat
- Population: 5.107 million (2020 estimate)
- Currency: Omani rial ريال عماني Riyal omani
- Continent: Asia آسيا asia
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic



Figure **9.9.1**: Arabian Gulf Countries Map by furfur via Wikimedia Commons CC BY-SA 4.0

Geographical Location and Flag

Figure \(\PageIn  Oman

Oman is located on the southeastern coast of the Arabian Peninsula, bordered by the United Arab Emirates to the northwest, Saudi Arabia to the west, and Yemen to the southwest. The Arabian Sea lies to the south and east, while the Gulf of Oman is to the northeast. This strategic location gives Oman a diverse range of geographical features, including the rugged Al Hajar Mountains in the north, the vast Rub' al Khali (Empty Quarter) desert in the southwest, and a long coastline that stretches for over 3,000 kilometers. The country's varied landscape includes lush valleys (wadis), rocky cliffs, and pristine beaches, contributing to its natural beauty and making it a unique blend of desert and coastal environments.

The flag of Oman consists of three horizontal stripes and a vertical stripe on the left side. The horizontal stripes are white, red, and green from top to bottom. The vertical stripe on the hoist side is red and contains the national emblem of Oman, which includes two crossed swords, a khanjar (a traditional curved dagger), and a belt. Each color in the flag has significant meaning: white symbolizes peace and prosperity, red represents the struggles and sacrifices of the past, and green signifies fertility and the Jebel Akhdar (Green Mountains). The flag reflects Oman's rich history, cultural heritage, and the unity and pride of its people.



Oman

Oman is home to several important and famous cities, each contributing uniquely to the country's rich cultural heritage, economic vitality, and natural beauty. Here are the most notable cities in Oman:

- **Muscat**, the capital city of Oman, is the political, economic, and cultural heart of the country. Known for its stunning coastal scenery, Muscat is a blend of traditional and modern architecture. Landmarks include the Sultan Qaboos Grand Mosque, a masterpiece of Islamic architecture, and the Royal Opera House, a center for the arts. The city's bustling Mutrah Souq is one of the oldest markets in the Arab world, offering a variety of traditional goods. Muscat is also home to the Al Jalali and Al Mirani forts, which overlook the harbor and stand as a testament to the city's historical significance.
- **Salalah**, located in the southern part of Oman, is famous for its unique Khareef (monsoon) season, which transforms the region into a lush, green landscape, attracting tourists from all over the world. The city is known for its beautiful beaches, coconut-fringed coasts, and the ancient ruins of Sumhuram, a UNESCO World Heritage site. Salalah is also the birthplace of Sultan Qaboos bin Said, the former ruler of Oman, and is rich in frankincense, historically a major trade commodity.
- **Nizwa**, often referred to as the "Pearl of Islam," is one of the oldest cities in Oman and was once the capital in the 6th and 7th centuries. It is renowned for its historical and cultural significance, with landmarks such as the Nizwa Fort, a massive castle with a distinctive round tower, and the Nizwa Souq, known for its traditional handicrafts and silver jewelry. The city is also an important center for Islamic learning and home to many ancient mosques.
- **Sohar** is historically significant as the legendary birthplace of Sinbad the Sailor and was once a major Islamic port and trading hub. Today, it is a rapidly developing industrial city with a significant port. Sohar's historical sites include Sohar Fort, which houses a museum showcasing the city's maritime history, and the nearby ancient copper mines. The city's modern infrastructure and strategic location on the coast contribute to its growing importance in Oman’s economy.
- **Sur** is a picturesque coastal city known for its traditional shipbuilding industry, particularly the construction of wooden dhows, which have been a part of Oman's maritime heritage for centuries. The city's maritime history is celebrated at the Sur Maritime Museum. Sur is also close to natural attractions like the Ras Al Jinz Turtle Reserve, where visitors can witness the nesting of endangered green turtles.
- **Rustaq**, located in the Al Batinah region, is famous for its hot springs and historical forts. The most notable is the Rustaq Fort, which dates back to the pre-Islamic era and has been extensively restored. The city is surrounded by palm groves and offers stunning views of the Al Hajar Mountains. Rustaq's hot springs, such as Ain Al Kasfa, are popular for their therapeutic properties.
- **Al Buraimi** is an oasis town on the border with the United Arab Emirates. It shares close cultural and economic ties with the neighboring Emirati city of Al Ain. Al Buraimi is known for its historical forts, such as Al Khandaq Castle, and its vibrant markets. The town's strategic location makes it a key point of trade and travel between Oman and the UAE.

Each of these cities contributes to the diverse and rich tapestry of Oman’s cultural and historical heritage, offering unique experiences and insights into the country’s past and present. Whether through their historical landmarks, natural beauty, or economic significance, these cities play vital roles in shaping the identity of Oman.

Traditional Food



Omani Food

Omani cuisine is a delightful reflection of the country's rich cultural heritage, blending Arabian, Persian, Indian, and African influences. Traditional Omani food is known for its aromatic spices and flavorful ingredients, often featuring a combination of meat, fish, rice, and vegetables. Here are some of the most notable traditional dishes in Oman:

- **Shuwa** is one of Oman's most celebrated dishes, traditionally prepared for special occasions and festivals like Eid. It involves marinating meat, usually lamb or goat, in a blend of spices and then wrapping it in banana or palm leaves. The meat is then cooked slowly in an underground sand oven for up to 48 hours, resulting in tender, flavorful meat that falls off the bone.
- **Majboos**, also known as Kabsa, is a spiced rice dish commonly made with chicken, lamb, or fish. The dish is seasoned with a mixture of spices including saffron, cardamom, cinnamon, and cloves. The meat is cooked with the rice, allowing the flavors to meld together. It is often garnished with fried onions, nuts, and raisins.
- **Mashuai** is a traditional dish featuring grilled or roasted kingfish served with a tangy lemon rice. The fish is typically marinated with spices and grilled to perfection, providing a delightful contrast to the flavorful rice.
- **Harees** is a popular dish during Ramadan and festive occasions. It is made from wheat and meat, usually chicken or lamb, cooked together until they reach a porridge-like consistency. The dish is seasoned with salt and often topped with a drizzle of ghee for added richness.
- **Omani Halwa** is a famous traditional dessert made from sugar, honey, rosewater, saffron, and various nuts. It has a gelatinous texture and is typically served with Omani coffee (kahwa). Halwa is a staple at Omani celebrations and is enjoyed for its sweet, fragrant taste.
- **Ruqaq** is a type of thin, crispy bread often served with honey, cheese, or curry. It is a versatile staple in Omani households and is enjoyed at any time of the day.
- **Dates and kahwa** (Omani coffee) are integral parts of Omani hospitality. Dates are often served to guests as a gesture of welcome, accompanied by kahwa, which is a lightly spiced coffee flavored with cardamom and sometimes saffron.

Omani cuisine offers a rich and diverse culinary experience, reflecting the country's history and cultural connections with the Arabian Peninsula and beyond. The use of spices, slow-cooking techniques, and fresh ingredients make Omani food both flavorful and memorable.

Traditional Clothes

Traditional clothing in Oman is a significant part of the country’s cultural identity, reflecting its rich heritage and the practical needs of its climate. Both men and women in Oman wear distinctive traditional attire that is both elegant and functional. Here’s an overview of the most traditional clothes in Oman:

Men's Traditional Clothing

- **Dishdasha (Thobe):** The primary traditional garment for Omani men is the "dishdasha," also known as a "thobe." It is a long, ankle-length robe, usually made of cotton, and commonly white or in shades of cream, brown, or blue. The dishdasha is simple yet elegant, featuring a tassel (called a "furakha") at the neckline, which is often dipped in perfume. It is designed to provide comfort in the hot desert climate.
- **Muqassah (Bisht):** For formal occasions and special events, men may wear a "muqassah" or "bisht" over the dishdasha. The bisht is a cloak made from wool or a light fabric, often in black, brown, or beige, and is decorated with gold or silver embroidery along the edges. It is worn during significant ceremonies, such as weddings and religious celebrations, symbolizing prestige and honor.

- **Massar:** The "massar" is a traditional turban worn by Omani men. Made from fine wool or cotton, the massar comes in various colors and patterns. It is wrapped around the head in a specific manner and is an important part of formal dress, especially for official and ceremonial occasions. The massar is often elaborately designed and reflects the wearer's personal style and social status.
- **Kumma:** The "kumma" is a traditional Omani cap, typically worn under the massar or on its own. It is round and usually embroidered with intricate geometric or floral patterns. The kumma is commonly worn in everyday life and is a distinctive element of Omani identity.

Women's Traditional Clothing

- **Abaya:** The "abaya" is a long, black cloak worn by Omani women over their clothing when they are in public. It is designed to be modest and elegant, often featuring intricate embroidery, sequins, or beadwork along the sleeves and hem. The abaya is typically made from lightweight fabrics to provide comfort in the warm climate.
- **Hijab:** The "hijab" is a headscarf worn by Omani women to cover their hair and neck, in line with Islamic principles of modesty. It comes in various colors and styles, often coordinated with the abaya. The hijab is an essential part of traditional dress for women in Oman.
- **Sirwal:** Under the abaya, women often wear "sirwal," which are loose-fitting trousers. These trousers are usually made from comfortable fabrics and may feature decorative elements around the ankles. The sirwal is practical for daily wear and complements the traditional Omani dress.
- **Lihaf:** The "lihaf" is a shawl or scarf that women drape over their shoulders or use to cover their heads. It is often made from lightweight, airy fabrics and can be richly decorated with embroidery or sequins. The lihaf adds an extra layer of modesty and style to a woman’s attire.
- **Omani Dress:** For special occasions, Omani women wear traditional dresses known as "Omani dress" or "thobe nashal." These dresses are brightly colored and elaborately embroidered, often with gold and silver thread. The designs and patterns vary by region, reflecting the diverse cultural heritage of Oman. The dress is typically worn with matching jewelry and accessories, highlighting the wearer’s personal style and cultural pride.



Traditional Omani clothing

Traditional Accessories

- **Jewelry:** Omani women often accessorize their traditional clothing with jewelry made from gold and silver. Common pieces include necklaces, earrings, bracelets, and anklets, often featuring intricate designs and semi-precious stones. Jewelry is an important aspect of traditional dress and is worn during special occasions and celebrations.
- **Footwear:** Traditional footwear includes sandals for both men and women. These are often simple and made from leather, designed for comfort in the hot climate. For formal occasions, women may wear more elaborate shoes or slippers that match their traditional attire.

Traditional clothing in Oman is a beautiful expression of the country’s cultural heritage and values. It combines practicality with elegance, ensuring comfort while adhering to social and religious norms. Whether for everyday wear or special occasions, Omani traditional attire plays a vital role in preserving and celebrating the nation's identity.

Conclusion

Oman is a country of rich cultural heritage, stunning natural beauty, and a deep sense of tradition. From its majestic deserts and mountains to its vibrant cities like Muscat and Salalah, Oman offers a unique blend of historical significance and modern development. The nation's traditional clothing, cuisine, and customs reflect its diverse cultural influences and commitment to preserving its identity. Oman's strategic location has made it a historical maritime hub, and its commitment to progress and sustainability positions it as a significant player in the region. Whether exploring its ancient forts, enjoying its delicious cuisine, or experiencing its warm hospitality, Oman provides a captivating and enriching experience for all who visit or study its culture.

Activities

9.9: Sultanate of Oman is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.10: Yemeni Republic

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about Yemen, its Geographical location, famous cities, its most famous artifacts, and its traditional food and clothes.

Yemen

- Official Name: The Yemeni Republic- جمهورية اليمن
- Capital: Sanaa - صنعاء
- Population: 34.2 million
- Currency: The rial
- Continent: Asia
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic -اللغة العربية الفصحى الحديثة

Watch this movie and learn about Yemen.



Geographical location and flag

Yemen is considered one of the oldest centers of civilization in the ancient world located in Western Asia, on the southern end of the Arabian Peninsula, at the entrance to the Bab-el-Mandeb Strait, which links the Red Sea to the Indian Ocean (via the Gulf of Aden) and is one of the most active and strategic shipping lanes in the world. It borders Saudi Arabia to the north and Oman to the northeast and shares maritime borders with Eritrea, Djibouti, and Somalia. Yemen's climate is subtropical, dry, hot desert, with low annual rainfall and very high summer temperatures.

The flag of Yemen is a symbol of the country's unity and pride, featuring three horizontal stripes of equal width. From top to bottom, the colors are red, white, and black. The red stripe represents the bloodshed and sacrifices made during the struggle for independence and unity, particularly during the 1962 revolution against the monarchy. The white stripe symbolizes a bright future and the hope for peace, while the black stripe signifies the dark past of oppression and colonialism that the Yemeni people have overcome. Adopted on May 22, 1990, following the unification of North and South Yemen, the flag of Yemen reflects the country's resilience, unity, and aspirations for a better future.



Yemen map; public domain


Yemen flag

Famous Cities in Yemen

Yemen, a country with a rich history and diverse culture, is home to several cities that are renowned for their historical significance, architectural beauty, and cultural heritage. Each city offers a unique glimpse into Yemen's past and present, showcasing its vibrant traditions and deep-rooted identity.

- **Sana'a**, the capital and largest city of Yemen, is one of the oldest continuously inhabited cities in the world, with a history dating back over 2,500 years. The city is famous for its unique architecture, characterized by multi-story houses with intricately decorated facades, made from mud bricks. The Old City of Sana'a, a UNESCO World Heritage site, is home to the Great Mosque of Sana'a, one of the oldest mosques in the world, and the iconic Bab al-Yemen (Yemen Gate), which leads into the bustling markets and ancient streets. Sana'a is not only the political and cultural heart of Yemen but also a symbol of the country's rich Islamic and architectural heritage.
- **Aden,** located on the southern coast of Yemen, is a port city with a long history as a trading hub due to its strategic location near the entrance to the Red Sea. Aden has been an important maritime center for centuries, and its natural harbor, known as the Crater, is one of the world's oldest. The city is known for its historical landmarks, including the ancient Tawila Tanks, the Sira Fortress, and the impressive Al-Mualla district, which showcases a blend of traditional and colonial architecture. Aden has a

cosmopolitan atmosphere, influenced by various cultures over the centuries, and it played a crucial role in the country's modern history as the capital of South Yemen before unification.

- **Taiz**, located in the highlands of southwestern Yemen, is known as the cultural capital of the country. The city is renowned for its educational institutions, cultural centers, and rich intellectual heritage. Taiz is home to the historic Al-Qahira Castle, which overlooks the city from atop a mountain, and the beautiful Ashrafiya Mosque, known for its intricate decorations and architecture. The city's high altitude gives it a cooler climate compared to other parts of Yemen, making it a lush and green area with numerous coffee plantations. Taiz has historically been a center of resistance and political activism, contributing significantly to Yemen's social and political movements.
- **Mukalla,** the capital of Hadhramaut Governorate, is a coastal city located on the Arabian Sea in southeastern Yemen. Known for its stunning beaches and historic port, Mukalla has long been a center of trade and commerce. The city is famous for its traditional Hadhrami architecture, which features whitewashed buildings with wooden latticework. Mukalla's old town, with its narrow streets and bustling markets, reflects the city's rich cultural heritage. The city is also a gateway to the Hadhramaut region, known for its ancient mudbrick skyscrapers in Shibam, often referred to as the "Manhattan of the Desert."
- **Shibam**, located in the Hadhramaut Valley, is a UNESCO World Heritage site and is often called the "Manhattan of the Desert" due to its remarkable mudbrick skyscrapers, some of which are over 500 years old. The city is one of the oldest examples of urban planning based on the vertical construction of multi-story buildings, with some reaching up to 30 meters high. Shibam's unique architecture was designed to protect its inhabitants from Bedouin attacks, and its buildings are made entirely of mud bricks, giving the city its distinctive appearance. Shibam represents a unique blend of tradition and innovation in architecture and remains one of Yemen's most iconic cities.
- **Al Hudaydah** is a major port city on the western coast of Yemen, located along the Red Sea. The city plays a crucial role in Yemen's economy, serving as a key entry point for goods and trade. Al Hudaydah is known for its vibrant markets, traditional fishing industry, and historical sites, including the old city with its Ottoman-era buildings. The city has faced significant challenges due to the ongoing conflict in Yemen, but it remains an important cultural and economic center in the country.
- **Ibb,** often referred to as the "Green City" of Yemen, is located in the central highlands and is known for its fertile landscape, abundant rainfall, and lush vegetation. The city's location on a mountain plateau gives it a unique climate, making it one of the greenest regions in Yemen. Ibb is surrounded by terraced fields, orchards, and gardens, contributing to its reputation as a center for agriculture. The city also boasts historical sites such as ancient mosques, traditional markets, and stone-built houses that reflect Yemen's rich architectural heritage.

Each of these cities in Yemen offers a unique perspective on the country's history, culture, and geography. Whether through the ancient streets of Sana'a, the coastal beauty of Aden, or the architectural marvels of Shibam, Yemen's cities provide a fascinating glimpse into the diverse and vibrant heritage of this ancient land.



Old city of Sana'a; CC BY 4.0



Shibām Ḥaḍramawt; CC BY-SA 3.0



Shibam



Ibb



Taiz



Aden

Traditional Yemeni Food

Traditional Yemeni food is a rich and diverse reflection of the country's cultural heritage, influenced by the geography, climate, and historical trade routes that have brought various spices and ingredients to the region. Yemeni cuisine is known for its use of fragrant spices, fresh ingredients, and hearty dishes that are both flavorful and nourishing. Here are some of the most iconic traditional Yemeni foods:

- **Saltah** is often considered the national dish of Yemen. It is a hearty stew made with a base of meat broth, known as **maraq**, to which a dollop of **hilbeh** (a frothy fenugreek-based sauce) and **sahawiq** (a spicy salsa made from tomatoes, peppers, garlic, and herbs) are added. The stew usually includes vegetables, potatoes, and sometimes meat or beans, and is typically served bubbling hot in a stone pot. Saltah is often eaten with flatbread, which is used to scoop up the stew.
- **Mandi** is a traditional dish that originated in the Hadhramaut region of Yemen. It consists of spiced meat (usually lamb or chicken) cooked in a **tandoor** oven and served over a bed of aromatic basmati rice. The meat is marinated with a blend of spices, including cumin, coriander, cardamom, and turmeric, giving it a rich and fragrant flavor. Mandi is a popular dish for large gatherings and celebrations.
- **Fahsa** is another popular Yemeni stew, similar to Saltah but typically thicker and made with shredded lamb or beef. The meat is slow-cooked with spices, garlic, and onions until it is tender, and it is often topped with hilbeh and sahawiq, much like Saltah. Fahsa is served hot in a clay pot and is usually accompanied by Yemeni flatbread for dipping.
- **Aseed** is a traditional dish made from wheat or sorghum flour that is cooked into a thick dough-like consistency. It is often served with a meat or vegetable sauce, such as tomato-based stews, and sometimes topped with a spicy sahawiq or hilbeh. Aseed is a staple food in many Yemeni households and is especially popular in rural areas.
- **Bint Al-Sahn**, also known as **Sabaya**, is a traditional Yemeni dessert made from thin layers of dough that are stacked and baked with clarified butter and honey. The dish is light and flaky, with a sweet, buttery flavor. Bint Al-Sahn is often served with a drizzle of honey on top and is a popular dessert for special occasions, weddings, and family gatherings.
- **Malooga and Tawa** are types of traditional Yemeni flatbreads that are commonly eaten with meals. Malooga is a round, thick bread that is often torn into pieces and used to scoop up stews, sauces, and dips. Tawa is a thinner, softer bread that is similar to a pancake. Both breads are essential to Yemeni cuisine and are often baked fresh daily in traditional clay ovens.
- **Zurbian** is a flavorful rice dish similar to biryani, made with basmati rice, meat (often lamb or chicken), and a mix of spices including saffron, cardamom, and cloves. The meat is typically marinated with yogurt and spices before being cooked with the rice, which absorbs all the rich flavors. Zurbian is a popular dish for festive occasions and is often served with a side of sahawiq or yogurt.

- **Maraq** is a light, clear broth made from slow-cooked meat, usually lamb or chicken, and flavored with a blend of spices. It is often served as a starter or alongside main dishes like Saltah or Fahsa. Maraq is prized for its rich flavor and is often enjoyed as a comforting, nourishing soup.
- **Shafout** is a unique Yemeni dish made from layers of **lahooh** (a spongy, fermented flatbread similar to injera) that are soaked in a yogurt-based sauce. The sauce is flavored with herbs, spices, and sometimes cucumber or radishes. Shafout is typically served cold and is a refreshing dish enjoyed during the summer months or as part of a festive meal.
- **Mulawah** is a traditional Yemeni bread that is crispy on the outside and soft on the inside. It is often compared to a large, flaky croissant due to its layered texture. Mulawah is commonly eaten with honey or cheese for breakfast, or used to scoop up savory dishes like Saltah and Fahsa.
- **Fatoot** is a simple yet delicious breakfast dish made by soaking leftover bread in milk or tea, and sometimes adding honey, butter, or spices. It is a popular way to use up day-old bread and is a comforting, satisfying start to the day.
- **Balaleet** is a sweet and savory dish made from vermicelli noodles cooked with sugar, cardamom, saffron, and sometimes rosewater. The noodles are often topped with an omelet, creating a unique blend of flavors. Balaleet is typically served for breakfast or as a dessert, especially during Ramadan.



Traditional Yemeni food features a variety of dishes displayed in a warm, traditional setting.

Yemeni cuisine is a reflection of the country's history and cultural diversity, with each region offering its own specialties and variations. The use of fresh, locally-sourced ingredients and the intricate blend of spices make Yemeni food both flavorful and aromatic, offering a truly unique culinary experience. Whether enjoyed in a bustling city or a rural village, traditional Yemeni dishes bring people together, celebrating the country's rich heritage and hospitality.

Traditional Yemeni Clothes

Traditional Yemeni clothing is a vibrant expression of the country's rich cultural heritage, influenced by its diverse geography, history, and social customs. The clothing varies significantly across different regions of Yemen, reflecting the unique identities and traditions of the people. These garments are not only functional, designed to suit the climate, but also carry deep cultural and symbolic significance.

Men's Traditional Clothing

- **Thobe (or Jallabiya):** The **Thobe**, also known as **Jallabiya** in some regions, is the most common traditional garment worn by Yemeni men. It is a long, ankle-length robe, typically made of cotton or linen, and comes in various colors, though white and light shades are most common. The Thobe is designed to be comfortable and practical in Yemen's hot climate.
- **Futah:** In many parts of Yemen, especially in rural areas, men wear a **Futah** instead of or in addition to the Thobe. The Futah is a wrap-around skirt-like garment that reaches down to the ankles or knees. It is often made from lightweight cotton or wool, and it is commonly paired with a simple shirt. The Futah is secured around the waist and can feature various patterns, stripes, or solid colors.
- **Jambiya:** A central element of traditional Yemeni male attire is the **Jambiya**, a curved dagger worn at the waist. The Jambiya is more than just a weapon; it is a symbol of social status, manhood, and cultural identity. The hilt of the Jambiya is often ornately decorated with silver, gold, or even precious stones, and the sheath is usually made of leather or richly embroidered fabric. It is typically worn with the Futah, and its prominence in Yemeni culture makes it a distinctive feature of men's clothing.

- **Shawl or "Izar":** In colder regions or during cooler months, Yemeni men may also wear a **Shawl** or **Izar** over their shoulders for added warmth. The shawl is often made of wool and can be plain or patterned, adding both function and style to the traditional attire.
- **Turban (or Ghutra):** Men often wear a **Turban** or **Ghutra** on their heads, especially in the highlands and desert regions. The turban, usually made of cotton or wool, protects the wearer from the sun and sand. The style and way of tying the turban can vary from one region to another.

Women's Traditional Clothing

- **Thobe (or Dir'aa):** Yemeni women traditionally wear a **Thobe** or **Dir'aa**, which is a long, loose-fitting dress that often features intricate embroidery, particularly around the neckline, cuffs, and hem. The embroidery can be in vibrant colors, reflecting the region's traditions and the woman's social status. The fabric used for the Thobe varies, with lighter fabrics worn in warmer regions and heavier materials used in cooler areas.
- **Balto:** In urban areas, women often wear a **Balto**, a black cloak similar to an abaya, over their clothing when going out in public. The Balto is usually plain, but it can be decorated with subtle embroidery or patterns. It is worn over the Thobe or other clothing to ensure modesty in accordance with cultural and religious practices.
- **Niqab or Hijab:** Many Yemeni women cover their heads with a **Hijab** or **Niqab**. The **Hijab** is a headscarf that covers the hair and neck, while the **Niqab** also covers the face, leaving only the eyes visible. The use of the Niqab and Hijab varies across different regions and communities, reflecting personal, cultural, and religious preferences.
- **Jewelry:** Traditional Yemeni jewelry is an important aspect of women's attire, especially during weddings and special occasions. Silver jewelry is particularly prominent, with items such as necklaces, bracelets, earrings, and headpieces being richly decorated. In some regions, women also wear large, ornate belts over their dresses, made of silver or gold, which can be quite elaborate.
- **Henna: Henna** is commonly used by Yemeni women to adorn their hands and feet with intricate designs, particularly for weddings and celebrations. The application of henna is a deeply rooted tradition in Yemeni culture, symbolizing beauty and happiness.

Regional Variations

Yemeni traditional clothing varies significantly from one region to another, influenced by local customs, climate, and history:

- **In the northern highlands,** clothing tends to be heavier and more elaborately decorated due to the cooler climate. Men might wear thicker turbans and additional layers, while women's clothing often features detailed embroidery.
- **In coastal areas,** such as Aden, the clothing is lighter and more adapted to the hot, humid climate. The Futah is particularly common among men, while women may wear more breathable fabrics.
- **In Hadhramaut,** a region known for its unique cultural identity, both men and women wear distinct styles of dress that reflect the area's historical connections with East Africa and Southeast Asia.



Traditional Yemeni clothing, showcasing the attire typically worn by Yemeni men and women.

Modern Adaptations

While traditional clothing remains important in Yemeni culture, modern influences have led to adaptations in style. Many Yemenis now blend traditional elements with contemporary fashion, especially in urban areas. For example, younger generations might wear a Futah with a modern shirt or pair a traditional Thobe with more casual shoes.

In conclusion, Yemeni traditional clothing is a vivid expression of the country's cultural diversity and heritage. Whether through the elegant Thobe, the symbolic Jambiya, or the intricately embroidered Dir'aa, these garments reflect the rich history, social customs, and identity of the Yemeni people.

Activities:

9.10: Yemeni Republic is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- **3.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

9.11: Assessment

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Review what you have learned in this chapter.

Activities

9.11: Assessment is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

10: Food الطعام "At-Tauam"

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Identify الألف المقصورى and Dagger Alif
- Learn and say new vocabulary about the names of food and drinks.
- Shop at a Middle Eastern food market and Order food in an Arabic restaurant
- Learn these verbs (to go, cook, buy, and want) in the present tense.
- Identify Arabic propositions.
- Learn about Libya and Bahrain, their geographical location, famous cities, most famous artifacts, traditional food, and clothes.

10.1: Letter Meem

10.2: Letter Haa

10.3: Letters Alif MAqsurah الألف المقصورة, Dagger Alif الألف الخنجرية

10.4: Vocabulary

10.5: Prepositions حروف الجر

10.6: New Verbs (go, cook, buy, and want)

10.7: Dialog - What do you eat?

10.8: Bahrain

10.9: Libya

10.10: Assessment

The Marker of "Shadda"الشدة

10: Food الطعام "At-Tauam" is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.1: Letter Meem

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write م in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter م with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The Arabic letter م (Meem) is the twenty-fourth letter in the Arabic alphabet and holds a significant place due to its frequent use in the language. Meem is equivalent to the letter "M" in the English alphabet.. Meem is versatile and appears in various forms depending on its position within a word. This letter is foundational in many common Arabic words, making it essential for learners to recognize and use it effectively. Words like ماء (maa', meaning "water"), مدرسة (madrasa, meaning "school"), and أم (umm, meaning "mother") prominently feature the letter Meem. Mastery of this letter is crucial for developing proficiency in reading, writing, and understanding Arabic.

The letter Meem م

The articulation point of the letter م is the lips. The articulation point is the lips, like with the letters "ب" and "و". However, the letter م is articulated by closing the two lips together and accentuated by the nasal passage. The letter corresponds to the English "*M*" as in "may". م is pronounced "mm". The letters "ب" and م emerge from pressing the lips together. However, the consonant "و" emerges by opening the lips slightly and bringing in the sides to form an "O" shape.

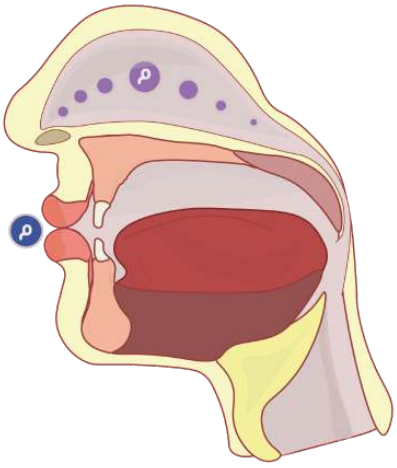


Figure **10.1.1**: CCross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter م

Pronunciation of letter Seen "س" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Seen with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	مَ	
Dhama الضمة	مُ	
Kasra الكسرة	مِ	
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	مْ	

Pronunciation of the letter Seen "**س**" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter س with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	ما	
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	مو	
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	مي	

How to Write The Letter Meem

The letter م is a connecting letter. Therefore, to write an independent م, begin on the line and draw a small, round loop over and around to the right, continue along the line a short distance, then make a curve and draw the tail straight down, well below the line.

There are two common styles of writing the initial "مـ". It may be looped up and over, like the independent م, or looped from underneath in the opposite direction. Once you have closed the loop, continue on into a connecting segment.

When writing the initial "مـ" followed by the letters "ح" ,"ج", or "خ", remember to draw the loop well above the line so that you can continue directly into the following letter, like the word مجد.

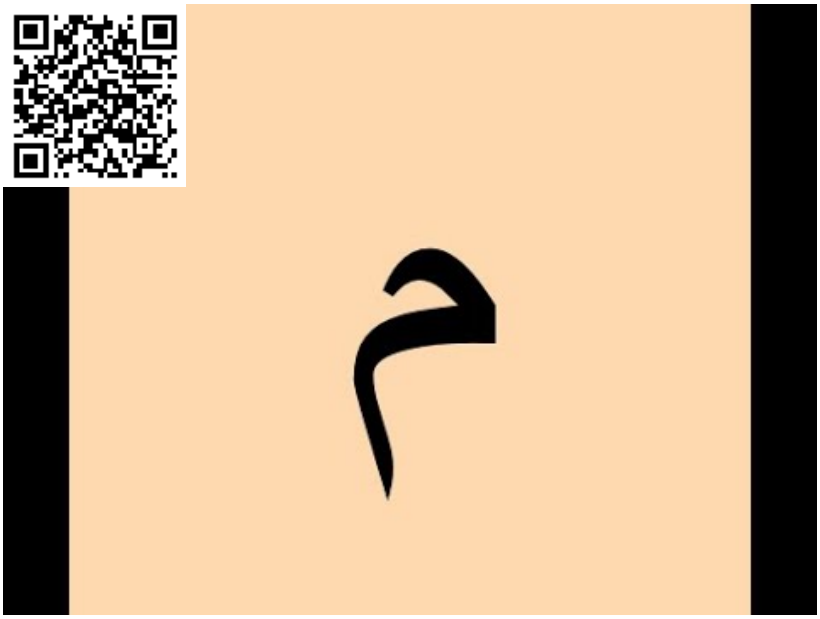
The medial "ـمـ" should always loop down from the connecting segment so that it looks different than the loop of the letter "ـفـ". The connecting segment often rests slightly above the line when it precedes by ح ,ج, or خ.

The final "ـم" must be looped down from the top. Starting from the connecting segment, continuing into the loop, then circling down and around to the right, making a full loop, and finally continuing into the tail. (Watch the video)

The letter م in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـم	ـمـ	مـ	م

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Meem.



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Meem الحرف ميم. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

10.1: Letter Meem is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

10.2: Letter Haa

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read and write هـ in its different shapes.
- Pronounce the letter هـ with short and long vowels.

Introduction

The Arabic letter هـ (pronounced "Ha") is the twenty-sixth letter of the Arabic alphabet. It is a soft, breathy sound similar to the "h" in the English word "hat." This letter is commonly found in many Arabic words, making it essential for learners to master. The letter هـ can appear in different forms depending on its position in a word: at the beginning (هـ), middle (ـهـ), end (ـه), or in its isolated form (ه). Words like هدية (hadiya, meaning "gift"), هواء (hawa, meaning "air"), and يوم (yawm, meaning "day") showcase the use of هـ in various contexts.

Comparison Letter هـ with the Arabic Letter ح

The Arabic letter ح (pronounced "H'aa") is also a crucial letter in the alphabet, but it differs significantly from هـ in both sound and usage. ح is a guttural, stronger sound that is more throaty, produced by constricting the back of the throat. It is comparable to the "h" sound in the English word "heave" but with more emphasis. While both هـ and ح are often transliterated as "h" in English, they represent distinct sounds in Arabic.

Understanding the differences between هـ and ح is vital for proper pronunciation and meaning in Arabic. Mispronouncing these letters can lead to confusion or incorrect word usage, as they often appear in words with entirely different meanings, such as حال (haal, meaning "condition") versus هال (haal, meaning "frightened"). Mastering both letters is essential for achieving fluency in reading, writing, and speaking Arabic.

The letter Haa هـ

The letter Haa "هـ" presents the English sound "*h*", as in house. The articulation point of the letter "هـ" is the deepest part of the throat and the furthest away from the mouth (closest to the chest). You should remember that "هـ" is a different than "ح". The sound of "هـ" does not require the use of the throat muscles, whereas "ح" is pronounced deep in the throat and has a light, raspy sound and involves the usage of the throat muscles.

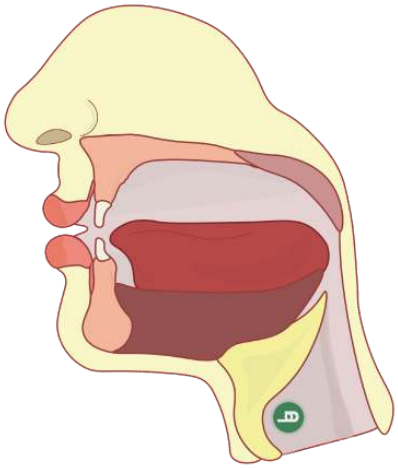


Figure **10.2.4**: Cross section of the head to show the articulation of the letter هـ

Pronunciation of letter Seen "هـ" with short vowels الحركات and absence of short vowels السكون.

Pronunciation of the Letter Haa هـ with Short Vowels and Sukoon

The Marks (Harakat الحركات)	The Letter with the mark	Audio
Fataha الفتحة	هَ / ـهَـ	
Dhama الضمة	هُ / ـهُـ	
Kasra الكسرة	هِ / ـهِـ	
Absence of short vowel Sukoon السكون	هْ / ـهْـ	

Pronunciation of the letter Haa "هـ" with long vowels.

Pronunciation of Letter هـ with Long Vowels

The Long Vowel المدود	The Letter with a long vowel	Audio
The long vowel "ا"=aa	ها	
The long vowel "و"= oo/uu	هو	
The long vowel "ي"=ee/ii	هي	

How to Write the Letter Haa

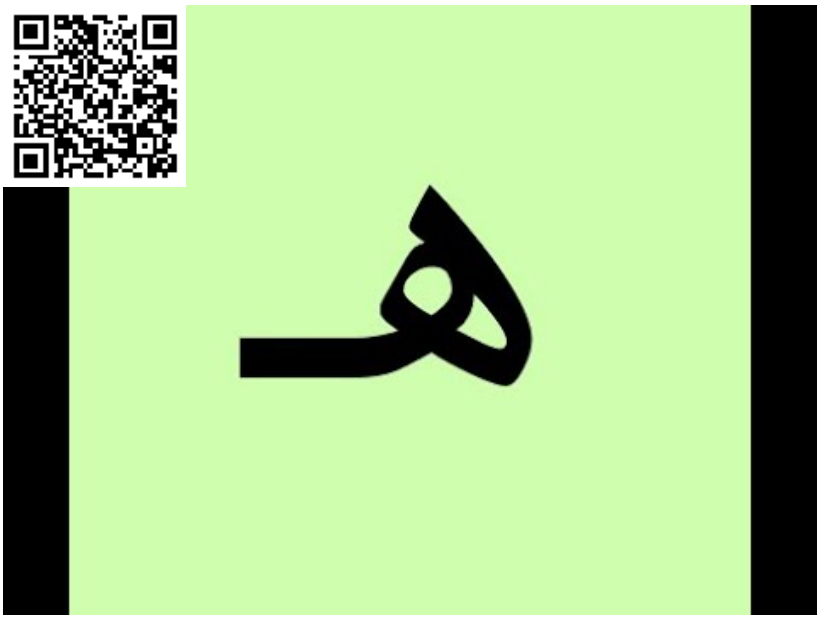
The letter "هـ" is a connecting letter. The shape of the letter "هـ" is both its independent and initial form. You begin slightly above the line and draw a large loop, first upward and then down to your right and back up. The outer loop should be larger than the inside one. The exact shape of the letter "هـ" can vary according to individual style and print type, from printed to a rounded oval.

When you reach the beginning of the loop, continue down to the line and into the connecting segment, ensuring that the big loop is closed. The middle position "هـ" has two main variations. The first is more common in print," ـهـ", consisting of two vertical loops, one above and one below the line. The second is more commonly found in handwriting and is written in one stroke as a sharp dip below the line "ـهـ". To write the final "ـه" connected with a preceding letter, start from the connecting segment and draw a short line up, and then loop around into a flat oval.

The letter هـ in four shapes

Final	Medial	Initial	Isolated
ـه / ه	ـهـ	هـ	هـ

Watch the video to learn how to write the letter Haa



Watch the video to learn more about the letter Haa هاء الحرف. The letter changes shape depending on their position in a word.



Activities

10.2: Letter Haa is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

10.3: Letters Alif MAqsurah الألف المقصورة, Dagger Alif الألف الخنجرية

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read, write, and type "Alif Maqsura" الألف المقصورة "ى"
- Learn the concept of Dagger Alif الألف الخنجرية

الألف المقصورة ـى- ى

- The Alif Maqsurah: is the "Alif" that is only written in the final position of the word in the form of Yaa ي, but without dots.
- Alif Maqsurah sounds as a long vowel "Alif."
- Alif Maqsurah is strictly used at the end of the word and never comes at the beginning or in the middle of the word.
- Non-Arabic words and names are not spelled with Alif Maqsurah, but with Alif Maad (فرنسا، ألمانيا، نتاشا)

Writing Alif Amasurah

You write الألف المقصورة Alif Maqsurah "ى" like a final letter ياء Yaa "ي" and without the dots:

Example: إلى ، عَلى ، موسيقى ، لَيْلى ، مُنى ، سلمى



Alif Maksorah Forms

Arabic Letter Alif Maksorah Final Form ـى	Arabic Letter Aif Maksorah Isolated Form ى
يحيى - موسى- عيسى	هُدى - شَذى - نَدى

Activities

Identify the Arabic letter ى الألف المقصورة

Dagger Alif (ٰ) الألف الخنجرية

- This symbol is called Dagger Alif الألف الخنجرية because its shape is similar to a small dagger.
- It is pronounced as a long vowel Alif Maad (ا).
- The Dagger Alif occurs in only a few modern words, but these include some common ones; it is seldom written, even in fully vocalized texts, except in the Quran.
- The words in the table are the most common words spelled with Dagger Alif.

- You should pronounce them with the long vowel Alif Almaad because they are not spelled with Alif Almaad.
- Most keyboards do not have dagger alif. The word الله (Allāh) is usually produced automatically by entering "alif lām lām hāʾ".

Please read and listen to the following examples.

الألف الخنجرية Dagger Alif

Audio	English Meaning	Arabic Word
0:00 / 0:01	God	اللّٰه
0:00 / 0:01	nasculine, singular)	هَـٰـذا
0:00 / 0:01	feminine, singular)	هَـٰـذِهِ
0:00 / 0:01	But	لَـٰـكِن

10.3: Letters Alif MAqsurah الألف المقصورة, Dagger Alif الألف الخنجرية is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.1: Letters Alif MAqsurah الألف المقصورة** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

10.4: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn and say new vocabulary about the names of food and drinks.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary

https://human.libretexts.org/@go/page/251269

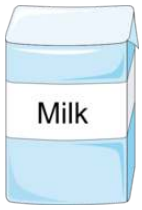
Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 تفاح	0:00 / 0:04		تفاح
 برتقال	0:00 / 0:04		برتقال
 حليب	0:00 / 0:04		حليب
 بيض	0:00 / 0:04		بيض
 موز	0:00 / 0:03		موز
 خضار	0:00 / 0:04		خضار

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 أرز	0:00 / 0:01		أَرُز
 فواكه	0:00 / 0:04		فواكه
 خبز	0:00		خبز
 لحم	0:00 / 0:03		لحم
 دجاج	0:00 / 0:00		دجاج
 سمك	0:00 / 0:04		سمك

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 سكر	0:00		سكر
 حلوى	0:00 / 0:01		حلّوى
 مطعم	0:00 / 0:03		مطعم
 عصير	0:00 / 0:04		عصير
 قهوة	0:00		قهوة

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 شاي	0:00		شاي
 ماء	0:00		ماء
 صحن	0:00 / 0:09		صحن (طبق)
 ليس	0:00 / 0:00		ليس عِندي
 دكان	0:00 / 0:10		دكان (بقالة)

Cognate

Learn these cognates. You can listen to the audio and read the words.

Cognates

Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
0:00 / 0:01	Potatoes	بطاطا
0:00 / 0:03	Tomatoes	طماطم
0:00 / 0:02	Kilo	كيلو
0:00 / 0:04	Chickpeas	حمص
0:00 / 0:04	Kebab	كباب
0:00 / 0:01	Salad	سَلَطَة
0:00 / 0:04	Cup	كوب
0:00 / 0:01	Mango	مانجو / مانجا
0:00 / 0:01	Falafel	فلافِل
0:00 / 0:02	Sandwich	ساندويتش
0:00 / 0:01	Lemon	ليمون

Activities Part 1

10.4: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- 7.2: Vocabulary by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

10.5: Prepositions حروف الجر

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn and understand Arabic Propositions.

Arabic Prepositions

Arabic prepositions حُروفُ الْجَرّ called Horuf ul Jarr- are particles. A preposition comes before a noun to complete the meaning. Arabic preposition particles are Mabni words كلمات مبنية, which means that they mostly have a fixed pronunciation regardless of their position in the sentence. Also, the word that follows any of them ends with a Kasrah.

Review the table below with the most common Arabic prepositions, their meaning, pronunciation, and examples: **من,**

إلى,عن, على, في, بـــ ,بِدونِ، معَ

Arabic Prepositions حروف الجر

Example	Audio	English Meaning	حرف الجر
أنا مِن لِبنان	0:00 / 0:03		مِنْ
يذهب أحمد إلى المطعم	0:00 / 0:03		إِلى
بِيْتي بعيد عَن الجامعة	0:00 / 0:04		عَنْ
الصَّحن على الطّاوِلة	0:00 / 0:03		عَلى
يوجد تفاح وبرتقال في الثلاجة	0:00 / 0:04		في
أشرب شاي بالسُّكر	0:00 / 0:03		بِـ
أشرب شاي بِدونِ سُكَّر	0:00 / 0:04		بِـدونِ
أَسْكُنُ مَعَ أُسْرَتي	0:00 / 0:03		مَعَ

10.5: Prepositions حروف الجر is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.4: Prepositions حروف الجر** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

10.6: New Verbs (go, cook, buy, and want)

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn these verbs (to go, to cook, to buy, and to want) in the present tense.

New Verbs

You will learn new verbs in the table below. These verbs will be conjugated with all the subject pronouns. You find the meaning of each verb in English on the top. Remember that (m) is for masculine, (f) is for feminine, (s) is for singular, (p) is for plural. Then, practice the verbs in conversation.

To Want	To Buy	To Cook	To Go	Subject Pronouns
أُرِيدُ	أَشْتَري	أَطْبُخُ	أَذْهَبُ	(I) أَنا
نُرِيدُ	نَشْتَري	نَطْبُخُ	نَذْهَبُ	(we) نحنُ
تُرِيدُ	تَشْتَري	تَطْبُخُ	تَذْهَبُ	(You, m,s) أَنْتَ
تُرِيدِينَ	تَشْتَرين	تَطْبُخينَ	تَذْهَبِـين	(You, f,s) أَنْتِ
تُرِيدُونَ	تَشْتَرون	تَطْبُخون	تذْهَبُون	(You, m,p) أَنْتُم
يُرِيدُ	يَشْتَري	يَطْبُخُ	يذْهَبُ	(he) هُوَ
تُرِيدُ	تَشْتَري	تَطْبُخُ	تذْهَبُ	(she) هِيَ
يُرِيدُونَ	يشْتَرون	يَطْبُخون	يذْهَبُون	(they, m, p) هُم

Activities

10.6: New Verbs (go, cook, buy, and want) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

10.7: Dialog - What do you eat?

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Shop at Middle Eastern food market
- Order food in an Arabic restaurant

Dialog 1

Huda is going to the Arabic grocery store " دُكّان أَحمَد." Listen to and read the conversation between the shopkeeper and Huda. Then, practice it with your partner.



Figure 1: Market-CC-SA-3.0

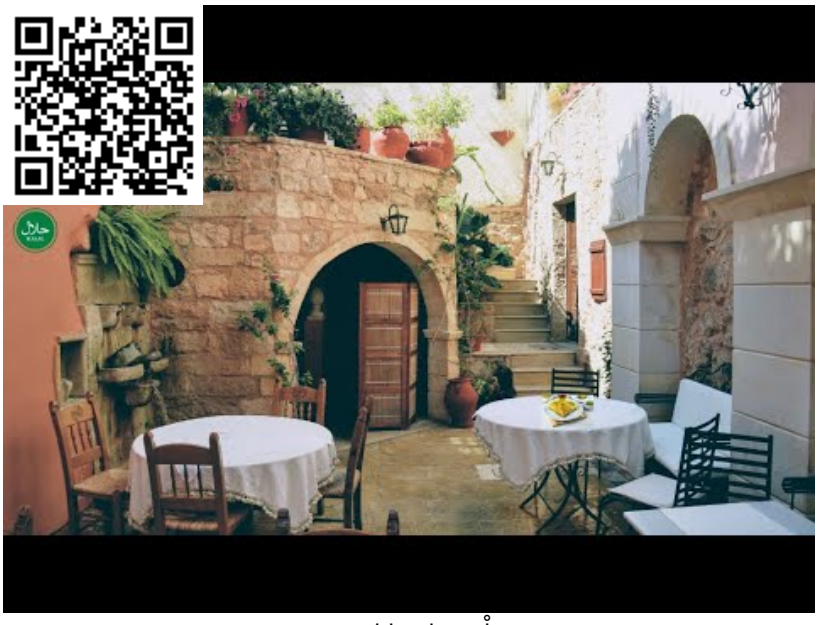
0:00 / 0:00

Dialog # 1: في دُكّانِ أحْمَد

English Dialog	Arabic Dialog
Assalmau Alakium	هُدى: السَّلامُ عَليكُم
Wa Alaikum Assalam, Welcome!	البائع أحَمَد: وَ عَليكَمُ السَّلام , أَهلاً وسَهلاً
Do you have red apples?	هُدى: هَلْ عِنْدَكَ تُفاحٌ أحْمَر؟
Yes, I have red and green apples.	البائِع أحمد:نعم، عندي تُفَاح أحْمر و أخضر
I want a kilo of red apples and a kilo of orange.	هُدى: أريد كيلو تفاح أحمر وكيلو برتقال.
Here you go, the red apples and the oranges.	البائع أحمد: تفضلي التفاح الأحمر والبرتقال
Thank you, and do you have Arabic sweets?	هدى: شُكراً وَ هَلْ عِنْدَك حَلوَى عَرَبِيَّة؟
Sorry, I don't have Arabic sweets.	البائِع أحمد: آسف ، لَيْسَ عندي حلوى عربية
Thank you!	هُدى: شُكراً
Goof-Bye	البائِع أحمد: معَ السّلامَة

Dialog 2: In Ali Baba Restaurant "في مَطْعَمِ علي بابا"

Laila is going to the Arabic restaurant "Ali Baba" "مطعم علي بابا" for lunch. Watch the video, and read the conversation between Laila and the waiter "Musa." Then, practice it with your partner.



Dialog # 2: في مَطْعَمِ علي بابا

English Dialog	Arabic Dialog
Hello!	موسى: مَرْحَباً
Welcome!	لَيْلى: أهْلاً وَسهْلاً
How are you?	موسى: كيْفَ الحال؟
Good, Alhamdu Lillah.	لَيْلى: بِخَيرٍ والحمدُ لله
What do you drink?	موسى: ماذا تَشْرَبين؟
I want to drink cold orange juice.	لَيْلى: أُريدُ عَصيرَ بُرتُقال بارِد
What do you want to eat?	موسى: ماذا تأْكلين؟
I want kabob plate, white rice, tabouleh, and a small plate of hummus.	لَيْلى: أُريدُ صَحْنَ كَباب وَأرُز أَبْيَض وَتَبولَة وَصَحْنُ حُمص صَغير
do you want bread with the food?	موسى: هل تُريدينَ خُبْز مَعَ الطّعام؟
No, thanks.	لَيْلى: لا، شُكراً
Do you want Arabic sweets after the food?	موسى: هل تُريدينَ حَلوى بعدَ الطّعام؟
Yes, I want Arabic sweets after the food, thanks.	لَيْلى: نَعَم، أُريدُ حلوى عَربيَّة بعدَ الطعام، شكراً
You are welcome, five minutes.	موسى:عَفواً، خَمسَ دقائِق

10.7: Dialog - What do you eat? is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.3: Dialogue and Reading** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

https://human.libretexts.org/@go/page/251270

10.8: Bahrain

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about Bahrain, its Geographic location, famous cities, most famous artifacts, and traditional food and clothes.

Facts about Bahrain

Bahrain, a small island nation in the Persian Gulf, is known for its rich history, economic prosperity, and cultural diversity. Officially the Kingdom of Bahrain, it is an archipelago consisting of 33 islands, with Manama as its capital and largest city. Bahrain was one of the first Gulf states to discover oil in 1932, and it has since diversified its economy, becoming a significant financial and banking hub in the Middle East. The country is also notable for its progressive stance on education and women's rights compared to many of its regional neighbors. Bahrain is home to the UNESCO World Heritage site of Qal'at al-Bahrain, an ancient harbor and capital of the Dilmun civilization, highlighting its historical significance. The annual Bahrain Grand Prix, part of the Formula One World Championship, showcases the country's modernity and global connectivity. Culturally, Bahrain is a blend of Arab tradition and cosmopolitan influences, with a vibrant arts scene, diverse culinary offerings, and a commitment to preserving its heritage while embracing the future. Despite its small size, Bahrain plays a crucial role in regional politics and economics, balancing tradition and modernity in its development journey.

- Official Name: Kingdom of Bahrain مملكة البحرين Mamlakat Al-Bahrayn
- Capital: Manama
- Population: 1,501,635 (2022 estimate)
- Currency: Bahraini dinar الدينار البحريني aldinar albahrani
- Continent: Asia آسيا asia
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic

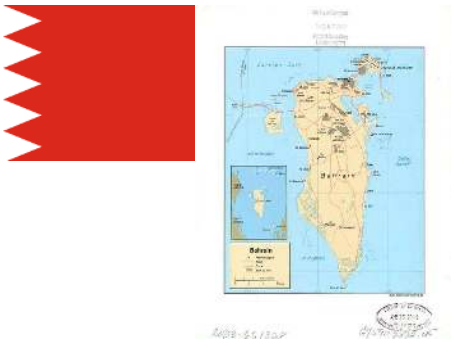


Figure **10.8.1**: Arabian Gulf Countries Map by furfur via Wikimedia Commons CC BY-SA 4.0

Geographical Location and Flag

Bahrain, officially known as the Kingdom of Bahrain, is a small island nation situated in the Persian Gulf, to the east of Saudi Arabia and west of the Qatar peninsula. The country is an archipelago comprising 33 natural islands, with Bahrain Island being the largest. Its strategic location in the Gulf has historically made it a crucial trade and cultural crossroads. The capital city, Manama, is located on the northeastern tip of Bahrain Island and serves as the political, economic, and cultural heart of the country.

The national flag of Bahrain is distinctive and symbolic, featuring a white band on the left and a larger red field on the right, separated by a serrated line of five white triangles that form a zigzag pattern. The five triangles correspond to the five pillars of Islam, underscoring Bahrain's deep-rooted Islamic heritage. The flag's unique design reflects Bahrain's identity and its rich history, making it a prominent national symbol recognized worldwide.



Bahrain

Famous Cities

Bahrain, though small in size, is home to several cities that are significant for their cultural, economic, and historical importance. Each city contributes uniquely to the nation's identity and development.

- **Manama,** the capital city, is the largest and most cosmopolitan city in Bahrain. It is the political and economic heart of the country, housing government offices, financial institutions, and numerous multinational corporations. Manama is known for its modern skyline, which features a mix of traditional and contemporary architecture, including landmarks like the Bahrain World Trade Center and the Bahrain Financial Harbour. The city is also a cultural hub, with attractions such as the Bahrain National Museum, Bab Al Bahrain, and the bustling Manama Souq.
- **Muharraq,** the third-largest city, is located to the northeast of Manama. It was once the capital of Bahrain and retains much of its historical charm. Muharraq is renowned for its traditional Bahraini houses, winding alleyways, and cultural sites such as the Sheikh Isa bin Ali House and the Arad Fort. The city is also famous for its pearling heritage, which is commemorated through the UNESCO World Heritage site "Pearling, Testimony of an Island Economy."
- **Riffa** is divided into East Riffa and West Riffa and is the second-largest city in Bahrain. It is a residential area known for its quiet neighborhoods, parks, and shopping destinations. East Riffa is home to several historical sites, including the Riffa Fort, while West Riffa is notable for being a preferred residence of the Bahraini royal family. The city also hosts the Royal Golf Club, a popular destination for golf enthusiasts.
- **Isa Town**, named after the late Emir Isa bin Salman Al Khalifa, is located in the central part of Bahrain. It is known for its educational institutions and sports facilities. The city is home to the Bahrain National Stadium, the largest stadium in the country, which hosts various sports events and national celebrations. Isa Town is also a major commercial center with a variety of markets and shopping centers.
- **Hamad Town** is a planned community located southwest of Manama. It was established in the 1980s to provide affordable housing for Bahraini citizens. The town is well-organized, with residential areas, schools, mosques, and shopping centers, making it a popular choice for families. It is named after the current king, Hamad bin Isa Al Khalifa.
- **Sitra** is an island city located south of Manama, known for its industrial activities and oil refineries. It plays a crucial role in Bahrain's economy due to its industrial zone and the presence of the Sitra oil terminal. Despite its industrial nature, Sitra also has residential areas and is connected to the mainland by several causeways.



Manama



Muharraq



Riffa



Isa Town

Traditional Food

Bahraini cuisine is a vibrant blend of Arabian, Persian, Indian, and African influences, reflecting the country's historical position as a trade hub. The food is characterized by the use of fresh ingredients, aromatic spices, and traditional cooking techniques, resulting in flavorful and hearty dishes. Here are some of the most famous foods in Bahrain:

- **Machboos**, also known as Kabsa, is Bahrain's national dish. It is a spiced rice dish cooked with meat (usually chicken, lamb, or fish), tomatoes, and a blend of spices such as cardamom, cloves, cinnamon, black lime, and nutmeg. The meat is typically slow-cooked to ensure it absorbs all the flavors of the spices. Machboos is often garnished with fried onions, nuts, and raisins, adding both texture and flavor.

- **Harees** is a traditional dish commonly prepared during Ramadan and festive occasions. It is a creamy porridge made from wheat and meat (usually chicken or lamb), cooked slowly until it reaches a smooth consistency. The dish is often flavored with ghee and sometimes topped with cinnamon and sugar, providing a savory yet slightly sweet taste.
- **Balaleet** is a sweet and savory breakfast dish made from vermicelli noodles cooked with sugar, saffron, cardamom, and rose water. It is typically topped with a thin omelet, creating a unique combination of flavors and textures. Balaleet is particularly popular during Ramadan.
- **Samboosa,** also known as Samosa, is a popular snack in Bahrain. It is a deep-fried pastry filled with a variety of ingredients, such as spiced meat, vegetables, or cheese. The crispy exterior and flavorful filling make it a favorite during Ramadan and other celebrations.
- **Ghoozi,** also spelled Qoozi, is a traditional Bahraini dish often served during special occasions like weddings and family gatherings. It consists of a whole lamb stuffed with rice, spices, nuts, and sometimes boiled eggs. The stuffed lamb is then slow-cooked until tender, resulting in a rich and flavorful dish.
- **Muhammar** is a sweet rice dish flavored with sugar, dates, and saffron. It is usually served as a side dish with savory meals, particularly grilled or roasted meats. The combination of sweet and savory flavors makes Muhammar a unique and beloved dish in Bahraini cuisine.
- **Khubz,** also known as Arabic bread or pita bread, is a staple in Bahraini cuisine. This round, flatbread is often baked in traditional clay ovens and served with almost every meal. It is perfect for scooping up dips like hummus and baba ghanoush or accompanying stews and grilled meats.
- **Halwa Bahraini** is a traditional sweet treat made from starch, saffron, cardamom, nuts, and rose water. It has a gelatinous texture and is often served during celebrations and special occasions. The rich flavor and unique texture make it a favorite among locals and visitors alike.
- **Thareed** is a traditional Bahraini stew made with meat (usually chicken or lamb), vegetables, and bread. The bread is soaked in the stew, absorbing the flavors and creating a hearty, comforting dish. Thareed is particularly popular during Ramadan.



مجبوس هريس بلاليط محمّر

These dishes represent the rich culinary heritage of Bahrain, offering a delightful mix of flavors and aromas that reflect the country's diverse cultural influences and traditions. Whether enjoyed at home, in a traditional restaurant, or during a festive celebration, Bahraini food provides a true taste of the nation's hospitality and history.

Traditional Clothes

Traditional clothing in Bahrain is a reflection of the country's cultural heritage and Islamic values, combining practicality with elegance. These garments are worn by both men and women, each with distinct styles that are suitable for the hot desert climate while also reflecting the country's customs and traditions.

Men's Traditional Clothing

- **Thobe (Dishdasha):** The most common traditional garment for Bahraini men is the thobe, also known as a dishdasha. This is a long, loose-fitting robe that reaches the ankles and is usually made from light-colored cotton fabric to keep cool in the hot climate. White is the most common color, especially during the summer, while darker shades like black, blue, and brown are worn during the cooler months.
- **Ghutra and Agal:** To complement the thobe, Bahraini men often wear a ghutra or shemagh, which is a square or rectangular headscarf. The ghutra is typically white, while the shemagh features a red and white checkered pattern. It is folded into a triangle and draped over the head, then secured with a black cord known as an agal.

- **Bisht:** For formal occasions and ceremonies, men wear a bisht over their thobe. The bisht is a cloak made from wool or cotton, often in black, brown, or cream colors, and is adorned with gold or silver embroidery. It symbolizes prestige and is worn by officials, dignitaries, and at special events like weddings.

Women's Traditional Clothing

- **Abaya:** The abaya is the most common traditional garment for Bahraini women. It is a long, black cloak that covers the entire body, providing modesty and adhering to Islamic dress codes. The abaya can be simple or decorated with intricate embroidery, sequins, and beads, reflecting personal style and social status.
- **Hijab and Niqab:** Along with the abaya, women often wear a hijab to cover their hair, neck, and sometimes the shoulders. The hijab comes in various styles and colors, allowing for personal expression while maintaining modesty. Some women also wear a niqab, which covers the face, leaving only the eyes visible.
- **Thobe Al Nashal:** For special occasions such as weddings and festivals, Bahraini women may wear a thobe al nashal. This traditional dress is brightly colored and elaborately embroidered with gold or silver thread. It is worn over an inner dress and is known for its luxurious and ornate design.
- **Jewelry:** Bahraini women often accessorize their traditional attire with gold jewelry, which holds cultural significance and is a symbol of wealth and status. Common pieces include necklaces, bracelets, rings, and earrings, often featuring intricate designs and precious stones.



Figure 10.8.1: Copy and Paste Caption here. (Copyright; author via source)

In summary, traditional clothing in Bahrain is a beautiful blend of practicality, cultural expression, and religious adherence. These garments play an important role in daily life, social events, and formal occasions, reflecting the rich cultural heritage and values of Bahraini society.

Conclusion

Bahrain, a small yet culturally rich and economically vibrant nation in the Persian Gulf, stands out as a beacon of tradition and modernity. Its strategic location and historical significance have shaped a diverse cultural heritage, reflected in its traditional attire, cuisine, and festivals. The nation's capital, Manama, is a testament to Bahrain's rapid modernization, blending futuristic architecture with historical sites. Economically, Bahrain has leveraged its early oil discoveries to diversify into finance and tourism, making it a dynamic player in the region. Its commitment to education, progressive social policies, and infrastructural development underscores a forward-thinking approach while honoring its deep-rooted traditions. Whether through its bustling souqs, culinary delights, or cultural landmarks, Bahrain offers a unique and enriching experience, embodying the harmonious coexistence of the past and the future.

Activities

10.8: Bahrain is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **4.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

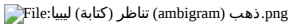
10.9: Libya

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about Libya, its Geographical location, its famous cities, its most famous artifacts, its traditional food, and clothes

Libya ليبيا

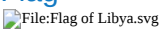


Libya; CC BY-SA 4.0

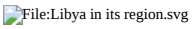
Facts to know about Libya

- Official Name: The state of Libya- دولة ليبيا
- Capital: Tripoli- طرابلس
- Population: 7,086,921 (2022)
- Currency:Libyan Dinar- دينار ليبي
- Continent: Africa- أفريقيا
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic- اللغة العربية الفصحى

1.1 Geographical Location & Flag



Libyan Flag



Map; CC BY-SA 3.0

- Libya is a country located in North Africa.
- It is the fourth largest country in Africa and the Arab World.
- The capital is Tripoli, and the largest city.
- It's bordered by Egypt on the east, Algeria to the west, the Mediterranean Sea to the north, Chad to the south, and Sudan to the southeast.
- Libya has the tenth-largest oil reserves in the world.
- It has about three million people out of the seven million Arabs and Berbers.
- Most of Libyan region lies in the Sahara desert, and most of the population live in Tripoli, Benghazi, and other cities along the coast.
- Libya is well known for its ancient Roman and Greek ruins and Sahara desert beautiful landscapes.
- Libya has along and rich history, with influences from a variety of cultures, including Arab, African, and European.

1.2 Most Famous Cities



There are many major cities in Libya. Some of them are Tripoli, Benghazi, Misrata, Al Bayda, Ghat, Sirte, Ghadames, Sabratah, Sabha



Libyan Cities; CC BY-SA 3.0



Libyan Major Cities; public domain

Famous Cities in Libya

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Tripoli	طرابلس	tarabulus	 Tripoli; GNU Free Documentation License
Benghazi	بنغازي	banghazi	 Benghazi; public domain
Misrata	مصراتة	misrata	 Misrata; CC BY-SA 4.0
Al Bayda	البيضاء	albayda'	 Al Bayda; public domain
Sirte	سرت	sirat	 Sirte; CC BY-SA 3.0
Sabratah	صبراتة	sabrata	

City Name	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
			Sabratah; CC BY-SA 4.0
Sabha	سبها	subuha	 Sabha; CC BY-SA 3.0

1.3 Most famous artifacts

Tripoli Red Castle- Assai- Al- Hamra

The Tripoli Red Castle, as known as the *Assai Al Hamra*, is one of the major landmarks in the city Tripoli in Libya. It was built in 9th century by the Aghlabids, a Muslim dynasty that ruled over parts of North Africa and Sicily. It is called red because most of its parts are painted in red color. it is located in the northeastern of the city of Tripoli and overlooks Omar Al-Mukhtar and Al Fatah streets. It was built on the remains of Roman buildings, or temples. it was built to defend the city from outsiders. the castle is a popular attraction and is considered a symbol of the city's rich history.

File:Red Castle Of Tripoli.jpg
Red Castle; CC BY-SA 4.0

Ghadames City

Ghadmaes city is called " the pearl of the desert" for its outstanding architectural design. It is one of the oldest and most notable Saharan cities in the Arab world. It has been the shining role and peaceful center in the cultural and economic life of the region. It was occupied by many people, including Phazaniis, Romans, Byzantines, Christianity, Islamic conquests, Ottoman empires, and the European occupation in the 19th century and during the colonial period and World War ll.

File:Park al touta in ghadames city.jpg
Ghadmanes City; CC BY-SA 4.0

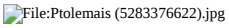
Leptis Magna

Leptis Magna was the largest city of the ancient region of Tripolitania, located on the North African coast of the Mediterranean Sea in present Libya. It was a Phoenician city and one of the most attractive cities of the Roman Empire, with its magnificent public monuments, harbors, marketplace, stores, and suburban regions.


Leptis Magna; CC BY-SA 2.0

Ptolemais

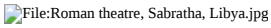
Ptolemais is an ancient city located along the Mediterranean coast of Libya. It is considered one of the five most important cities that established Pentaploi. it represents the distinctive regional cultural traditions created by diverse ethnicities and cultures that made up the region's social fabric, particularly Greek, Egyptian, Roman, Libyan, Byzantine, and Islamic. It is a little jewel of a historical spot and an important port in Libya. Its ancient remains and ruins are in modern Libya called Tolmeita.



Ptolemais; CC BY 2.0

Roman Sabratha

Sabratha was one of the major ports of Roman Tripoli that had a strong business connection with North Africa. Originally, it was a Phoenician settlement. Then the Roman enlarged the city by building streets, commercial, temples, and administrative. Most notable features of Sabratha include: The theater, the forum, the temples, and the city baths.



Roman Sabratha; CC BY 2.0

1.4 Traditional Food & Clothing in Libya

Most Popular Food in Libya

Most Popular Food In Libya

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Couscous bil-bosla	كسكس بالبصل		 Couscous
makaruna imbaukha	مكرونة مبوخة		 Makaruna Imbaukha
Shakshouka	شكشوك		 Shakshouka
Hasa adas	حساء عدس		 Hasa adas
Kufta bil batinjal	كفتة بالباذنجان		 Kufta bil batinjal; CC BY 3.0

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Basbousa	بسبوسة		 Basbousa; CC BY-SA 4.0
Bazin	البازين		 Bazin; CC BY-SA 3.0
Sfinz	سفنز		 Sfinz; CC BY-SA 4.0

Most Popular Clothing in Libya



In Modern days, Libyan people dress in different ways. in the urban ares, Libyans wear western clothing such as jeans and shirts, but on the special occasions, they wear their traditional clothes.

Women Traditional **Dress**

- Traditional Libyan women's clothing varies depending on the region, and the occasion.
- Some women wear bright colors like togas clothe with a blouse with loose sleeves, embroidered with beads, and silver/gold yaren with silk trousers closed at the ankle.
- The head is covered by a colorful cloth decorated with beads.

- The bridal dress for Libyan women is called *hasira* which is made of white silk, and embroidered with silver and gold thread. Also, they wear heavy neck golden pieces that reach to the knees, and gold cuffs adorn the wrists.
- Henna Day is essential before the wedding, where women from the community will be invited and gathered to have henna designs along with the bride.
- Traditional Libyan women's clothing is designed to be modest and conservative, while also showcasing the beauty and craftsmanship of the local culture.



Women Traditional Dress



Bridal Clothing



Heritage Dress



Women Traditional Dre

Men Traditional Cloth

- Libyan men prefer to wear their traditional costumes on special occasions such as Friday prayers, wedding ceremonies, holidays, and Ramadan.
- Traditional men's clothing are long "*tunic"* and long pants- "*sirwal"* and vest "*sadriyia"* is made from black silk and fastened at the front with buttons. The *thobe*, a long loose fitting garment with full sleeves and a collar, the bisht, a long flowing cloak made from wool or camel hair, the agal, a type of headband or bandana worn around the head to hold the *ghutrah* in place.
- Libyan men prefer to wear their traditional costumes on special occasions such as Friday prayers, wedding ceremonies, holidays, and Ramadan.



Libyan Traditional Costume



Libyan Men in National Attire



Libyan Men in Traditional Dress

10.9: Libya is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **7.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

10.10: Assessment

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Review what you have learned in this chapter.

Activities

Part 1

Part 2

Listen to the text. Then read and answer the questions.

0:00 / 0:53

مَطعَمُ علي بابا

أَذْهَبُ إلى مَطْعَمِ علي بابا مَعَ أُسْرَتي. مَطْعَمُ علي بابا في شارِعِ بَغداد قريب مِنْ بَيْتي. أبي يُريدُ صَحْنَ كَباب وأُرُز وَسَلَطَة. أُخْتي تُحبُّ الشاوِرما، هيَ تُريدُ صحنَ لَحْمِ شاوُرْما مَعَ صَحنِ حُمُّص وَخُبْزِ حار، وتشربُ كوبَ عَصيرِ بُرتُقال بارِد. أَخي يريدُ سَمك حار وَأُرُز أَصْفَر مَع خُضار، وَ يَشْرَبُ كولا. أمّي تُحِبُّ صحنَ خُضار وأُرُز وسلطة وَتَشْرَبُ عصير مانجو. بعدَ ذلِك نَشْرَبُ قَهوة عربيَّة معَ حَلوى عَرَبيَّة.

10.10: Assessment is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **6.1: Letters** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

The Marker of "Shadda"الشدة

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

Introduction

Shaddah (شَدّة) is an important concept in Arabic pronunciation that you'll encounter early on in your learning journey. Here's a simple explanation:

"Shadda" is an Arabic word, and it means strength. "Shadda" is one of the diacritical marks, and it doubles the consonant it is written on. The first consonant has no vowel, and the second carries one of the diacritical marks except "Sukoon." The technique of pronouncing the consonant with "Shadda" is to stress it, like stressing the letter T in the English word "Skittle" and stressing the letter Z in the word "Sizzle." "Shadda" can carry the short vowels and Tanween. The shape of "Shadda" is a small w above the letter.

What is Shaddah?

Shaddah (شَدّة) is a small symbol that looks like a tiny "w" placed above a letter. It indicates that the letter is **doubled**. In other words, the letter with a Shaddah is pronounced twice in quick succession, as if you're saying it once, holding it briefly, and then saying it again.

Why is Shaddah Important?

In Arabic, the meaning of a word can change completely depending on how a letter is pronounced. The Shaddah helps to clarify pronunciation, ensuring that the word is spoken correctly. For example:

- **كَتَب** (kataba) means "he wrote."
- **كَتَّبَ** (kattaba) means "he made someone write."

Notice how the Shaddah on the letter **ت** in the second word doubles its sound and changes the meaning entirely.

How to Pronounce a Letter with Shaddah

Let's take the letter **م** as an example. Without a Shaddah, you'd simply pronounce it as "**m**." But with a Shaddah (مّ), you pronounce it like this:

1. **M** – Hold the sound for a tiny bit longer than usual.
2. **M** – Then, say the sound again.

So, if you see the word **أمّ**, which means "mother," you'd pronounce the **مّ** as "mm," almost like you're holding onto the sound briefly before moving on.

Practice Tip

Whenever you see the Shaddah symbol, pause slightly on that letter and pronounce it as two of the same letter. It may feel a bit strange at first, but with practice, it will become more natural. You should know that the first letter in the Arabic word can't hold "Shaddah," and long vowels can't carry "Shadda," but the letter before can do.

Understanding Shaddah will help you read and speak Arabic more accurately, so take your time to get comfortable with it!

Activities

The Marker of "Shadda"الشدة is shared under a not declared license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

11: At The University

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Learn the definite article in the Arabic language.
- Use the "Nisba" adjective and root
- Learn new vocabulary about school subjects and days of the week
- Talk about your school
- Recognize the Moon and the Sun letters.
- Learn about Morocco and Sudan's cultures, historical places, traditional food, and clothes.

11.1: أ (Hamzat Alwasel) and آ (Alif Maddah)
11.2: The Arabic Definite Article (الـ) لام التعريف
11.3: The Nisba Adjective النِّسبَة
11.4: Vocabulary
11.5: Days of The Week
11.6: Dialog - What do you study?
11.7: Reading Text
11.8: Sudan
11.9: kingdom of Morocco
11.10: Assessment

11: At The University is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

11.1: ٱ (Hamzat Alwasel) and ٓ (Alif Maddah)

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn همزة الوصل "ٱ" Hamzat Alwasel.
- Learn Alif Maddah أَلِف مدَّة "آ".

همزة الوصل "ٱ" Hamzat Alwasel

- What is همزة الوصل "ٱ" Hamzat Alwasel?

In chapter four, we learned the words "ابنة","ابن" and "اسم." In these examples, the words are started with همزة الوصل "HamzatAlwasel." This form of Hamza appears at the beginning of a word. همزة الوصل Hamzat "Alwasel meaning" is a hamza that connects or joins. It is a non-phonemic glottal stop produced automatically only if at the beginning of an utterance; otherwise, it is written yet not pronounced. همزة الوصل "ٱ" Hamzat Alwasel is written with an alif carrying a Waslah sign, which is a small letter صـ on top of it ٱ. Also, it can be written with a plain Ailf without the Waslah sign.

- Why we use همزة الوصل "ٱ" Hamzat Alwasel?

Some words are not written with a short vowel on the first letter, like "اسْم," and starting a word with Sukoon السكون is not permissible in Arabic. So, we use an extra Hamza at the beginning of the word. This extra tool is called همزة "ٱ" الوصل Hamzat Alwasel.

- This form of Hamza appears at the beginning of a word, but if preceded by some word or letter, it is not pronounced, even if it is written.
- You should know that همزة الوصل "ٱ" Hamzat Alwasel is different from the consonant hamza همزة القطع "ئ ؤ أ ء" Hamzat Alkat'a.
- همزة القطع "ئ ؤ أ ء" Hamzat Alkat'a comes at the beginning, middle, or end of the word. It is pronounced with Sukoon and the short and long vowels.

Please read and listen to the following examples.

همزة الوصل in action

Audio	Meaning in English	Example	Words with همزة الوصل
0:00 / 0:04		بَشيرٌ اِبْنُ أَخي	اِبْنٌ
0:00 / 0:04		رَنا اِبْنَةُ أُخْتي	اِبْنَةٌ
0:00 / 0:02		ما اِسْمُك؟	اِسْمٌ
0:00 / 0:02		واحِد وَاِثنان	اِثنان

Alif Maddah آ

You should know that a long vowel Alif can follow the consonant Hamza, like the word آمين. The Combination can happen at any part of the word, and it is pronounced as Hamza and Alif(آ =ا + ء). Alif Maddah آ means to stretch the sound, which only happens with an Alif.

Please read and listen to the following examples.

ألف مدَّة

Audio	Meaning in English	Words with ألف مدّة
0:00 / 0:02	ne) e)	آسِف آسْفَة
0:00 / 0:01		آمين
0:00 / 0:01		قُرآن
0:00 / 0:02		الآن
0:00 / 0:00		آكُلُ

11.1: أ (Hamzat Alwasel) and آ (Alif Maddah) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **8.1: Adjectives in Arabic (Masculine and Feminine)** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

11.2: The Arabic Definite Article (الـ) لام التعريف

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Identify the definite article "الـ."
- Differentiate between the Moon and Sun definite articles "الـ."
- Differentiate between and form definite and indefinite nouns.

In this section, you will learn about the article specifying the nouns in Arabic. English has one definite article: the, which indicates a specific noun. Also, Arabic has one definite article: الـ,(AL). The definite article in Arabic is a prefix attached to the beginning of the noun. The definite article consists of two letters Hamza Alwasl and Laam with sukoon(الْـ). Hamza Alwasl is pronounced with fataha, and you do not write the Hamza on the top of the Alif to differentiate the regular Hamza from Hamza Alwasl. Hamza Alwasl is used to pronounce the letter with sukun at the beginning of the word, so it is a tool to help pronounce the silent letter at the beginning of the word. The definite article in Arabic is attached to singular, dual and plural nouns. The definite article in Arabic is called Laam At-ta'areef ("لام التعريف" الـ).

Example 11.2.1

The building

In Arabic

الْبِنايَة

Definite vs. Indefinite

You will compare the definite article (الْـ) and the indefinite article Tanweenالتنوين.

Compare the definite article and indefinite article in Arabic

لام التعريف Definite Article	التّنوين Indefinite Article.
It is a prefix that is attached to the beginning of the noun	It is two identical short vowels comes at the end of the noun
It can accompany singular, dual, and plural nouns	It can accompany singular nouns and irregular plurals. It does not accompany dual and regular plurals nouns.
Indicates Hamza Alwasl and silent Laam	Indicates the short vowel and the sound of silent noon ()
It must be written or typed	It could be ignored in writing and sometimes in typing

Example 11.2.2

Listen to each word with a definite and an indefinite article.

Arabic words with definite and indefinite articles

Recording	Definite	Indefinite	Recording	Definite	Indefinite
0:00 / 0:00			0:00 / 0:00	الْأُسْرَةُ	أُسْرَةٌ
0:00 / 0:00			0:00 / 0:00		
0:00 / 0:00			0:00 / 0:00		
0:00 / 0:00			0:00 / 0:00		
0:00 / 0:00			0:00 / 0:00		

The pronunciation of the Definite Article الْ

The definite article in Arabic is pronounced in two ways and it depends on the letter that comes after it. The Laam in the definite article is pronounced silent Lamm if a group of letters follows, and it is called the Moon letters. The moon letters are 13 letters:

أ - ب - ج - ح - خ - ع - غ - ف - ق - ك - م - هـ - و - ي

However, the letter Laam will be dropped, and it won't be pronounced when it is followed by one of the sun letters. "Hamza Alwasl" همزة الوصل will be pronounced as أَ. The sun letters are 15 letters:

ت - ث - د - ذ- ر - ز - س - ش - ص- ض - ط - ظ - ل - ن

You should know the word sun in Arabic is شمس and the word moon is قَمَر. The word الشَّمْس is pronounced "أَشَّمْس" when it is attached to the definite article. The Laam in the definite article before the sun letters is mergerd with the first letter of the noun, and you pronounce the letter with the Shadda. The sun letter always carries a Shadda after the definite article الـ. Check these words:

Example 11.2.1

Listen to these words from right to left with the definite article الـ التعريف which is followed by a sun letter, and pay attention to the stressing sound with Shadda:

0:00 / 0:00

التِّلفِزْيونُ- الثِّيابُ - الدَّجاج - الزَّوج - السَّيارَةُ - الرَّماديُّ - الشّايُ - الصُّورَةُ - اللَّحمُ- النَّاديُّ

Important Rules:

You should always write the definite article التعريف الـ regardless if it is followed by a sun letter or a moon letter.

You should drop Hamza Alwasl when the definite article does not begin a sentence, and connect the end of the previous word with the beginning of the word that starts with the definite article. You drop Hamza Alwasl and connect the last letter to the proceed word to the silent Laam if the word starts with the moon letter. However, you drop Hamza Alwasl and the silent Laam if the word starts with the sun letter, and pay attention to the Shadda.

Check the examples:



Figure **11.2.1**: The new home البيتُ الجديد



Figure **11.2.3**: I like Chicken أحبُّ الدجاج



Figure **11.2.2**: I like the hot chicken أحبُّ الدجاج الحار

Listen to the pronunciation of the nouns in Alphabetical orders, and pay attention to the differences between moon and sun letters:

Exercise

Drag and drop the letters in the right box. Differentiate between the sun and moon letter.

11.2: The Arabic Definite Article (الـ) لام التعريف is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **8.4: The Arabic Definite Article (الـ) لام التعريف** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

11.3: The Nisba Adjective النِّسبَة

Learning Objectives

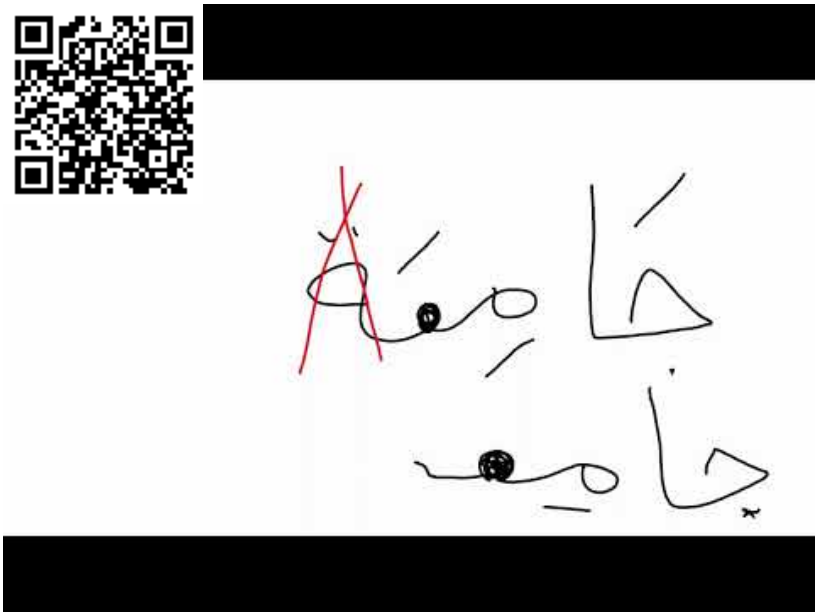
In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn and use the "Nisba" adjective.

Grammar Note 9.1: The Nisba Adjective النِّسبة

- Nisba adjective: is an adjective indicating the person's place of origin or affiliation.
- It is derived from a noun that refres to a city, country, region..etc
- It ends with suffix يّ for masculine مذكّر or يّة for feminine مؤنث
- Erase الـ then add يّ for masculine مذكّر or يّة for feminine مؤنث

Watch the video to learn more about Nisba adjectives:



Examples:

Check the table below and review the

Nouns with النسبة

Meaning	Nisba Adjective (feminine, singular)	Nisba Adjective (masculine, singular)	Meaning	Noun
French	فرنسية	فرنسيّ	France	فرنسا
American	أمريكيَّة	أمريكيّ	America	أمريكا
Syrian	سورية	سوريّ	Syria	سوريا
Iraqi	عراقية	عراقيّ	Iraq	العراق
Mexican	مَكسيكيَّة	مَكسيكيَّ	Mexico	المَكسيك
Arab/Arabic	عربيَّة	عربيّ	Arabs	عرب
University/Academic	جامِعيَّة	جامِعيّ	University	جامِعَة

11.3: The Nisba Adjective النِّسبَة is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **9.1: The Nisba Adjective** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

11.4: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- List the school subjects and supplies.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary

https://human.libretexts.org/@go/page/251281

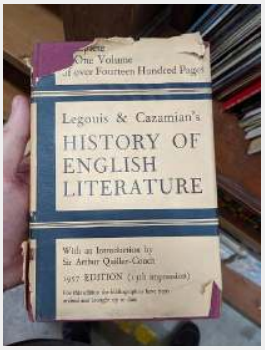
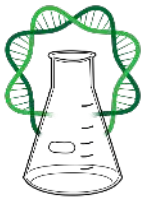
Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 مدسة	0:00 / 0:00		مدرسةٌ المدرسةُ
 (Universiجامعة	0:00 / 0:00		جامعةٌ الجامعةُ
	0:00 / 0:00		الأدب العربي
 English Literature; CC BY-SA 3.0	0:00 / 0:00		الأدب الإنجليزي
 Science; CC BY-SA 3.0	0:00 / 0:00		علومٌ العلومُ
 Sport; CC BY-SA 3.0	0:00 / 0:00		رياضةٌ الرياضةُ

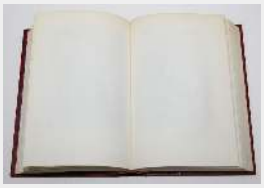
Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 Pen; CC BY-SA 3.0	0:00 / 0:00		قلمٌ الْـقَـلـمُ
 Eraser; CC BY-SA 3.0	0:00 / 0:00		مِمْحاةٌ الْمِمْحاةُ
 Ruler; CC BY-SA 4.0	0:00 / 0:00		مِسْطرَةٌ الْمِسْطرَةُ
 (Book)	0:00 / 0:00		كِـتابٌ الْـكِتابُ
 Notebook; CC0	0:00 / 0:00		دَفْـتـرٌ الدَّفْـتـرُ
 الدَّرس	0:00 / 0:01		دَرْسٌ الدَّرس
 Classroom	0:00 / 0:00		صَفٌّ الصَّف

Image	Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
 لغة	0:00 / 0:18		لُـغَةٌ اللُغَـةُ

Adverbs

Adverbs

Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
0:00 / 0:00	After	بَعْدَ
0:00 / 0:00	Before	قَـبْـلَ

Cognate

Meaning	Formal / Written
Chemistry	كيمياء
Physics	فيزياء
Geography	جغرافيا
Gology	جيولوجيا
Algebra	الجبر
Computer	كمبيوتر
Technology	التكنولوجيا
Electronic	الكترونية

11.4: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

11.5: Days of The Week

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn the days of the week.

Introduction

Understanding the days of the week is one of the foundational skills for learning any language, and it's an essential part of your everyday conversations. In Arabic-speaking cultures, the days of the week are not only important for planning your activities, but they also reflect certain cultural and religious practices that are unique to the Arab world.

In Arabic, the week starts on **Saturday** (السبت) and ends on **Friday** (الجمعة). Friday is the most important day of the week in many Arab countries, as it is considered a holy day for Muslims. On this day, the Jumu'ah (Friday prayer) is held, and many people gather with their families after attending the mosque. Because of this, **Friday** and **Saturday** often form the ***weekend*** in many Arabic-speaking countries, although this can vary depending on the region.

In this section, you will learn the names of the days of the week in Arabic, how they are used in daily conversations, and how the concept of the weekend might differ from what you are used to.

Days of the week أيّام الأسبوع

Day means **يَوم** in Arabic, and the name of each day is added to the word day in Arabic. Example: يَوم السَّبت

Check the table below to learn the meaning of the days in Arabic and how to pronounce them.

Days of the week

Pronunciation	Meaning	Formal / Written
0:00 / 0:00	Weekend	نهاية الأسبوع
0:00 / 0:00	Saturday	السبت
0:00 / 0:00	Sunday	الأحد
0:00 / 0:00	Monday	الاثنين
0:00 / 0:00	Tuesday	الثلاثاء
0:00 / 0:00	Wednesday	الأربعاء
0:00 / 0:00	Thursday	الخميس
0:00 / 0:00	Friday	الجمعة
0:00 / 0:00		الأسبوع
0:00 / 0:00		أيام

Watch the video to learn more about the days of the week.



How the days derived from numbers

- The first day of the week is الأحد. It is derived from the number One واحد.
- The second day of the week is الاثنين. It is derived from the number Two اثنين.
- The third day of the week is الثلاثاء. It is derived from the number three ثلاثة.
- The fourth day of the week is الأربعاء. It is derived from the number four أربعة.
- The fifth day of the week is الخميس. It is derived from the number five خمسة.
- The sixth day of the week is الجمعة. It is not derived from any number, but from the verb to gather.
- The seventh day of the week is السبت. It is derived from the number six سِتَّة.

11.5: Days of The Week is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

11.6: Dialog - What do you study?

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Ask and answer questions about school
- Talk about your school

Dialog # 1

Watch the dialogue between Hassan and Rana about school. Then practice the dialogue with your partner.



Dialog Text

English Meaning	Dialogue in Arabic
Hassan: Hello, Rana	حَسَن : السّلامُ عليكم يا رَنا
Rana: Hello, Hassan!	رَنا : وعلْيكُم السَّلام يا حَسَن
Hassan: How are you today?	حَسَن : كيْفَ حالُكِ اليَوْم؟
Rana: I am doing well, and you?	رَنا : أنا بِخَيْر، الحَمدُ للهِ، وَأنْتَ؟
Hassan: I am doing great, thank you. Which university do you attend?	حَسَن : أنا جَيْد، شُكْراً. أيْنَ تَدْرُسين؟
Rana: I am a student at the University of Baghdad. What about you?	رَنا : أَدرُسُ في جامِعَةِ بَغْداد، وأَنْتَ؟
Hassan: I am a student at the University of California – Los Angeles.	حَسَن : أَدْرُسُ في جامِعَةِ وِلايَةِ كاليفورنيا لوس أنْجلوس
Rana: What are you studying, Hassan?	رَنا : ماذا تَدْرُسُ يا حَسن؟
Hassan: I am studying chemistry. What about you, Rana?	حَسَن : أَدْرُسُ الكيمياء، وَماذا تَدْرُسين يا رَنا؟
Rana: I am studying computer science.	رَنا : أَدْرُسُ علومَ الكُمبيوتر
Hassan: Where do you live?	حَسَن : أَيْنَ تَسكنين؟
Rana: I live with my sister and brother in a small house on Nile Street.	رَنا : أَسكُنُ في بيْتٍ صغيرٍ مع أُختي وَأَخي في شارع النِّيل
Hassan: I live with my friends - Ahmad, Tom, and Jack - in a small apartment.	حَسَن : أَنا أَسْكُنُ معَ صَديقي أَحْمَد وَتَوم وجاك في شقة صغيرة
Rana: Are you employed?	رَنا : هل تَعمَل؟

English Meaning	Dialogue in Arabic
Hassan: I am unemployed and am a full-time student. What about you?	حَسَن : لا أعْمَلُ، أنا طالِب، وأنْتِ؟
Rana: I work at a sweets bakery.	رَنا : أنا أعملُ في دُكان حَلوى
Hassan: How nice! We will start eating sweets from your bakery then!	حَسَن : يا سلام، نأْكُل حلوى من عِندِ رَنا
Rana: Yalla, and drink tea as well!	رَنا : يلا، وَنَشْرَبُ شاي
Hassan: Thank you, Rana.	حَسَن : شكراً يا رَنا
Rana: You are welcome.	رَنا : عَفواً

11.6: Dialog - What do you study? is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **9.3: Dialogue and Reading** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

11.7: Reading Text

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Read simple and short text in Arabic about school.

Reading #1:

Listen and read the text of Dr. Zaid Ahmad introducing himself to his students in the first Arabic class meeting. Answer the questions and practice reading it.

0:00 / 0:00

الدكتور زيد أحمد

English	Arabic
Hello! Welcome to your Arabic language class. My name is Doctor Zaid Ahmad and I have a doctorate in the Arabic language. I work at the University of California – San Bernardino. I am originally from Najaf, Iraq, and I live in San Bernardino. My office is in the College of Humanities and Liberal Arts, directly before the College of Sciences. I am married, and I have a son and a daughter. My wife is also Iraqi - from the city of Baghdad - and is a professor of chemistry. My son, Rasool, is a student at the University of California – San Francisco, and he is studying English literature. He likes electronic games. My daughter, Ayat, is a student at the University of California–Fullerton, and she studies computer science. She reads a lot of books in Arabic and English. She lives in the city of Pomona with her grandmother.	السلام عليكم . أَهلاً وَسهلاً بكم في صفِ اللغة العربية. اسمي الدكتور زَيد أَحمد . أَنا دكتور لغة عربية وَ أُعْمَلُ في جامعةِ كاليفورنيا سان برناندينو. أنا مِنَ العراق مِن مَدينةِ النجف، وَأَسكُنُ في مدينَةِ سان برناندينو في ولاية كاليفورنيا. مَكتَبي في كليةِ الأداب قبلَ كلية العلوم أنا مُتَزوج وَ عِندي وَلد وَ بنت. زَوجتي عِراقية مِن مَدينة بَغداد وَهي أُستاذة كيمياء. اِبْني رَسول طالبٌ في جامعةِ كاليفورنيا سان فرانسيسكو، وَ هُو يدرسُ الأدب الأنجليزي. هُوَ يُحِبُّ الأَلْعاب الالكترونية. وابنتي آيات طالبة في جامعةِ كاليفورنيا فولرتن وَ هي تَدرسُ علم الحاسوب. هِيَ تَقرَأُ كُتُباً كثيرَة باللغةِ العربية والانجليزية. وَهِيَ تَسكنُ في مدينةِ بَمونا في ولاية كاليفورنيا معَ جَدَّتِها

Reading # 2:

Listen to the text, and then read Dania's presentation about herself in the Arabic language class. Answer the questions and practice reading it.

0:00 / 0:59

دانية سالم

English	Arabic
Hello and welcome! My name is Dania Salem, and I am from Lebanon. I live in a big house with my family in Dearborn, Michigan. I am a sophomore at Michigan State University, where I study Physics. My home is located near the University. I study the Arabic language three days a week: Monday, Wednesday, and Friday. On the weekend, on Saturday, I go with my friends to the mall, and I buy new book in Arabic or in Spanish, and I eat with my friends at the Mexican restaurant in the mall. At the end of the week, on Sunday, I write my homework, read my new book, and study my lessons.	مرحباً بكم أَنا دانية سالم. أَنا مِن لُبنان. وَأَسكنُ في بيتٍ كبيرٍ مَع عائِلَتي فِي مَدينةِ ديربون في وِلايةِ ميشيغن. وَأَنا طالبةٌ في جامعةِ وِلايةِ مشيغان كُلية الفيزياء. الجامعةُ قريبةٌ من بيتي. وَأَنا في السنةِ الثانيةِ في الجامعة. وأَدرسُ اللغة العربية ثلاثة أيام في الأسبوع : يومُ الاثنين وَيومُ الأربعاء وَيومُ الجمعة. في يوم الثلاثاء ويوم الخميس أذْهَبُ إلى النَّادي الرِّياضي في نهايَةِ الأسبوعِ، في يومِ السبتِ أذْهَبُ مع صديقاتي إلى المول (المركز التجاريّ) وأشتري كِتاب جَديد باللغة العربيّة أوالأسبانيّة، وَآكُلُ معَ صديقاتي في المطعمِ المَكسيكي في المول. في

English	Arabic
	نهاية الأسبوع، في يوم الأحد أكتُبُ واجِباتي واقرأُ الكِتاب الجديد، وأدرسُ دروسي

11.7: Reading Text is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **9.3: Dialogue and Reading** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

11.8: Sudan

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn about Sudan, its Geographic location, famous cities, most famous artifacts, and traditional food and clothes.

Facts to know about Sudan:

- Official Name: **Republic of the Sudan** - جمهورية السودان
- Capital: Khartoum
- Population: 47,958,856[i] (2022 estimate)
- Currency: *The Sudanese* pound - الجنيه السوداني
- Continent: Africa - أفريقيا
- Official Lagrange: Modern Standard Arabic -اللغة العربية الفصحى الحديثة- allughat alearabiat alfushaa alhaditha



Figure 11.8.1: Sudan. CC BY-SA 3.0

Geographical Location and Flag:

Sudan is the third-largest country in Africa, located in the northeastern part of the continent. It shares borders with seven countries: Egypt to the north, Libya to the northwest, Chad to the west, the Central African Republic to the southwest, South Sudan to the south, Ethiopia to the southeast, and Eritrea to the east. The northeastern border of Sudan is lined by the Red Sea, giving the country access to important maritime trade routes. Sudan's diverse geography includes the Nubian Desert in the north, fertile lands along the Nile River, and mountainous regions in the east and west. Sudan was the largest country in Africa before South Sudan gained independence in 2011; now Algeria holds that title.

The Nile River, which is central to Sudan’s geography, flows from south to north through the country, providing vital water resources for agriculture and sustaining the livelihoods of many Sudanese people. The Blue Nile and White Nile merge in the capital city of Khartoum, creating one of the world’s most significant river systems.

The flag of Sudan is a tricolor with three horizontal stripes: red on the top, white in the middle, and black on the bottom, with a green triangle based at the hoist side. The red stripe symbolizes the struggle for independence and the sacrifices made by the people, as well as Sudan's links to other Arab nations. The white stripe represents peace, light, and optimism, while the black stripe

stands for Sudan's identity as a nation of African heritage. The green triangle represents Islam, which is the dominant religion in Sudan, as well as agriculture, which is a crucial part of the country’s economy.

The flag, adopted on May 20, 1970, reflects Sudan’s rich history, diverse culture, and the aspirations of its people for unity, peace, and prosperity.



Sudan

Famous Cities in Sudan

Sudan, a country with a rich cultural heritage and diverse geography, is home to several cities that play significant roles in the nation’s history, economy, and culture. Each city offers a unique glimpse into Sudan's past and present, showcasing its importance in various aspects of Sudanese life.

- الخرطوم **Khartoum,** the capital and largest city of Sudan, is situated at the confluence of the Blue Nile and White Nile rivers. This strategic location has made Khartoum a vital center for trade, commerce, and administration. The city is known for its modern infrastructure, educational institutions, and cultural landmarks. The University of Khartoum, one of the oldest and most prestigious universities in Africa, is located here. Khartoum is also home to the National Museum of Sudan, which houses a vast collection of artifacts that reflect the country’s rich history. The city's blend of modernity and tradition, along with its diverse population, makes Khartoum the cultural and economic hub of Sudan.
- أم درمان **Omdurman,** located directly across the Nile from Khartoum, is Sudan’s largest city by population and is often considered the cultural heart of the nation. It is known for its historical significance as the site of the 1885 Battle of Omdurman, where the Mahdist forces defeated the British. The city is home to the tomb of the Mahdi, the leader of the Mahdist revolution, which remains a significant religious and historical site. Omdurman is also famous for its vibrant markets, particularly the Omdurman Souq, one of the largest and most bustling markets in Sudan, where one can find traditional crafts, spices, and textiles.
- بورتسودان **Port Sudan**, located on the northeastern coast along the Red Sea, is Sudan’s main seaport and a key gateway for international trade. The city is crucial for the country’s economy, handling the majority of Sudan's imports and exports, including oil, which is a significant part of the economy. Port Sudan is also a popular destination for diving and snorkeling enthusiasts due to its proximity to some of the most beautiful coral reefs in the Red Sea. The city’s infrastructure has been expanding rapidly, making it an important commercial and industrial center.
- كسلا **Kassala,** located near the border with Eritrea in eastern Sudan, is known for its stunning natural scenery and cultural diversity. The city is surrounded by the picturesque Taka Mountains, which provide a dramatic backdrop to the area. Kassala is a melting pot of various ethnic groups, including the Beja people, who have lived in the region for centuries. The city’s market is famous for its handicrafts, traditional clothing, and locally grown fruits. Kassala is also known for its religious significance, as it is home to the tomb of Sheikh Al-Makki, a revered Sufi leader.
- الأبيض **El Obeid**, the capital of North Kordofan state, is located in central Sudan and is an important agricultural and trading center. The city is known for its production of gum arabic, an essential export product for Sudan, as well as its livestock markets. El Obeid is also a hub for traditional Sudanese music and dance, particularly the vibrant Kordofanian cultural traditions. The city has a rich history and has been a center of Islamic learning for many years.
- نايالا **Nyala,** the capital of South Darfur, is one of the largest cities in western Sudan. It serves as a major center for trade and agriculture in the region. Nyala is particularly known for its agricultural products, including peanuts, sorghum, and millet, which are essential to the local economy. The city has faced challenges due to conflicts in the Darfur region, but it remains a vital economic and cultural center. Nyala's markets are famous for traditional Darfuri crafts and goods, and the city plays a crucial role in connecting the remote areas of Darfur with the rest of Sudan.

- **دنقلا Dongola,** located in northern Sudan along the Nile River, is one of the oldest cities in the country. It is the capital of the Northern State and is historically significant as a center of the ancient Nubian kingdom of Makuria. The city is known for its archaeological sites, including ancient temples, pyramids, and fortresses. Dongola is also an important agricultural region, benefiting from the fertile lands along the Nile, where dates, wheat, and vegetables are cultivated.

Each of these cities contributes to the diverse cultural and economic landscape of Sudan, reflecting the country's rich history, geographic diversity, and the resilience of its people. Whether through historical significance, economic importance, or cultural richness, these cities offer a unique insight into Sudan's identity and heritage.

Traditional Food

Sudanese cuisine is a reflection of the country's diverse cultural influences, incorporating elements from Arab, African, and Middle Eastern traditions. The food in Sudan is characterized by its use of simple, hearty ingredients, often seasoned with a variety of spices to create rich and flavorful dishes. Here are some of the most famous and traditional foods in Sudan:

- **Ful Medames** is a popular breakfast dish in Sudan, made from fava beans that are slow-cooked and mashed. The beans are typically flavored with garlic, lemon juice, olive oil, and spices, and served with flatbread. It is often garnished with fresh vegetables, onions, and boiled eggs. Ful Medames is a staple in many Sudanese households, providing a nutritious and filling start to the day.
- **Kisra** is a traditional Sudanese flatbread made from fermented sorghum or wheat flour. It is a staple food in Sudan, often served with stews or as a side dish. Kisra has a slightly sour taste due to the fermentation process and is similar in texture to a thin pancake or crepe. It is commonly used to scoop up food and is an essential part of Sudanese meals.
- **Asida** is a traditional Sudanese dish made from wheat or sorghum flour that is cooked into a dough-like consistency. It is often served with a savory sauce, such as mulah (a meat or vegetable stew), or with a sweet topping like honey or date syrup. Asida is a popular dish during religious festivals and family gatherings, and it is typically eaten with the hands.
- **Mulah** is a term used to describe various types of Sudanese stews, which are often served with kisra or asida. These stews can be made with a variety of ingredients, including meat, vegetables, and legumes. Common types of mulah include mulah bamya (okra stew) and mulah rob (a yogurt-based stew). The stews are typically seasoned with a blend of spices, giving them a rich and flavorful taste.
- **Gurasa** is a type of bread that resembles a thick pancake and is commonly served as a base for other dishes. It is made from wheat flour and is often topped with meat, vegetables, or stew. Gurasa is a versatile dish that can be eaten for breakfast, lunch, or dinner, and it is a popular street food in Sudan.
- **Dama** is a slow-cooked meat stew that is rich in flavor and often served with bread or rice. The stew is typically made with lamb or beef, cooked with tomatoes, onions, and a blend of spices such as cumin, coriander, and cinnamon. Dama is a comforting and hearty dish that is commonly enjoyed during family meals and special occasions.
- **Baid Hanoot**, also known as spiced eggs, is a popular snack or side dish in Sudan. The eggs are boiled and then coated with a mixture of spices, including cumin, coriander, and chili powder. They are often served with bread and make for a flavorful and satisfying bite.
- **Tamia**, also known as Sudanese falafel, is made from ground chickpeas or fava beans mixed with garlic, onions, and spices. The mixture is formed into balls and deep-fried until crispy. Tamia is typically served in pita bread with salad and tahini sauce, and it is a popular street food in Sudan.
- **Hilba** is a traditional Sudanese dessert made from fenugreek seeds, which are soaked and then mixed with sugar and spices to create a sweet, thick pudding. It is often served during special occasions and is loved for its unique flavor and texture.

Sudanese cuisine is not only delicious but also deeply rooted in the country's cultural heritage. These traditional foods are enjoyed by people of all backgrounds in Sudan and play an important role in bringing families and communities together during meals and celebrations.



Traditional Sudanese foods: Ful Medames, Kisra, and Tamia

Traditional Clothing in Sudan

Sudanese traditional clothing reflects the country's rich cultural diversity, with various ethnic groups and regions having their own distinct styles. These garments are not only functional, designed to suit the hot and arid climate of Sudan, but they also carry deep cultural significance and are often worn during special occasions, ceremonies, and everyday life.

For Men

- **Jalabiya:** The most common traditional attire for Sudanese men is the **Jalabiya**, a long, loose-fitting robe that typically reaches down to the ankles. The Jalabiya is usually made from light cotton or linen, making it ideal for the hot climate. It is traditionally white, although other light colors such as beige or gray are also worn. The simplicity of the Jalabiya allows for comfort and ease of movement, which is essential in Sudan's warm weather.
- **Turban:** Along with the Jalabiya, men often wear a **Turban** (known locally as an **Immah**). The turban is a long piece of cloth wrapped around the head, serving both as a protection from the sun and as a cultural symbol. The way a turban is wrapped can vary by region and personal preference, and it often complements the Jalabiya.
- **Sandal:** Traditional leather sandals, known as **Markoob**, are typically worn with the Jalabiya. These sandals are durable and comfortable, suitable for walking long distances in the hot climate.

For Women

- **Thobe:** The **Thobe** (also spelled **Toub**) is the traditional attire for Sudanese women, particularly in the northern and central regions. It is a large, flowing piece of fabric, usually about four meters long, that is wrapped around the body and draped over the shoulders. The Thobe covers the entire body, providing modesty and protection from the sun. It comes in a variety of colors and patterns, ranging from simple, solid colors for everyday wear to brightly colored or elaborately patterned designs for special occasions like weddings and celebrations.
- **Headscarf:** Women also typically wear a **Headscarf** or **Hijab** to cover their hair, which is often coordinated with the Thobe. The headscarf is an essential part of the traditional dress, reflecting cultural and religious values.
- **Jewelry:** Sudanese women often adorn themselves with traditional jewelry, particularly gold necklaces, bracelets, and earrings. Jewelry is an important part of a woman’s attire, especially during weddings and festive occasions, symbolizing beauty, wealth, and status.

Regional Variations

In addition to these common garments, Sudanese traditional clothing varies significantly across different regions and ethnic groups. For example, in the Darfur and Kordofan regions, men and women may wear more colorful and intricately designed clothing, reflecting the cultural heritage of the local communities. Similarly, in eastern Sudan, the Beja people have their own distinct style of dress, with men wearing brightly colored wraps called **Zayrah** and women donning colorful headscarves and jewelry.

Modern Adaptations

While traditional clothing remains important in Sudanese culture, modern influences have also led to adaptations in style. Many Sudanese now incorporate elements of Western fashion into their traditional attire, particularly in urban areas. However, traditional

garments like the Jalabiya and Thobe continue to be worn widely, especially during religious holidays, weddings, and other cultural events.

In summary, Sudanese traditional clothing is a vibrant expression of the country's cultural identity, reflecting its diverse heritage, values, and way of life. Whether through the elegant drape of a woman's Thobe or the simplicity of a man's Jalabiya, these garments are an integral part of Sudanese society, embodying both tradition and beauty.



Traditional Men Clothing; CC BY 2.0



Traditional Woman Clothing; CC BY 2.0



Traditional Clothing in Sudan

Conclusion

Sudan is a country rich in cultural diversity, history, and tradition, where the blend of African and Arab influences is reflected in every aspect of life, from its traditional clothing and cuisine to its vibrant cities and landscapes. Despite challenges, Sudan remains a land of resilience and warmth, where deep-rooted customs coexist with a growing drive towards modernization. The nation's cultural heritage, natural beauty, and the enduring spirit of its people make Sudan a unique and fascinating place within the African continent.

Activities

11.8: Sudan is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **9.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

11.9: kingdom of Morocco

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will:

- Learn about Morocco, its geographical location, most famous cities, its most famous artifacts, its traditional food and clothes

Kingdom of Morocco - المملكة المغربية



Kingdom of Morocco
;
CC BY-SA 3.0

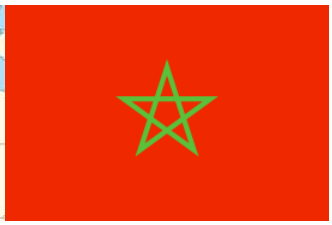
Facts to know about Kingdom of Morocco

- Official Name: Kingdom of Morocco- Al- Mamlakah Al-Maghribiyyah- المملكة المغربية
- Capital: Rabat- الرباط
- Population: 37.34 million(2021)
- Currency: Moroccan Dirham- الدرهم المغربي
- Continent: Africa- أفريقيا
- Official Language: Modern Standard Arabic & The Amazigh Language - اللغة العربية واللغة الأمازيغية

1.1 Geographical Location & Flag



Morocco Location; CC BY-SA 3.0



Moroccan Flag

Kingdom of Morocco is a country located in North Africa. It is bordered by the Mediterranean Sea to the north and the Atlantic Ocean to the west, and it shares borders with Algeria to the east and Mauritania to the south. Morocco has a rich history and culture, with influences from a variety of different civilizations, including the Phoenician, Romans, and Arabs. The country is known for its beautiful beaches, vibrant cities, and stunning landscapes, including the Atlas Mountains and the Sahara Desert. The official language of Morocco is Arabic, but French is also widely spoken. Amazigh Language is the other Official Language in morocco. Rabat is the capital of Morocco.

1.2 Most Famous Cities



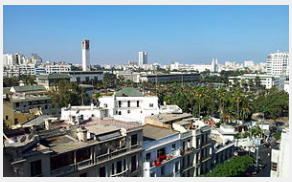
Morocco are considered the gate to North Africa. There are many amazing cities that are a mixture of African, European and Middle Eastern beautiful culture. some of these charming cities are Casablanca, Rabat, Fes, Marrakesh, and Meknes.



Morocco Map; public domain

Most Famous Cities in Morocco

https://human.libretexts.org/@go/page/251278

City Name in English	City Name in Arabic	Pronunciation	Image
Rabat	الرباط	Alribat	 Rabat; public domain
Casablanca	الدار البيضاء	Al daar albaydaa	 Casablanca; CC BY-SA 2.0
Fes	فاس	Fas	 Fes; CC BY-SA 3.0
Marrakesh	مراكش	Marakish	 Marrakesh; CC BY-SA 3.0
Meknes	مكناس	Miknas	 Meknes;CC BY-SA 3.0

1.3 Most Famous Artifacts

Morocco is well known to be home for many ancient cities, historic sites, and stunning places. Some of the amazing historic sites in Morocco are the following:

1. Citadel of Ait Ben-Haddou

The Citadel of Ait Ben-Haddou is located in the south of Moroccan town named Ouarzazate. It has been built in the 11th century and most of the buildings and maze-like streets are from the 17th century. It was an important trading center to connect ancient Sudan with Morocco on Saharan trade route.

2. Hassan Tower

The Hassan Tower in Rabat is a 140-foot red stone minaret that built during the reign of the Almohad Dynasty in 1184AD. It was believed to be one of the largest mosques on earth, but the mosque construction stopped when the sultan died and what was built of the mosque was demolished by an earthquake in 1755.

3. Volubilis

Volubilis is one of the most ancient Roman city near Meknes city that was built in 25BC. The population of Volubilis were a diverse residents including Syrians, Spaniards, Jews, and Africans. Triumphal Arch is one of the most famous Structure of Volubilis which was build for the Roman emperor at his death in 217AD.

4. El Badi Palace

El Badi Palace is considered one of the most spectacular royal palace in the world located in the centre of Marrakesh. it was built in the 16th century by sultan Ahmad al Mansur of the Saadi Dynasty. It took about 25 years to be built. This majestic palace was renowned for its opulence with hundreds of marble columns and intricate carving coverings its walls. However, over time it fell into disrepair and today only ruins remain. despite this, it is still a popular tourist attraction and is a symbol of thecity's rich history.

5. Essaouira

Essaouria is an amazing Moroccan city located on the Atlantic coast of Morocco. the city is influenced by different cultures over the centuries including Phoenician, Romans, and Portuguese. It is a Popular tourist destination with its charming streets, beautiful beaches, and vibrant arts and crafts scene.

1.4 Most Popular Food in Morocco

There are many popular foods in morocco. some of the most well-known dishes includes Couscous, Harrira, Pastilla, and B'stills

Most Famous Food in Morocco

Food in English	Food in Arabic	Ingredients	Image
Couscous	كسكس		 Couscous; CC BY-SA 4.0
Harrira	حريرة		File:حريرة.jpg Harrira; CC BY-SA 4.0
Pastilla	بسطيلة		File:بسطيلة د الحوت.jpg Pastilla; CC BY-SA 4.0
Tagine	طاجين		File:Tagín de sardiens al fron (1).png Tagine; CC BY-SA 2.0
Zaalouk	زعلوق		File:Zaaluk.jpg Zaalouk; CC BY 2.0

1.5 Traditional Clothing in Morocco

Women Traditional Clothing

Traditional women's clothing in Morocco varies depending on the region, but one common element is the use of bright, colorful fabrics and intricate embroidery. In some areas, women wear dresses or skirts with embroidered tops and headscarves, while in others they may wear long, flowing djellabas- robe like garments- with intricate embroidery and beadwork. these garments are often made form locally-sourced materials such as wool or cotton, and the embroidery is typically done by hand using traditional techniques. Overall, traditional Moroccan Womens' clothing is designed to be comfortable and practical, while also showcasing the beauty and craftsmanship of the local culture.

Men Traditional Clothing

Traditional men's clothing in Morocco varies depending on the region and occasion, but some common Elements include the djellabas, a long loose fitting garment with full sleeves and a hood; the "Gandora" a long flowing robe-like garment with full sleeves and a hood, the burnous, a long hooded cloak made from wool or camel hair, the kaftan, a long, flowing tunic with full sleeves and a narrow collar, and the barouche, type of Slipper or sandal typically made from leather or fabric. these garments are made from locally sourced materials and may be decorated with intricate embroidery. they are typically worn with a belt or sash around the waist. Overall, traditional Moroccan men's clothing is designed to be comfortable and practical while also showcasing the local culture's beauty and craftsmanship



Figure **11.9.1**: Moroccans' Traditional Clothes for Men and Women. (CC BY-SA 4.0)

Activities

11.9: kingdom of Morocco is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **8.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

11.10: Assessment

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Review what you have learned in this chapter.

Activities

Dialog Practice

Read Ali and Sara's dialogue about school. Then, answer the questions and practice the dialogue with your partner.

Dialog Ali and Sara

English	Transliteration	Arabic
Ali: Hello, Sara! How are you today?	**Ali:** Marhaban ya Sara! Kayfa haluki al-yawm?	**علي:** مرحبًا يا سارة! كيف حالكِ اليوم؟
Sara: Hello, Ali! I'm fine, thank you. And you?	**Sara:** Marhaban ya Ali! Ana bikhayr, shukran. Wa anta?	**سارة:** مرحبًا يا علي! أنا بخير، شكرًا. وأنتَ؟
Ali: I'm fine, thank God. Are you going to school today?	**Ali:** Ana bikhayr, al-hamdu lillah. Hal tadhabeen ila al-madrasa al-yawm?	**علي:** أنا بخير، الحمد لله. هل تذهبين إلى المدرسة اليوم؟
Sara: Yes, I am going to school. I have a lesson in Arabic literature today.	**Sara:** Na‘am, adhhabu ila al-madrasa. ‘Indi dars fi al-adab al-‘arabi al-yawm.	**سارة:** نعم، أذهبُ إلى المدرسة. عندي درس في الأدب العربي اليوم
Ali: Good! I love Arabic literature. Are you studying English literature?	**Ali:** Jayyid! Ana uhibb al-adab al-‘arabi. Hal tadruseen al-adab al-inglizi?	**علي:** جيد! أنا أحب الأدب العربي. هل تدرسين الأدب الإنجليزي؟
Sara: Yes, I am studying English literature in class.	**Sara:** Na‘am, adrusu al-adab al-inglizi fi al-saff.	**سارة:** نعم، أدرسُ الأدب الإنجليزي في الصَّف
Ali: What about science? Are you studying science today?	**Ali:** Madha ‘an al-‘ulum? Hal tadruseen al-‘ulum al-yawm?	**علي:** ماذا عن العلوم؟ هل تدرسين العلوم اليوم؟
Sara: No, I study science on Thursday. What about you, Ali? What are you studying today?	**Sara:** La, adrusu al-‘ulum fi yawm al-khamees. Madha ‘anka ya Ali? Madha tadrusu al-yawm?	**سارة:** لا، أدرس العلوم في يوم الخميس. ماذا عنك يا علي؟ ماذا تدرسُ اليوم؟
Ali: I am studying sports. Do you have a pen and an eraser with you?	**Ali:** Adrusu al-riyada. Hal ma‘aki qalaman wa mimhatan?	**علي:** أدرسُ الرياضة. هل معكِ قلمًا وممحاةً؟
Sara: Yes, I have a pen, an eraser, a ruler, and a notebook with me. And you?	**Sara:** Na‘am, ma‘i qalam, mimhat, mistara, wa daftar. Wa anta?	**سارة:** نعم، معي قلم، مِمحاة، مِسطرة، ودفترَ. وأنتَ؟
Ali: I have a new book in Arabic language.	**Ali:** Ma‘i kitabun jadidun fi al-lugha al-‘arabiyya.	**علي:** معي كِتابٌ جديدٌ في اللُّغَة العربية
Sara: Yes, and I love the Arabic language lesson.	**Sara:** Na‘am, wa ana uhibbu darsa al-lugha al-‘arabiyya.	**سارة:** نعم، وأنا أحب درسَ اللُّغَةِ العربية

Answer these questions:

11.10: Assessment is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

12: Living and Working

Learning Objectives

In this chapter, you will be able to:

- Create a basic conversation related to work and profession.
- Introduce yourself and others and provide basic personal information.
- Learn about the Singular, Dual, and Plural rules of Arabic.
- Learn these verbs (to work, to write, and to read) in the present tense.
- Learn about Tunisia and Algeria, historical places, traditional food, and clothes.

12.1: Roots الجذور
12.2: Duals in Arabic
12.3: Plurals In Arabic الجمع
12.4: Vocabulary
12.5: New Verbs (work, write, and read)
12.6: Dual and Plural Subject Pronouns
12.7: Dialogue and Reading
12.8: Reading Text
12.9: Tunisia
12.10: Algeria

12: Living and Working is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.1: Roots الجذورو

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Derive the root words from given words.
- Learn these verbs (to read and to write)

Grammar Note: Roots الجذور

The Arabic language is renowned for its rich, complex structure, and at the heart of this structure lies the concept of "roots." Arabic roots are the foundational building blocks of the language, typically consisting of three consonants, though sometimes two or four. These roots convey a core meaning that is expanded and modified through various patterns and affixes to form a wide array of related words.

- For example, the root **"ك-ت-ب" (k-t-b)** carries the basic meaning of "writing." From this root, words like **"كتاب" (kitaab)** meaning "book," **"كاتب" (kaatib)** meaning "writer," and **"مكتبة" (maktaba)** meaning "library" are derived. Understanding these roots allows learners to unlock the meaning of unfamiliar words, as they can often infer a word's meaning by recognizing the root and its pattern.
- Another example of an Arabic root is **"ع-ل-م" (ʿ-l-m)**, which relates to the concept of "knowledge" or "learning."

  From this root, a variety of words are derived:

  - **"علم" (ʿilm)** – meaning "knowledge" or "science."
  - **"عالم" (ʿaalim)** – meaning "scholar" or "scientist."
  - **"معلّم" (muʿallim)** – meaning "teacher."
  - **"تعليم" (taʿleem)** – meaning "education" or "instruction."

  In this way, the root "ع-ل-م" serves as the foundation for a wide range of words that all relate to knowledge, learning, and teaching. By recognizing this root, learners can easily connect these words and understand their meanings, even when encountering them for the first time. This not only aids in vocabulary building but also deepens one's understanding of how the Arabic language is structured and how meaning is constructed within it.

- The Arabic root **"ع-م-ل" (ʿa-m-l)** is associated with the concept of "work" or "action." This root can be used to form various words related to working, doing, or performing actions.

  Here are a few examples:

  - **"عمل" (ʿamal)** – This word directly means "work" or "job."
    - **Root:** ع-م-ل (ʿa-m-l)
  - **"عامل" (ʿaamil)** – This means "worker" or "laborer."
    - **Root:** ع-م-ل (ʿa-m-l)
  - **"مُعاملة" (muʿaamala)** – This word means "treatment" or "dealing."
    - **Root:** ع-م-ل (ʿa-m-l)

To find the root in these words, you would:

- Remove any prefixes such as "مـ" (mu-), "فـ" (fa-).
- Remove any suffixes such as "ـة" (-a), "ـي" (-i).
- Identify the three main consonants that remain, which in this case are **ع-م-ل (ʿa-m-l)**.

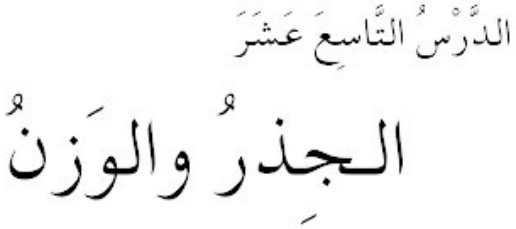
Understanding the root **"ع-م-ل"** helps in recognizing and understanding words related to work, action, or performing tasks, thus expanding vocabulary and comprehension in Arabic.

Important Notes:

- Arabic words are derived from a simple root words "root" جذر set of sequence of consonants letters that contain the base meaning of the word.
- The root is the three important letters in the word.
- The Arabic dictionaries are organized according to the roots. For example, to find out the meaning of an Arabic word in the dictionary, you have to find the root of that word.
- Every Arabic word (noun, verb, adjective, etc) has a root of three letters.
- For example, from the three-letter root ك-ت-ب, all of these words are derived, and many more as well. الكتت، الكتاب، مكتبة، الكتابة، يكتب، تكتبون، كاتب، مكاتب، كتيب

Watch the following video about the Arabic Roots





Finding roots in Arabic is a fundamental skill that can greatly enhance your understanding of the language. To identify the root of an Arabic word, you typically need to strip away any prefixes, suffixes, and infixes that have been added to the base form of the word. Most Arabic roots consist of three consonants, though some may have two or four.

For example, to find the root of the word **"مكتبة" (maktaba)**, which means "library," you would remove the prefix **"مـ" (ma-)** and the suffix **"ـة" (-a)**, leaving you with the root **"ك-ت-ب" (k-t-b)**, which relates to the concept of writing.

Understanding common patterns and forms in Arabic, such as the ones used to create nouns, verbs, and adjectives, can also help in identifying the root. As you become more familiar with these patterns, you will be able to quickly recognize the root in new words, allowing you to infer meanings and build your vocabulary more effectively.

Activities

12.1: Roots الجذورو is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **9.4: Roots الجذورو, New Verbs (to read, to write)** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

12.2: Duals in Arabic

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn the Dual nouns and adjectives using suffixes.
- Use Duals depending on different grammatical cases.

10.1.1. Arabic Nouns and Adjectives

When it comes to **nouns** and **adjectives**, Arabic has three forms: the **Singular**, the **Dual**, and the **Plural**. The **Singular** is used to refer to just one person or thing. The **Dual** is used to refer to two people or things. The **Plural** is used to refer to three or more people or things. The Dual and the Plural end in certain letters that denote the number of people or objects (suffixes). This section introduces **The Dual** with its suffixes and uses.

10.1.1.1. The Dual

- The Dual (المثنّى) is formed by adding either the letters ان- or ين- to the end of the word in nouns and adjectives depending on the grammatical case of the word.
- If the word ends in a Taa' Marbouta (ة) تاء مربوطة, as is the case in feminine nouns and adjectives, the Taa' Marbouta (ة) is changed to ت and then the prefix ان- or ين- are added depending on the grammatical case of the word.
- (ان) is used in nominative case nouns, and (ين) is used in accusative and genitive cases.

Arabic Cases: The last letter of the word will change to a different vowel as a result of a certain rule.

- A word in the nominative case will end with a Dammah الضمة or Tanween Damm تنوين الضم.
- A word in the accusative case will end with a Fataha الفتحة or Tanween Alfatah تنوين الفتح.
- A word in the genitive case will end with a Kasrah الكسرة or Tanween Alkasar تنوين الكسر.

The details of how and when to use these suffixes are explained in the table below.

This table illustrates how to use the different suffixes of Dual Nouns/Adjectives:

The Dual Letters in Arabic	Pronunciation	When to Use	Example	Recording
ان	'aan	Used in nominative-case nouns/adjectives that don't end in ة (usually masculine nouns/adjectives)	مهندسٌ ← مهندسَان المهندسُ ← المهندسَان	0:00 / 0:00
ين	'een	Used in accusative and genitive-case nouns/adjectives that don't end in ة (usually masculine nouns/adjectives)	مهندساً ← مهندسَين المهندسَ ← المهندسَين مهندسٍ ← مهندسَين المهندسِ ← المهندسَين	0:00 / 0:00
ان	taan	Used in nominative-case nouns/adjectives that end in ة (usually masculine nouns/adjectives)	مترجمةٌ ← مترجمتَان المترجمةُ ← المترجمتَان	0:00 / 0:00
ين	tayn	Used in accusative and genitive-case nouns/adjectives that end in ة (usually feminine nouns/adjectives)	مترجمةً ← المترجمتَين المترجمةَ ← المترجمتَين مترجمةٍ ← مترجمتَين المترجمةِ ← المترجمتَين	0:00 / 0:00

The video below presents the Dual and how it is used in different grammatical cases:



10.1.2. Activities

Type in Arabic using this link (http://www.arabic-keyboard.org/) to do the exercises below:

12.2: Duals in Arabic is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.1: Duals in Arabic** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

12.3: Plurals In Arabic الجمع

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will:

- Learn how to form Plural nouns and adjectives using suffixes.
- Learn how to use Plurals depending on different grammatical cases.

10.4.1. The Plural

The Plural (الجمع) has two types in Arabic: Regular (Sound) Plural (جمع سالم) and Irregular (Broken) Plural (جمع تكسير). Regular Plural is itself divided into two types: Sound Masculine Plural (جمع مذكّر سالم) and Sound Feminine Plural (جمع مؤنّث سالم).

Sound Masculine Plural is formed by adding -ين/-ون to the end of the word in masculine nouns/adjectives depending on the grammatical case of the word.

Sound Feminine Plural is formed by adding -ات to the end of the word in feminine nouns/adjectives.

Broken Plural does not follow rules, but is formed by breaking the word and adding certain letters to it to make it plural.

This table illustrates how to use the different suffixes of Plural Nouns/Adjectives:

Type of Plural	The Plural Letters in Arabic	Pronunciation	When to Use	Example	Recording
Sound Masculine Plural	ون-	'oon	Used in nominative-case nouns/adjectives that don't end in ة (masculine nouns/adjectives)	مبرمجٌ ← مبرمج**ون** المبرمجُ ← المبرمج**ون**	0:00 / 0:00
Sound Masculine Plural	ين -	'een	Used in accusative and genitive-case nouns/adjectives that don't end in ة (masculine nouns/adjectives)	مبرمجاً ← مبرمج**ين** المبرمجَ ← المبرمج**ين** مبرمجٍ ← مبرمج**ين** المبرمجِ ← المبرمج**ين**	0:00 / 0:00
Sound Feminine Plural	ات-	aat	Used in all-case nouns/adjectives that end in ة (feminine nouns/adjectives)	عازفةٌ/ عازفةً/ عازفةٍ ← عازف**ات** العازفةُ/ العازفةَ/ العازفةِ ← العازف**ات** أستاذَة ← أستاذات طبيبة ← طبيبات	0:00 / 0:00
Broken Plural	Various letters	No specific pronunciation	No specific rule	أستاذ ←	0:00 / 0:00

				أساتذة عمل ← أعمال قاضي ← قضاة جيش ← جيوش ضابط ← ضبّاط طبيب/ طبيبة ← أطبّاء ملعب ← ملاعب	

The video below presents the types of Plural and how they are formed:



10.4.3. Activities

Type in Arabic using this link (http://www.arabic-keyboard.org/) to do the exercise below:

12.3: Plurals In Arabic الجمع is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.4: Plurals In Arabic** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

12.4: Vocabulary

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn new vocabulary about professions and jobs.
- Recognize words used in Arabic and English (Cognates).

Vocabulary

This table provides vocabulary related to work:

https://human.libretexts.org/@go/page/251287

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronunciation
 Work/Job	Work/Job	عَمَلْ	
 Profession/Career	Profession/Career	مِهنة	
 Employee	Employee	(m.) مُوظّف (f.) مُوظّفة	
 Worker/Laborer	Worker/Laborer	(m.) عامِل (f.) عامِلة	
 Engineering	Engineering	هَندَسة	
 Engineer	Engineer	(m.) مُهندس (f.) مُهندسة	
 Law	Law	مُحاماة	0:00 / 0:00
 Lawyer	Lawyer	(m.) مُحامي (f.) مُحامية	0:00 / 0:00

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronunciation
 Judge	Judge	قاضي (m./f.)	
 Police	Police	شُرطة	
 Police Officer	Police Officer	شُرطي (m.) شُرطيّة (f.)	
 Journalism	Journalism	صحافة	
 Journalist	Journalist	صحفي (m.) صحفيّة (f.)	
 Aviation	Aviation	طيران	
 Pilot	Pilot	طيّار (m./f.)	
 Military	Military	جيش	

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronunciation
 Soldier	Soldier	(m./f.) عَسكري	
 Military Officer	Military Officer	(m./f.) ضابط	
 Programming	Programming	بَرمجة	
 Programmer	Programmer	(m.) مُبرمج (f.) مُبرمجة	
 Translation	Translation	تَرجمة	
 Translator	Translator	(m.) مُترجم (f.) مُترجمة	
 Medicine	Medicine	طِبْ	
 Doctor	Doctor	(m.) طَبيب (f.) طَبيبة	

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronunciation
 Nurse	Nurse	(m.) مُمرّض (f.) مُمرّضة	
 Player	Player	(m.) لاعِب (f.) لاعِبة	
 Court/Field	Court/Field	مَلعَبْ	
 Music Playing	Music Playing	عَزْفْ	
 Musician	Musician	(m.) عازِف (f.) عازِفة	
 Driving	Driving	قيادة	
 Driver	Driver	(m.) سائِق (f.) سائِقة	
 Company	Company	شَرِكة	

Image	Meaning	Formal / Written	Pronunciation
 Teaching	Teaching	تَدريس	
 Teacher	Teacher	(m.) أُستاذ (f.) أُستاذَة	

Cognate

Some examples of cognate words are **Coffee**, **Cotton**, **Gazelle**, **Alcohol**, **Henna**, and **Jasmine**.

Cognate Word in English	Cognate Word in Arabic	Image	Recording of Pronunciation
Blogger	بلوغر (m./f.)	 Blogger	
YouTuber	يوتيوبر (m./f.)	 YouTuber	
Coffee	Qahwa/قهوة	 Coffee	
Cotton	Qutn/قطن	 Cotton	
Gazelle	Ghazaal/غزال	 Gazelle	0:00 / 0:00
Alcohol	Alkuhoul/الكحول	 Alcohol	
Jasmine	Yasameen/ياسمين	 Jasmine	

Activities

12.4: Vocabulary is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.2: Vocabulary** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.
- **2: Vocabulary** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

12.5: New Verbs (work, write, and read)

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Learn these verbs (to work, to read, and to write)

New Present Tense Verbs (To Work, To Read and to Write)

Study the verb to work in the table below.

English Meaning	Audio	Arabic Meaning
I work	0:00 / 0:00	أَعْمَلُ
We work	0:00 / 0:00	نَعْمَلُ
You work (Masculine/ Singular)	0:00 / 0:00	تَعْمَلُ
You work (Feminine/ Singular)	0:00 / 0:01	تَعْمَلير
You work (all)	0:00 / 0:01	تَعْمَلُور
He works	0:00 / 0:00	يَعْمَلُ
She works	0:00 / 0:00	تَعْمَلُ
They (all) work	0:00 / 0:01	يَعْمَلُور

Study the verb to write in the table below.

To Write

English Meaning	Audio	Arabic Meaning
I write	0:00 / 0:00	أَكْتُبُ
We write	0:00 / 0:01	نَكْتُبُ
You write (Masculine/ Singular)	0:00 / 0:01	تَكْتُبُ
You write (Feminine/ Singular)	0:00 / 0:01	تَكْتُبِير
You write (all)	0:00 / 0:02	تَكْتُبُور
He writes	0:00 / 0:01	يَكْتُبُ
She writes	0:00 / 0:01	تَكْتُبُ
They (all) write	0:00 / 0:01	يَكْتُبُور

Study the verb to read in the table below:

To Read, To Write

English Meaning	Audio	Arabic Meaning
I read	0:00 / 0:00	أَقْرَأُ
We read	0:00 / 0:01	نَقْرَأُ
You read (Masculine/ Singular)	0:00 / 0:00	تَقْرَأُ
You read (Feminine/ Singular)	0:00 / 0:01	تَقْرَئين
You read (all)	0:00 / 0:01	تَقْرَؤور
He reads	0:00 / 0:00	يَقْرَأُ
She reads	0:00 / 0:00	تَقْرَأُ
They (all) read	0:00 / 0:01	يَقْرَؤور

Activities

12.5: New Verbs (work, write, and read) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.6: Dual and Plural Subject Pronouns

Learning Objectives

- Objective 1
- Objective 2

Dual and Plural Separate Subject Personal Pronouns

Previously in **Chapter 2: Section 2.4: Grammar**, you were introduced to the following **Separate Subject Personal Pronouns**:

أنا - أنتِ - أنتَ - أنتُم - نحنُ - هو - هي - هُم.

In addition, in this chapter, you will be introduced to four more **Separate Subject Personal Pronouns**: أنتُما - هُما indicating dual personal pronouns, and هُنَّ - أنتُنَّ indicating feminine plural personal pronouns.

This table demonstrates the four Separate Subject Personal Pronouns:

Pronoun in Arabic	Pronoun in English	Number of People and Gender	Pronunciation
أنتُما	You both (two)	2nd person dual (masculine/feminine)	
أنتُنَّ	You all (f.)	2nd person plural (only feminine)	
هُما	They both (two)	3rd person dual (masculine/feminine)	
هُنَّ	They all (f.)	3rd person plural (only feminine)	

12.6: Dual and Plural Subject Pronouns is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.4: Plurals In Arabic** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

12.7: Dialogue and Reading

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be introduced to sample conversations in which you:

- Introduce yourself and be introduced to others.
- Talk about your profession and learn about others' professions.

Dialog 1

Watch the video: Mona and Salem met at the entrance of the university, and they started this conversation.



الحوار الأول: منى وسالم

English	الحوار بالعربي
Hello	مُنى: مرحباً
Hello	سالِم: أهلاً وسهلاً
How's everything?	مُنى: ما الأخبار؟
All right	سالِم: جيّدة
What do you do?	مُنى: ماذا تعمل؟
I work at Amazon. What do you do?	سالِم: أعمل في شركة أمازون، وأنتِ ماذا تعملين؟
I am an Uber driver	مُنى: أعمل سائقة أوبر
Great	سالِم: رائع
Thanks, that's nice of you	مُنى: شكراً، هذا من لطفك
You're welcome	سالِم: عفواً

Dialog 2

Watch the video: the dialogue between Jad, Salma, and Julian



Dialog 2:

English	الحوار بالعربي
Jad: Good evening, Salma	جاد: مساء الخير يا سلمى
Salma: Good evening, Jad. How are you?	سلمى: مساء النور يا جاد، كيف حالكَ؟
Jad: Fine, and you?	جاد: بخير، وأنتِ؟
Salma: Good. Is this your friend?	سلمى: بخير. هَل هذا صديقكَ؟
Jad: Yes, his name's Julian. Julian, this is my friend, Salma.	جاد: نعم، اسمه جوليان. جوليان، هذه صديقتي سلمى
Salma: Hello, Julian!	سلمى: مرحباً جوليان
Julian: Hello, Salma!	جوليان: مرحباً سلمى
Salma: How are you?	سلمى: كيف حالكَ؟
Julian: Good, thank God. How are you?	جوليان: بخير، الحمد لله. وأنتِ كيف حالكِ؟
Salma: Fine, thanks. What do you do, Julian?	سلمى: بخير، شكراً. ماذا تعمل يا جوليان؟
Julian: I am a professor at UCLA.	جوليان: أنا أستاذ في جامعة كاليفورنيا لوس آنجلوس
Salma: Really? My sister is a professor there, too.	سلمى: حقاً؟ أختي أستاذةٌ هناك أيضاً

English	الحوار بالعربي
Julian: And you, what do you do, Salma?	جوليان: وأنتِ ماذا تعملين يا سلمى؟
Salma: I am a journalist for Al Balad newspaper	سلمى: أنا صحفيّة في صحيفة البلد
Julian: This is great. Do you [two] want to go to a cafe to chat more?	جوليان: هذا رائع. هل تريدان الذهاب إلى مقهى لنتحدث أكثر؟
Jad: Of course	جاد: بالتأكيد
Salma: With pleasure!	سلمى: بكلّ سرور
Julian: Okay, let's go!	جوليان: حسناً، لنذهب

Aractivities

12.7: Dialogue and Reading is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.3: Dialouge and Reading** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

12.8: Reading Text

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will be able to:

- Review what you have learned in this chapter.

Activities

Reading 1

Listen and read the text about Professor Rami and his family. Then, practice reading the text and answer the questions.

0:00 / 0:00

الأستاذ رامي

English	Arabic
Rami has a small family. Rami is married and has a son and two daughters. Rami is a professor of Arabic language at the University of Damascus, and works as a translator for a large company. Rami's wife works as an employee at a trvel agent office in Damascus. Rami's son is a student at the University of Aleppo and is studying medicine. He does not work. Rami's eldest daughter is a university student studying law. She works for two days in a large law firm in Damascus. His young daughter is a student at the University of Beirut, studying electronic engineering. She doesn't work, she doesn't have time. Professor Rami goes to work at the university on Sundays, Tuesdays, and Thursdays. He works at the translation company on Mondays and Wednesdays. Rami loves translation very much. Rami doesn't work on Friday. He goes with his family to his father and mother's house on Friday. On Saturdays, Professor Rami watches American films and does not work	عند رامي أسرَةٌ صغيرَةٌ. رامي مُتَزَوْجٌ وعندهُ اِبْن وَبِنْتان. رامي أستاذُ لغةٍ عربيةٍ في جامِعَةِ دِمشق، ويعمل مُترجِماً في شَرِكة كبيرَة. زوجةُ رامي تَعْمَلُ مُوَظَفةً في مكتبِ الطَّيران في مدينةِ دمشق. ابنُ رامي طالِبٌ في جامعةِ حَلب وَهو يدرسُ الطّب. هُوَ لا يعملُ. ابْنَةُ رامي الكَبيرَة طالِبة في الجامِعة وهي تدرُسُ المُحاماة. وهي تعملُ يومين في مَكتب محاماة كبير في مدينةِ دمشق. ابنتُهُ الصغيرَة طالِبة في جامِعةِ بَيْروت، وهي تدرسُ الهَندسة الالكترونية. هي لا تعملُ، ليسَ عِندَها وقت الأُستاذ رامي يذهبُ إلى العملِ في الجامِعة أيّام الأحد والثلاثاء والخَميس. ويعْملُ

English	Arabic
	في شركَةِ التّرجمة أيام الاِثنين والأَرْبعاء. يُحبُّ رامي التَّرجمة كثيراً. رامي لا يعمل يوم الجمعة. يذهب مع أسرَتِهِ إلى بيتِ أبيه وأُمِّه في يومِ الجُمعة. في يومِ السّبتِ، يُشاهِدُ الأستاذ رامي الأفلام الأمريكية ولا يعملُ

Activities

Reading 2

Listen and read the text about Dr. Rima and her family. Then, practice reading the text and answer the questions.

0:00 / 0:16

الدكتورة ريما

English	Arabic
This is Rima. She works at a hospital as a doctor and loves her job. Her husband is also a doctor. Rima goes to the hospital by Uber every day.	هذهِ ريما. تعملُ ريما في المشفى. هي طبيبةٌ. ريما تحبُّ عمَلها. زوجُ ريما طبيبٌ أيْضاً. تذهب ريما إلى المشفى بسيارةِ أوبر كلَّ يوم.

12.8: Reading Text is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

12.9: Tunisia

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will:

- Learn about the Arab countries Algeria, its famous cities, its most famous historical places, its traditional food, and clothes.

Facts to Know about Tunisia

Tunisia is part of the Maghreb region of the Middle East. The Maghreb countries are Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia, Libya, and Mauritania.

Tunisia is an Arab country located in North Africa. It borders the Mediterranean Sea to the north, north-east, and east, Algeria to the west and south-west, and Libya to the south-east.

Population: 11.82 million (2020 estimate).

Capital: Tunis.

Currency: Tunisian Dinar (TND).

Official Language: Modern Standard Arabic.



Figure **12.9.1**: This figure illustrates the countries of the Maghreb Union. CC BY-SA 4.0

Geographical Location and Flag of Tunisia

Tunisia, the northernmost country in Africa, is situated along the Mediterranean coast and serves as a vital crossroads between Europe, Africa, and the Arab world. Bordered by Algeria to the west and Libya to the southeast, Tunisia covers an area of approximately 163,610 square kilometers. The country's coastline stretches over 1,300 kilometers, featuring beautiful beaches and important port cities such as Tunis, the capital, and Sfax. The diverse geography of Tunisia includes the fertile plains of the north, the semi-arid central region, and the southern desert, which is part of the vast Sahara.

The Mediterranean Sea greatly influences Tunisia's climate, providing mild, wet winters and hot, dry summers, particularly along the coast. This geographic diversity supports a variety of agricultural activities, from olive and citrus groves in the north to date palm plantations in the desert oases of the south.

The flag of Tunisia is a symbol of its rich history and cultural heritage. Adopted in 1831 during the reign of Hussein II Bey, the flag is predominantly red, symbolizing the bloodshed during the fight against the Ottoman Empire. At its center, the flag features a white circle, representing peace, with a red crescent and a five-pointed star. These symbols are deeply rooted in Islamic culture, with the crescent traditionally representing the unity of the Muslim community and the five-pointed star symbolizing the Five Pillars of Islam. The red, white, and the symbols in the flag not only reflect Tunisia’s Islamic heritage but also its historical struggles and aspirations for peace and unity.

Overall, Tunisia's strategic location and symbolic flag embody the country’s unique position at the intersection of African, Arab, and Mediterranean civilizations, making it a vital cultural and historical hub in the region.



Figure 12.9.2: This figure presents the cities of Tunisia by OCHA; CC BY 3.0



Flag

Famous Cities in Tunisia

Tunisia, a country with a rich history and diverse culture, is home to several cities that play significant roles in its heritage, economy, and tourism. Each city offers a unique glimpse into Tunisia's past and present, showcasing its vibrant blend of Arab, Berber, and Mediterranean influences.

- تونس **Tunis,** the capital and largest city of Tunisia, is a dynamic metropolis that serves as the political, economic, and cultural heart of the country. The city is known for its historic medina, a UNESCO World Heritage site, where winding alleys lead to bustling markets, traditional houses, and ancient mosques. The Bardo Museum in Tunis is one of the most important museums in the Arab world, housing an extensive collection of Roman mosaics and other artifacts. The city also features modern districts, such as the Avenue Habib Bourguiba, which is lined with cafes, shops, and French colonial architecture, reflecting Tunisia's modernity and its colonial past.
- صفاقس **Sfax,** located on the eastern coast, is Tunisia's second-largest city and an important commercial and industrial center. Known for its olive oil production and fishing industry, Sfax is often considered the economic backbone of Tunisia. The city's medina is well-preserved and less touristy than that of Tunis, offering an authentic glimpse into everyday life in Tunisia. Sfax also serves as a gateway to the Kerkennah Islands, a tranquil archipelago known for its clear waters and traditional fishing villages.
- سوسة **Sousse,** a coastal city situated along the Gulf of Hammamet, is one of Tunisia's most popular tourist destinations. Known as the "Pearl of the Sahel," Sousse boasts beautiful beaches, lively resorts, and a rich historical heritage. The city's medina, also a UNESCO World Heritage site, features impressive fortifications, the Ribat (a fortress-monastery), and the Great Mosque of Sousse. The archaeological museum in Sousse contains an outstanding collection of mosaics and artifacts from the Roman and Byzantine periods. Sousse is also famous for its vibrant nightlife, making it a favorite among both tourists and locals.
- القيروان **Kairouan,** located in central Tunisia, is one of the most important cities in the Islamic world and a UNESCO World Heritage site. Founded in the 7th century, Kairouan is considered the fourth holiest city in Islam and a major pilgrimage site. The city is home to the Great Mosque of Kairouan, one of the oldest and most significant mosques in North Africa. Kairouan is also renowned for its traditional carpets, which are handmade by local artisans and known for their intricate designs and high quality. The city's medina, with its winding streets and historic architecture, offers a glimpse into Tunisia's rich religious and cultural heritage.
- **Carthage**, located just outside of Tunis, is a city steeped in history and legend. Once the capital of the ancient Carthaginian Empire, Carthage was one of the most powerful cities of the ancient world before its destruction by Rome in the Punic Wars. Today, the ruins of Carthage are a UNESCO World Heritage site, attracting visitors from around the world. The site includes the remains of Roman villas, baths, and the famous Carthaginian ports. The Carthage National Museum and the nearby Antonine Baths offer a deeper understanding of the city's historical significance and its role in shaping Mediterranean history.

- **Tozeur,** an oasis town in the southwest of Tunisia, is famous for its stunning palm groves, traditional mud-brick architecture, and proximity to the Sahara Desert. The town's unique architecture, characterized by intricate brick patterns, is a highlight for visitors. Tozeur is a gateway to the desert and serves as a starting point for excursions to the Chott el Jerid, a vast salt lake, and the mountain oases of Chebika, Tamerza, and Mides. Tozeur is also known for its date palms, producing some of the finest dates in the world, particularly the famous Deglet Noor variety.
- **Djerba**, an island off the southern coast of Tunisia, is known for its beautiful beaches, whitewashed buildings, and a mix of Arab, Berber, and Jewish cultures. The island is a popular tourist destination, offering a laid-back atmosphere with a rich cultural heritage. The island's capital, Houmt Souk, is famous for its bustling markets, where visitors can buy traditional crafts, pottery, and textiles.

Each of these cities contributes to the rich tapestry of Tunisia's culture and history. Whether through their ancient ruins, vibrant markets, or scenic landscapes, these cities offer a diverse and fascinating exploration of Tunisia's offerings.

Sousse; CC BY-SA 4.0



Gabès; Pixabay License



Ariana; CC BY-SA 3.0



Sfax; CC BY-SA 3.0



Tunis; CC0re





Kairouan; CC BY-SA 4.0

Traditional Food

Tunisian cuisine is a vibrant and flavorful blend of Mediterranean, Berber, Arab, and French influences, reflecting the country's rich cultural heritage and diverse history. Known for its use of spices, olive oil, and fresh ingredients, Tunisian food is renowned for its bold flavors and aromatic dishes. Here are some of the most famous traditional foods of Tunisia:

- **Couscous** is the national dish of Tunisia and a staple in many Tunisian households. It is made from semolina wheat and is typically steamed and served with a variety of stews made from meat (usually lamb or chicken), fish, or vegetables. The stew is often flavored with spices like cumin, coriander, and harissa, a spicy chili paste that is a signature ingredient in Tunisian cuisine. Couscous is traditionally served on Fridays and during special occasions and family gatherings.
- **Brik** is a popular Tunisian appetizer, consisting of a thin pastry called malsouka, which is stuffed with a variety of fillings and then deep-fried to a crispy golden brown. The most common filling is a mixture of egg, tuna, capers, and parsley, but variations can include ground meat, shrimp, or cheese. Brik is often enjoyed as a snack or a starter, especially during Ramadan, and is typically eaten by hand.
- **Harissa** is a spicy chili paste that is a fundamental ingredient in Tunisian cooking. Made from hot red peppers, garlic, olive oil, and a blend of spices like caraway and coriander, harissa adds a fiery kick to many dishes. It is often used as a condiment, a marinade for meats, or mixed into stews and soups. Harissa is also commonly served as a dip alongside bread and olives.
- **Shakshouka** is a flavorful dish made from poached eggs in a spicy tomato and pepper sauce. The sauce is typically seasoned with garlic, cumin, and paprika, and sometimes includes other ingredients like onions, potatoes, or merguez sausage. Shakshouka is often served as a breakfast or brunch dish, accompanied by bread for dipping into the rich sauce.
- **Lablabi** is a traditional Tunisian soup made from chickpeas and flavored with garlic, cumin, and harissa. It is typically served over pieces of stale bread, which soak up the flavorful broth, and is often garnished with a drizzle of olive oil, capers, olives, or a poached egg. Lablabi is a popular street food in Tunisia, particularly during the colder months.
- **Tunisian tajine** is quite different from the Moroccan version. It is more like a frittata or a baked omelet, made with eggs, meat (such as chicken or lamb), cheese, potatoes, and various vegetables. The mixture is spiced with turmeric and other seasonings, then baked until firm. Tunisian tajine is often served as a main dish or a side, especially during special occasions.
- **Salade Mechouia** is a grilled salad made from a mix of tomatoes, peppers, onions, and garlic, all charred over an open flame to bring out their smoky flavor. The vegetables are then finely chopped and mixed with olive oil, lemon juice, and harissa. The salad is typically served cold and can be garnished with tuna, hard-boiled eggs, or olives. It's a refreshing and flavorful dish that is often served as a starter or a side dish.
- **Mloukhia** is a traditional Tunisian stew made from the leaves of the jute plant, which are dried and ground into a powder. The powder is then cooked with olive oil, garlic, and spices to create a dark, rich sauce. The stew is usually made with beef or lamb, which is slow-cooked in the sauce until tender. Mloukhia has a distinctive, earthy flavor and is often served with bread or couscous.
- **Bambalouni** is a Tunisian doughnut that is popular as a street food, especially in coastal towns like Sidi Bou Said. The dough is made from flour, sugar, yeast, and water, shaped into rings, and then fried until golden and crispy. Bambalouni is typically dusted with sugar and served hot. It's a simple yet delicious treat that is enjoyed by both locals and tourists alike.

Tunisian cuisine is a reflection of the country's diverse influences and rich history. Whether through its spicy stews, fragrant pastries, or refreshing salads, the food of Tunisia offers a unique and flavorful experience that delights both the palate and the senses.



Couscous

Traditional Clothes

Tunisian traditional clothing is a rich reflection of the country's diverse cultural heritage, influenced by Arab, Berber, Ottoman, and Mediterranean traditions. These garments are not only functional, designed to suit the warm Mediterranean climate, but they also carry deep cultural significance, often worn during special occasions, festivals, and everyday life in various regions of Tunisia.

For Men: **Jebba, Burnous, and Chéchia**

- **Jebba:** The **Jebba** is the most iconic traditional garment for Tunisian men. It is a long, sleeveless robe typically made from fine wool, cotton, or silk. The Jebba is often worn over a shirt and paired with a vest called a **Farmla**. It is usually white, beige, or grey, though darker colors like navy blue or black are worn during the winter months. The Jebba is often intricately embroidered around the collar and chest, showcasing the craftsmanship and attention to detail that goes into each piece.
- **Burnous:** The **Burnous** is a traditional cloak made from wool, worn over the Jebba, especially during colder weather. It is a long, hooded garment that provides warmth and protection against the elements. The Burnous is usually white or brown and is a symbol of dignity and status in Tunisian society. It is often worn during special occasions and religious ceremonies.
- **Chéchia:** The **Chéchia** is a traditional red felt cap worn by Tunisian men, particularly in the northern regions. It is a symbol of national identity and is often paired with the Jebba. The Chéchia has its origins in the Ottoman Empire and has become an enduring part of Tunisian culture. The process of making a Chéchia is intricate, involving hand-felting and shaping, and it is considered a prestigious craft in Tunisia.

For Women: **Sefsari, Mellia, and Traditional Jewelry**

- **Sefsari:** The **Sefsari** is a large, lightweight shawl or wrap traditionally worn by women in Tunisia to cover themselves when going out in public. It is usually made of silk or fine cotton and is often white or beige. The Sefsari is wrapped around the body and head, leaving only the face visible. While it was once commonly worn by women throughout Tunisia, its use has declined in urban areas, though it remains a symbol of modesty and tradition in more conservative regions.
- **Mellia:** The **Mellia** is a traditional dress worn by women in southern Tunisia, particularly among the Berber communities. It is a large piece of fabric that is wrapped around the body and fastened with decorative brooches or pins at the shoulders. The Mellia is often made of brightly colored, woven material with intricate patterns and is typically worn during special occasions and festivals.

Regional Variations

Tunisian traditional clothing varies significantly from one region to another, reflecting the country's cultural diversity. For example:

- **In the northern regions**, such as Tunis and Sousse, the Jebba and Burnous are common among men, while women may wear the Sefsari or more modern interpretations of traditional dress.
- **In the southern regions**, such as in the towns of Matmata and Douz, Berber women often wear the Mellia, which is adorned with traditional Berber patterns and accessories.
- **In the island of Djerba**, men may wear a lighter version of the Jebba, and women often don colorful, intricately woven garments, reflecting the island's unique cultural mix.

Modern Adaptations

While traditional clothing remains an important part of Tunisia's cultural identity, modern influences have led to adaptations in style. Many Tunisians now wear traditional garments during weddings, religious holidays, and cultural events, while integrating elements of Western fashion into their everyday attire. Designers in Tunisia are also creating modern versions of traditional clothing, blending contemporary styles with classic elements, which are becoming increasingly popular among younger generations.

Conclusion

Tunisia, a country rich in history, culture, and natural beauty, stands as a vibrant crossroads of African, Arab, and Mediterranean influences. From its ancient ruins and traditional clothing to its flavorful cuisine and bustling cities, Tunisia offers a unique blend of tradition and modernity. Whether exploring its picturesque landscapes or experiencing its deep-rooted cultural heritage, Tunisia captivates the heart with its diversity and resilience, making it a truly remarkable destination in North Africa.

Activities

12.9: Tunisia is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

12.10: Algeria

Learning Objectives

In this section, you will:

- Learn about the Arab countries Algeria, its famous cities, its most famous historical places, its traditional food, and clothes.

Facts to Know about Algeria

Algeria is part of the Maghreb region of the Middle East. The Maghreb countries are Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia, Libya, and Mauritania.

Algeria is an Arab country located in North Africa. It borders the Mediterranean Sea to the north, Morocco to the west and northwest, Mauritania to the west, Mali to the southwest, Niger to the southeast, Libya to the east, and Tunisia to the northeast.

Population: 43.85 million (2020 estimate).

Capital: Algiers.

Currency: Algerian Dinar (DZD).

Official Language: Modern Standard Arabic.

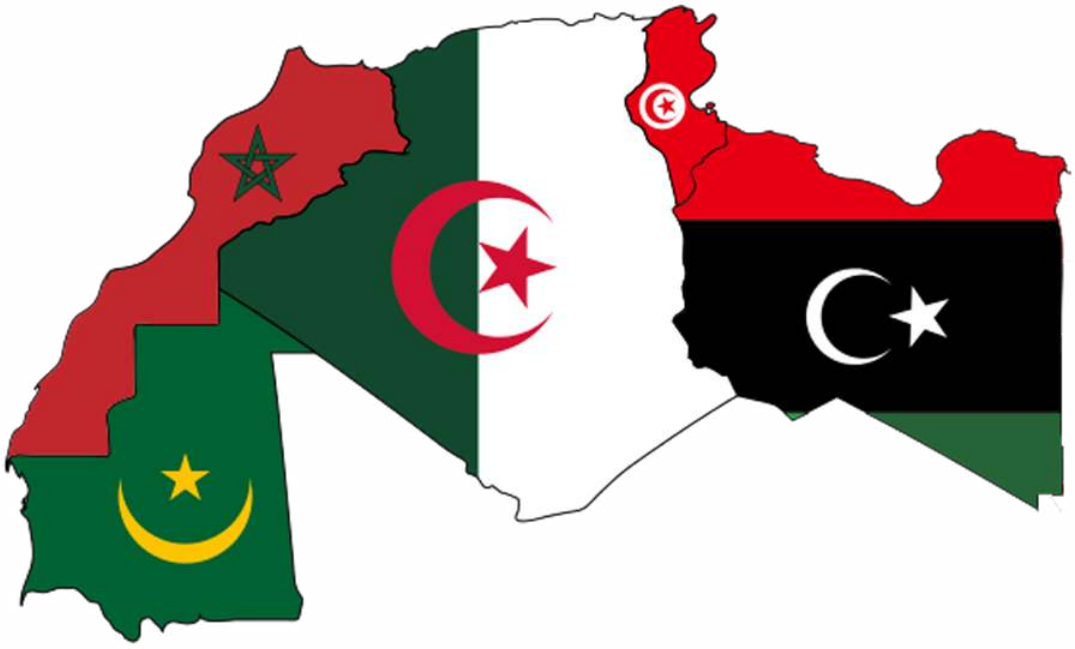


Figure 12.10.1: This figure illustrates the countries of the Maghreb Union. CC BY-SA 4.0

Geographical Location and Flag:

Algeria, the largest country in Africa and the Arab world is located in the northern part of the continent, along the Mediterranean coast. It is bordered by Tunisia and Libya to the northeast, Niger to the southeast, Mali and Mauritania to the southwest, Western Sahara to the west, Morocco to the northwest, and the Mediterranean Sea to the north. Algeria's diverse landscape includes a long Mediterranean coastline, the vast expanse of the Sahara Desert, fertile plains, and mountain ranges like the Atlas Mountains in the north and the Ahaggar Mountains in the south. This geographical diversity has shaped the country's climate, which ranges from the Mediterranean along the coast, with mild, wet winters and hot, dry summers, to arid and semi-arid conditions in the desert regions.

The flag of Algeria is a symbol of the country's struggle for independence and its Islamic identity. The flag consists of two vertical stripes: green on the left and white on the right. In the center is a red crescent and a red five-pointed star. The green color represents

Islam, which is the dominant religion in Algeria. The white symbolizes peace, while the red star and crescent are traditional symbols of Islam, reflecting the nation's cultural and religious heritage. The flag was adopted on July 3, 1962, just before Algeria gained independence from France, and it continues to serve as a powerful emblem of the country's identity, unity, and aspirations.



Figure **12.10.1**: This figure presents the cities of Algeria by OCHA; CC BY 3.0



Flag of Algeria

Famous Cities in Algeria

Algeria, the largest country in Africa, is home to several cities that are rich in history, culture, and economic significance. Each city in Algeria has its own unique character, shaped by centuries of diverse influences, from Berber and Arab to Ottoman and French. Here are some of the most famous cities in Algeria:

- **Algiers,** the capital and largest city of Algeria, is often referred to as "Algiers the White" due to its stunning white-washed buildings that overlook the Mediterranean Sea. The city is a blend of old and new, with its historic Casbah, a UNESCO World Heritage site, showcasing narrow winding streets, ancient mosques, and Ottoman palaces. Modern Algiers features wide boulevards, French colonial architecture, and bustling markets. The city's cultural scene is vibrant, with numerous museums, theaters, and cafes. As the political and economic hub of the country, Algiers plays a central role in Algeria's national life.
- **Oran,** located on the northwest coast of Algeria, is the second-largest city and one of the country's most important ports. Known for its lively music scene, particularly Rai music, Oran is a cultural hotspot. The city has a rich history, having been influenced by Spanish, Ottoman, and French rule, which is reflected in its diverse architecture. The Santa Cruz Fort, the Great Mosque, and the Bey's Palace are among the city's notable landmarks. Oran is also a major center for education and industry, contributing significantly to the country's economy.
- **Constantine**, known as the "City of Bridges," is one of Algeria's oldest and most picturesque cities. Located in the northeastern part of the country, Constantine is built on a rocky plateau and is famous for its dramatic gorges and suspension bridges that connect different parts of the city. The city has a deep historical significance, having been a major center of the Roman Empire, and later an important hub during the Islamic period. Constantine is also a center for learning and culture, home to several universities and cultural institutions. The Emir Abdelkader Mosque, the Palace of Ahmed Bey, and the ancient Roman ruins are key attractions.
- **Annaba,** situated on the northeastern coast of Algeria, is an important port city known for its beautiful beaches and rich history. The city is closely associated with Saint Augustine, one of the most important figures in Christian history, who was bishop of the ancient city of Hippo, now Annaba. The Basilica of St. Augustine, located on a hill overlooking the city, is a major landmark. Annaba is also a center for the steel industry, making it an economically significant city. The city's Mediterranean climate, historical sites, and vibrant port make it a key destination in Algeria.

- **Tlemcen,** located in the northwest near the Moroccan border, is known for its rich cultural heritage and historical significance. Often referred to as the "Pearl of the Maghreb," Tlemcen was an important center of Islamic culture and learning during the Middle Ages. The city is renowned for its well-preserved Moorish architecture, including the Great Mosque of Tlemcen, the Mansoura ruins, and the Mechouar Palace. Tlemcen is also known for its traditional crafts, such as embroidery and leatherwork. The city's cultural festivals, like the Andalusian Music Festival, attract visitors from all over the region.
- **Ghardaia** is a unique city located in the heart of the M'zab Valley in the northern Sahara. It is part of a pentapolis (five cities) founded by the Ibadis, a sect of Islam. Ghardaia is known for its distinct architecture, characterized by whitewashed houses and narrow streets that follow the contours of the rocky landscape. The city is a UNESCO World Heritage site, recognized for its ingenious urban planning and water management systems that have allowed it to thrive in the harsh desert environment. Ghardaia is also a center for traditional M'zabite culture, known for its vibrant markets, date production, and crafts.
- **Bejaia,** located on the Mediterranean coast in the Kabylie region, is a major port and industrial city. It is surrounded by stunning natural scenery, including the Gouraya National Park and the famous Cap Carbon, which boasts one of the highest lighthouses in the world. Bejaia has a rich history, having been an important Berber, Roman, and later Ottoman city. The city is known for its educational institutions, especially in the fields of science and technology. Bejaia's cultural diversity is reflected in its cuisine, music, and festivals, making it a vibrant and dynamic city.
- **Tamanrasset**, located in southern Algeria in the heart of the Sahara Desert, is the gateway to the Hoggar Mountains and an important cultural center for the Tuareg people. The city is a hub for desert tourism, attracting visitors with its stunning landscapes, including the Assekrem plateau, where the French priest Charles de Foucauld lived as a hermit. Tamanrasset is also an important stop for caravans and a center for traditional crafts such as silver jewelry and leatherwork. The city's unique culture, shaped by its Tuareg heritage, and its breathtaking desert environment make it a key destination in Algeria.

Each of these cities contributes uniquely to the rich tapestry of Algeria's history, culture, and economy. Whether through their historical landmarks, cultural festivals, or economic significance, these cities offer a diverse and fascinating insight into the heart of Algeria.


Algeria


Oran


Constantine


Annaba

Traditional Food in Algeria

Algerian cuisine is a rich and diverse blend of Mediterranean, Berber, Arab, and French culinary traditions. The country's vast geography, ranging from the Mediterranean coast to the Saharan desert, has influenced the variety of ingredients and dishes that make up its traditional food. Algerian cuisine is known for its use of fresh vegetables, spices, grains, and meats, often prepared with aromatic herbs and olive oil. Here are some of the most famous traditional foods in Algeria:

- **Couscous** is Algeria's national dish and a staple food in most households. It is made from semolina wheat, which is steamed and then served with a variety of stews made from lamb, chicken, or vegetables. The stew is typically flavored with a blend of spices such as cumin, coriander, and cinnamon, and may also include chickpeas, turnips, carrots, and zucchini. Couscous is often served during family gatherings, religious holidays, and special occasions.
- In Algeria, the term **Tajine** refers to a variety of stews rather than the Moroccan clay cooking pot. Algerian Tajines are slow-cooked dishes that combine meat (usually lamb or chicken) with vegetables, dried fruits, and a mix of spices. One popular version is **Tajine Zitoun**, a chicken or lamb stew with green olives and lemon. Another well-known variety is **Tajine Lahlou**, a sweet dish made with lamb or chicken, dried apricots, prunes, and almonds, often served during Ramadan.
- **Chorba** is a traditional Algerian soup that is commonly served during Ramadan to break the fast. It is a hearty soup made with meat (usually lamb), tomatoes, chickpeas, and a variety of vegetables like carrots, celery, and zucchini. The soup is flavored with spices such as cinnamon, cumin, and turmeric, and often includes a handful of vermicelli noodles or rice. **Chorba Frik** is a popular variation made with cracked wheat (frik), which gives the soup a unique texture and flavor.

- **Merguez** is a spicy sausage made from lamb or beef, seasoned with a blend of spices including cumin, coriander, garlic, and harissa (a chili paste). The sausage is typically grilled or fried and served with bread, couscous, or in a sandwich. **Merguez** is a popular street food in Algeria and is often enjoyed during barbecues or as part of a larger meal.
- **Bourek** is a popular Algerian appetizer, especially during Ramadan. It consists of thin pastry sheets filled with a variety of ingredients such as minced meat, potatoes, eggs, cheese, or spinach. The pastry is then rolled or folded into a triangle or cigar shape and deep-fried until golden and crispy. **Bourek** is often served as a starter or as part of a larger meal.
- **Mechoui** is a traditional dish of whole roasted lamb or goat, often prepared for special occasions and large gatherings. The meat is marinated with a mixture of garlic, cumin, paprika, and other spices, then slowly roasted until tender and flavorful. **Mechoui** is typically served with bread and a variety of salads and side dishes.
- **Rechta** is a traditional dish from the Algiers region, made with thin, hand-rolled noodles served with a meat and vegetable stew. The stew is usually made with chicken or lamb, chickpeas, turnips, and a blend of spices. **Rechta** is often prepared during religious holidays and family celebrations.
- **Makroud** is a popular Algerian dessert made from semolina dough filled with dates or almonds and flavored with orange blossom water. The dough is shaped into diamond-shaped pieces, baked, and then soaked in honey. **Makroud** is especially popular in the eastern regions of Algeria and is often served during festive occasions and celebrations.



Algerian cuisine

Comparison with Tunisian Food

While both Algerian and Tunisian cuisines share similarities due to their common Mediterranean and North African influences, there are distinct differences in the flavor profiles and dishes of each country.

- **Spices and Flavors:** Algerian cuisine tends to use a more subtle blend of spices, often focusing on the natural flavors of the ingredients, whereas Tunisian food is known for its spiciness and bold use of harissa, a chili paste that gives many dishes a fiery kick.
- **Couscous:** Couscous is a staple in both Algeria and Tunisia, but in Algeria, it is often prepared with a wider variety of meats and vegetables, while Tunisian couscous may include seafood due to the country's extensive coastline.
- **Tajine:** The concept of **Tajine** differs between the two countries. In Algeria, **Tajine** refers to various types of stews, often sweet and savory, while in Tunisia, **Tajine** resembles more of a baked omelet or frittata, made with eggs, meat, and vegetables.
- **Street Food:** Both countries have a rich tradition of street food, but while **Bourek** and **Merguez** are common in Algeria, **Brik** (a type of stuffed pastry) is a signature Tunisian street food.
- **Desserts: Makroud** is popular in both countries, but variations exist; in Algeria, it is often filled with dates, while in Tunisia, it may also include fillings like almond paste.

Overall, while Algerian and Tunisian cuisines share a common culinary heritage, the distinct regional influences and ingredients in each country create unique flavors and culinary experiences that reflect their diverse histories and cultures.

Traditional clothing in Algeria

Traditional clothing in Algeria reflects the country's diverse cultural heritage, shaped by its Berber, Arab, Ottoman, and French influences. The traditional garments vary significantly across the different regions of Algeria, each with its own unique style and cultural significance. Here are some of the most prominent traditional clothes in Algeria:

For Men:

- **Gandoura or Jebba**: The **Gandoura** or **Jebba** is a traditional garment worn by men across Algeria. It is a long, loose-fitting robe that typically reaches the ankles. The Gandoura is usually sleeveless and made from light fabrics like cotton or silk, making it ideal for the warm Algerian climate. The Jebba is often embroidered with intricate designs around the neckline and chest, showcasing the craftsmanship of Algerian artisans. This garment is commonly worn during religious events, weddings, and other special occasions.
- **Burnous**: The **Burnous** is a long, hooded cloak traditionally made from wool. It is worn over the Gandoura or other clothing, particularly in colder regions of Algeria or during the winter months. The Burnous is usually white or brown and is a symbol of dignity and status in Algerian culture. It is often associated with the Berber and Arab communities and is worn by men during important religious or cultural ceremonies.
- **Chéchia**: The **Chéchia** is a traditional red felt cap worn by Algerian men, particularly in the northern regions. It is a symbol of national identity and pride. The Chéchia has its roots in the Ottoman era and continues to be an important part of traditional Algerian attire, especially during religious holidays and formal occasions.

For Women:

- **Karako**: The **Karako** is a traditional Algerian outfit worn by women, particularly in the city of Algiers. It consists of a velvet jacket that is richly embroidered with gold or silver thread, often featuring elaborate designs. The jacket is worn over a silk or satin blouse and paired with loose-fitting trousers known as **Sarouel**. The Karako is a symbol of elegance and is typically worn during weddings and other formal events.
- **Chedda**: The **Chedda** is a traditional bridal outfit from the city of Tlemcen in western Algeria. It is considered one of the most elaborate and luxurious traditional garments in the country. The Chedda includes a richly decorated gown made of fine fabric, adorned with gold embroidery and jewelry. The outfit is completed with a heavy crown or headdress, also decorated with gold and precious stones. The Chedda is worn by brides during the wedding ceremony and is a symbol of wealth and nobility.
- **Haik**: The **Haik** is a large, white, lightweight veil that covers the entire body, leaving only the face exposed. It is traditionally worn by women in the urban areas of Algeria, particularly in Algiers, as a sign of modesty and respectability. The Haik is often made of silk or fine wool and is draped over the head and shoulders. Although its use has declined in modern times, the Haik remains an important symbol of Algerian cultural heritage and is still worn by some women, particularly during religious events.
- **Blousa**: The **Blousa** is a traditional dress from the coastal city of Oran. It is a long, straight-cut gown, typically made from silk or satin, and is often embroidered with delicate patterns. The Blousa is worn with a belt that cinches the waist and is usually paired with a headscarf. This dress is popular in western Algeria and is often worn during weddings and cultural festivals.
- **Kabyle Dress**: The **Kabyle Dress** is a traditional garment worn by Berber women in the Kabylie region of northern Algeria. It is a colorful, ankle-length dress made of lightweight fabric, often decorated with intricate embroidery and beads. The dress is usually worn with a wide belt and a headscarf. The vibrant colors and patterns of the Kabyle Dress reflect the rich cultural heritage of the Berber people and are often worn during celebrations and cultural events.

The Caftan in Algeria

The **Caftan** is one of the most iconic and elegant traditional garments in Algeria, deeply rooted in the country's rich cultural heritage. While the Caftan is worn in several countries across North Africa and the Middle East, the Algerian version has its own distinct style and significance, particularly in the context of special occasions and ceremonies.

Description and Significance

The Algerian Caftan is a long, flowing robe that is typically worn by women, especially during weddings, festive events, and other formal occasions. It is made from luxurious fabrics such as velvet, silk, or satin, and is often richly adorned with intricate embroidery, beadwork, and sometimes gold or silver thread. The designs often feature floral or geometric patterns, which reflect both the region's historical influences and the artisan's craftsmanship.

The Caftan is usually tailored to fit the body closely at the top, with a flared, flowing skirt that creates an elegant silhouette. It is often worn over a silk or satin underskirt, adding volume and movement to the garment. The Caftan is sometimes accessorized with a matching belt, which cinches the waist and enhances the wearer's figure. This belt can be heavily decorated with jewels or embroidery, adding to the overall opulence of the outfit.

The Caftan and Weddings

In Algerian weddings, the Caftan plays a central role, particularly during the **Henna Night**, a pre-wedding celebration where the bride is adorned with henna and wears a beautifully decorated Caftan. The bride may change into several Caftans throughout the wedding festivities, each one more elaborate than the last. These Caftans are often custom-made, passed down through generations, or gifted as part of the bridal trousseau.

Regional Variations:

Algeria's vast geography and diverse population have led to a wide variety of traditional clothing styles. For example:

- In the Sahara region, men often wear **Derrra**, a loose-fitting garment made of light fabric to protect them from the harsh desert climate.
- In the Aurès Mountains, women may wear **Auresian** dresses, which are adorned with traditional Berber jewelry and distinctive patterns.
- In the M’zab Valley, women wear a garment known as **M'laya**, a large wrap that covers the body and is worn during special occasions.

Modern Adaptations:

While traditional clothing remains important in Algerian culture, modern influences have led to adaptations in style. Many Algerians now wear traditional garments during weddings, religious holidays, and cultural events, while incorporating elements of Western fashion into their everyday attire. Designers in Algeria are also creating contemporary versions of traditional clothing, blending modern styles with classic elements, which are becoming increasingly popular among younger generations.

In summary, traditional clothing in Algeria is a vibrant and significant aspect of the country’s cultural identity, reflecting the rich diversity and history of its people. Whether through the elegant Karako, the luxurious Chedda, or the colorful Kabyle Dress, these garments continue to symbolize the pride and heritage of Algeria.



Caftan



Algerian men's traditional clothing

\



Elegant Algerian Caftan, showcasing its intricate details and cultural significance.

Conclusion

Algeria, a country of vast landscapes and rich cultural heritage, stands as a unique blend of tradition and modernity. From its diverse cuisine and iconic traditional clothing, like the Caftan, to its historical cities and significant role in North Africa, Algeria offers a deep connection to its past while embracing the future. Its people, customs, and landscapes make Algeria a truly remarkable and enduring presence on the African continent.

The people of Algeria are known for their warmth, resilience, and deep sense of cultural pride. They come from a rich tapestry of ethnic backgrounds, including Berber, Arab, and Tuareg, each contributing to the country's vibrant cultural mosaic. Algerians are deeply connected to their traditions, whether through their cuisine, music, or clothing, and they are equally proud of their history and struggle for independence. Hospitality is a cornerstone of Algerian culture, with strong family ties and community spirit playing a central role in daily life. Despite the challenges they have faced, the people of Algeria continue to move forward with a strong sense of identity and unity, making them an integral part of the nation's enduring spirit.

Activities

12.10: Algeria is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

- **10.5: Culture** by Hana Kassas, Layla Bahar Al-Aloom, Sameera Murtada, Maysaa Toma, and Roula Aoneh is licensed CC BY 4.0.

Index

T

tashkeel
2.4: Arabic Diacritical Marks علاماتُ التَّشكيل

Glossary

Alcohol | الكحول
Algebra | الجبر
April | أَبْريل
Augustus | أغسطس
Balcony | بَـلَـكونَة
Balloon | بالون
Bank | بنك
Biscuit | بسكويت
Blogger | بلوغر
Blouse | بلوزة
Bus | باص
Chemistry | كيمياء
Cigarette | سيجارة
Cinema | سينما
Computer | كمبيوتر
Cotton | قطن
Cotton | قطن
cup | كوب
December | ديسَـمْبَر
Diesel | ديزل
Electronic | الكترونية
Fahrenheit | فهرنهايت
Falafel | فلاڤِل
February | فِبْراير
Film | فيلم
Gazelle | غزال
Geography | جغرافيا
Gology | جيولوجيا
Google | غوغل
Henna | حِنَّة
Hummus | حمص
Internet | انترنيت
Jacket | جاكيت
January | يَـناير
Jasmine | ياسمين
Jeans | جينز
July | يوليو
June | يونيو
Kebab | كباب
Kilo | كيلو
Mango | مانجو / مانجا
March | مارس
May | مايو
November | نوڤَـمبَر
October | أوكْتوبِر
Pepsi | بيبسي
Petrol | بترول
Physics | فيزياء
Piano | بيانو
Pizza | بيتزا
Plastic | بلاستيك
Potatoes | بطاطا
Radio | راديو
Restroom | تواليت
Salad | سلطة
Salad | سَلَطَة
Sandwich | ساندويتش
September | سَبْتَمبَر
Shawl | شال
Sofa | صوفا
Technology | التكنولوجيا
Television | تلفزيون
Tennis | تنس
Tomatoes | طماطم
Tornado | ترناد
Video | فيديو
YouTuber | يوتيوبر

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: Arabic Level One

Webpages: 135

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 97.8% (132 pages)
- Undeclared: 2.2% (3 pages)

By Page

- Arabic Level One - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Front Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - TitlePage - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - InfoPage - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - About the Author - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Introduction to the Arabic Level One - OER - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 1: Chapter Oner- An Overview of Arabic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.1: Why Learn Arabic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.2: Arabic Speaking Countries - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.3: Arabic-Speaking World and Dialect - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.4: Parts of Speech in Arabic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.5: Type of Sentences in Arabic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 2: Chapter Two- Introduction to the Arabic Language - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.1: Introduction to the Arabic Language - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.2: The Arabic Alphabet الحروف العربية - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.3: Arabic Script الكتابة بالعربية - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.4: Arabic Diacritical Marks علاماتُ التَّشكيل - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.5: Long Vowels المدود - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 3: Chapter Three- Greeting - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.1: Letter Baa- الحرف باء - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.2: Letter Taa- الحرف تاء - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.3: Letter Thaa- الحرف ثاء - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.4: Letter Noon الحرف نون - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.5: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.6: Dialog - Greetings - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.7: Northern Levant- Syria - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.8: Northern Levant- Lebanon - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.9: Assessment - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 4: Chapter Four- Introduce Self - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.1: Letter Yaa-الحرف ياء - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.2: Letter Waw- الحرف واو - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.3: The Consonant Hamza الهمزة - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.4: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.5: Subject Pronouns - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.6: Dialog - Introduce Self - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.7: Southeren Levant- Jordan - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.8: Southeren Levant- Palistine - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 5: Chapter Five- Where Are You From? - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.1: The Letter Jeem- الحرف جيم - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.2: Letter H'aa-الحرف حاء - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.3: Letter Khaa - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.4: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.5: Possessive Pronouns - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.6: Present tense (to like, to study) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.7: Dialog - (Where Are From?) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.8: Republic of Iraq - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 6: Chapter Six- Introducting My Family - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.1: Letter Daal - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.2: Letter Thaal - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.3: Letter Raa - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.4: Letter Zay - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.5: Taa Marbouta "Tied Taa" - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.6: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.7: Demonstrative Pronouns هذا - هذه - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.8: Dialog - My Family - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.9: Qatar - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 6.10: The United Arab Emirates - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.11: Assessment - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

7: Chapter Seven- Numbers “Al-Arqam” - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 7.1: Letter Seen - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.2: Letter Sheen - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.3: Letter Saad - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.4: Letter Daad - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.5: The Phrase "To Have" In Arabic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.6: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.7: Numbers الأرقام - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.8: Dialog - Tell Me More About YOU - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.9: Interrogative Words in Arabic (Part 1) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.10: Egypt - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 7.11: Assessment - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

8: Chapter Eight- Where do you live? - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 8.1: Letter Tuaa - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.2: Letter Dhaa - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.3: Letter Aein - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.4: Letter Ghien - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.5: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.6: Interrogative words (Part Two) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.7: New Verbs (To live) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.8: Dialog - Where do you live? - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.9: Kuwait - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8.10: Saudi Arabia - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

9: At Home “ fi Albayet” - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 9.1: Letter Faa - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.2: Letter Qaaf - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.3: Letter Kaaf - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.4: Letter Laam - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.5: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.6: Colors - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.7: New Verbs (to drink, to watch) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.8: Dialog - At Home - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.9: Sultanate of Oman - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.10: Yemeni Republic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9.11: Assessment - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

10: Food الطعام "At-Tauam" - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 10.1: Letter Meem - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.2: Letter Haa - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.3: Letters Alif MAqsurah الألف المقصورة, Dagger Alif الألف الخنجرية - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.4: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.5: Prepositions حروف الجر - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.6: New Verbs (go, cook, buy, and want) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.7: Dialog - What do you eat? - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.8: Bahrain - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.9: Libya - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10.10: Assessment - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- The Marker of "Shadda"الشدة - *Undeclared*

11: At The University - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 11.1: أ (Hamzat Alwasel) and آ (Alif Maddah) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.2: The Arabic Definite Article (الـ) لام التعريف - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.3: The Nisba Adjective النِّسبَة - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.4: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.5: Days of The Week - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.6: Dialog - What do you study? - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.7: Reading Text - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.8: Sudan - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.9: kingdom of Morocco - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 11.10: Assessment - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

12: Living and Working - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 12.1: Roots الجذورو - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.2: Duals in Arabic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.3: Plurals In Arabic الجمع - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.4: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.5: New Verbs (work, write, and read) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.6: Dual and Plural Subject Pronouns - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.7: Dialogue and Reading - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.8: Reading Text - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.9: Tunisia - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12.10: Algeria - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

Back Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- Index - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Glossary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Detailed Licensing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Cognates Glossary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*

Cognates Glossary

Alcohol | الكحول
Algebra | الجبر
April | أَبْريل
Augustus | أغسطس
Balcony | بَـلَـكونَة
Balloon | بالون
Bank | بنك
Biscuit | بسكويت
Blogger | بلوغر
Blouse | بلوزة
Bus | باص
Chemistry | كيمياء
Cigarette | سيجارة
Cinema | سينما
Computer | كمبيوتر
Cotton | قطن
Cotton | قطن
cup | كوب
December | ديسَـمْبَر
Diesel | ديزل
Electronic | الكترونية
Fahrenheit | فهرنهايت
Falafel | فلافِل
February | فِبْراير
Film | فيلم
Gazelle | غزال
Geography | جغرافيا
Gology | جيولوجيا
Google | غوغل
Henna | حِنَّة
Hummus | حمص
Internet | انترنيت
Jacket | جاكيت
January | يَـناير
Jasmine | ياسمين
Jeans | جينز
July | يوليو
June | يونيو
Kebab | كباب
Kilo | كيلو
Mango | مانجو / مانجا
March | مارس
May | مايو
November | نوفَـمبَر
October | أوكْتوبِر
Pepsi | بيبسي
Petrol | بترول
Physics | فيزياء

Piano | بيانو
Pizza | بيتزا
Plastic | بلاستيك
Potatoes | بطاطا
Radio | راديو
Restroom | تواليت
Salad | سلطة
Salad | سَلَطَة
Sandwich | ساندويتش
September | سَبْتَمبَر
Shawl | شال
Sofa | صوفا
Technology | التكنولوجيا
Television | تلفزيون
Tennis | تنس
Tomatoes | طماطم
Tornado | ترناد
Video | فيديو
YouTuber | يوتيوبر

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: Arabic Level One

Webpages: 135

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 97.8% (132 pages)
- Undeclared: 2.2% (3 pages)

By Page

- Arabic Level One - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Front Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - TitlePage - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - InfoPage - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Table of Contents - *Undeclared*
    - Licensing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - About the Author - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - Introduction to the Arabic Level One - OER - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 1: Chapter Oner- An Overview of Arabic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.1: Why Learn Arabic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.2: Arabic Speaking Countries - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.3: Arabic-Speaking World and Dialect - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.4: Parts of Speech in Arabic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 1.5: Type of Sentences in Arabic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 2: Chapter Two- Introduction to the Arabic Language - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.1: Introduction to the Arabic Language - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.2: The Arabic Alphabet الحروف العربية - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.3: Arabic Script الكتابة بالعربية - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.4: Arabic Diacritical Marks علاماتُ التَّشكيل - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 2.5: Long Vowels المدود - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 3: Chapter Three- Greeting - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.1: Letter Baa- الحرف باء - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.2: Letter Taa- الحرف تاء - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.3: Letter Thaa- الحرف ثاء - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.4: Letter Noon الحرف نون - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.5: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.6: Dialog - Greetings - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.7: Northern Levant- Syria - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.8: Northern Levant- Lebanon - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 3.9: Assessment - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 4: Chapter Four- Introduce Self - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.1: Letter Yaa-الحرف ياء - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.2: Letter Waw- الحرف واو - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.3: The Consonant Hamza الهمزة - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.4: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.5: Subject Pronouns - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.6: Dialog - Introduce Self - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.7: Southeren Levant- Jordan - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 4.8: Southeren Levant- Palistine - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 5: Chapter Five- Where Are You From? - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.1: The Letter Jeem- الحرف جيم - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.2: Letter H'aa-الحرف حاء - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.3: Letter Khaa - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.4: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.5: Possessive Pronouns - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.6: Present tense (to like, to study) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.7: Dialog - (Where Are From?) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 5.8: Republic of Iraq - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 6: Chapter Six- Introducting My Family - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.1: Letter Daal - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.2: Letter Thaal - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.3: Letter Raa - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.4: Letter Zay - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.5: Taa Marbouta "Tied Taa" - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.6: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.7: Demonstrative Pronouns هذا - هذه - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.8: Dialog - My Family - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
    - 6.9: Qatar - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 6.10: The United Arab Emirates - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 6.11: Assessment - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*

- 7: Chapter Seven- Numbers “Al-Arqam” - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 7.1: Letter Seen - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 7.2: Letter Sheen - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 7.3: Letter Saad - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 7.4: Letter Daad - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 7.5: The Phrase "To Have" In Arabic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 7.6: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 7.7: Numbers الأرقام - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 7.8: Dialog - Tell Me More About YOU - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 7.9: Interrogative Words in Arabic (Part 1) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 7.10: Egypt - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 7.11: Assessment - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 8: Chapter Eight- Where do you live? - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 8.1: Letter Tuaa - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 8.2: Letter Dhaa - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 8.3: Letter Aein - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 8.4: Letter Ghien - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 8.5: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 8.6: Interrogative words (Part Two) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 8.7: New Verbs (To live) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 8.8: Dialog - Where do you live? - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 8.9: Kuwait - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 8.10: Saudi Arabia - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 9: At Home “ fi Albayet” - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 9.1: Letter Faa - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 9.2: Letter Qaaf - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 9.3: Letter Kaaf - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 9.4: Letter Laam - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 9.5: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 9.6: Colors - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 9.7: New Verbs (to drink, to watch) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 9.8: Dialog - At Home - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 9.9: Sultanate of Oman - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 9.10: Yemeni Republic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 9.11: Assessment - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 10: Food الطعام "At-Tauam" - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 10.1: Letter Meem - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 10.2: Letter Haa - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 10.3: Letters Alif MAqsurah الألف المقصورة, Dagger Alif الألف الخنجرية - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 10.4: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 10.5: Prepositions حروف الجر - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 10.6: New Verbs (go, cook, buy, and want) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 10.7: Dialog - What do you eat? - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 10.8: Bahrain - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 10.9: Libya - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 10.10: Assessment - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - The Marker of "Shadda"الشدة - *Undeclared*
- 11: At The University - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.1: أ (Hamzat Alwasel) and آ (Alif Maddah) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.2: The Arabic Definite Article (الـ) لام التعريف - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.3: The Nisba Adjective النِّسبَة - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.4: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.5: Days of The Week - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.6: Dialog - What do you study? - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.7: Reading Text - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.8: Sudan - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.9: kingdom of Morocco - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 11.10: Assessment - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- 12: Living and Working - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 12.1: Roots الجذورو - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 12.2: Duals in Arabic - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 12.3: Plurals In Arabic الجمع - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 12.4: Vocabulary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 12.5: New Verbs (work, write, and read) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 12.6: Dual and Plural Subject Pronouns - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 12.7: Dialogue and Reading - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 12.8: Reading Text - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 12.9: Tunisia - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 12.10: Algeria - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
- Back Matter - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Index - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Glossary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Detailed Licensing - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Cognates Glossary - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - Detailed Licensing - *Undeclared*